Abui: Bible for Mark

English: Bible Commentary, Condensed Translation Notes, Translation Notes, Translation Words, Unlocked Literal Bible for Mark

Formatted for Translators

©2022 Wycliffe Associates

Released under a Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

Bible Text: The English Unlocked Literal Bible (ULB)

©2017 Wycliffe Associates

Available at <https://bibleineverylanguage.org/translations>

The English Unlocked Literal Bible is based on the unfoldingWord® Literal Text, CC BY-SA 4.0. The original work of the unfoldingWord® Literal Text is available at [https://unfoldingword.bible/ult/](https://nam12.safelinks.protection.outlook.com/?url=https%3A%2F%2Funfoldingword.bible%2Fult%2F&data=02%7C01%7Cmarv_lucas%40wycliffeassociates.org%7Cab3b29dbe7fc44554aeb08d8080e8e70%7C7baa11086adb4be299cf00a4872ab1cf%7C0%7C0%7C637268205914531190&sdata=SW2KxVr%2BcxHGAgMpv602NzoYenorfHi9bOs2SNzVpR4%3D&reserved=0).

The ULB is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

Notes: English ULB Translation Notes

©2017 Wycliffe Associates

Available at <https://bibleineverylanguage.org/translations>

The English ULB Translation Notes is based on the unfoldingWord translationNotes, under CC BY-SA 4.0. The original unfoldingWord work is available at <https://unfoldingword.bible/utn>.

The ULB Notes is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

To view a copy of the CC BY-SA 4.0 license visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/>

Below is a human-readable summary of (and not a substitute for) the license.

**You are free to:**

* **Share**— copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format.
* **Adapt**— remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

The licensor cannot revoke these freedoms as long as you follow the license terms.

**Under the following conditions:**

* **Attribution**— You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <https://BibleInEveryLanguage.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
* **ShareAlike**— If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.
* **No additional restrictions**— You may not apply legal terms or technological measures that legally restrict others from doing anything the license permits.

**Notices:**

You do not have to comply with the license for elements of the material in the public domain or where your use is permitted by an applicable exception or limitation.

No warranties are given. The license may not give you all of the permissions necessary for your intended use. For example, other rights such as publicity, privacy, or moral rights may limit how you use the material.

A picture containing text, clipart

Description automatically generated

TOC \o "1-2" \h \z \uRight-click to update field (doing so will insert table of contents).

Page left intentionally blank

## Mark

Chapter 1YOHANES HEKARIANG SA MI KAIMITOKE  
1Apido suraba letuheli Yesus Kristus, Lahatala Hewi neng, 2Piahe Yesaya he sura bilenri minerei: "Nuneise mitaboi le dar a oweda dongwiba da esafoka mihadou. Maleakhi 3:13Amakang nuk hamak wadaliala Belantara: 'buki lia laheteda hei satoka Tuhan dongwiba nesatoka harouda. '' Yesaya 40:34Dongwiba Yohanes sani kaimitokang ama faring dotafuda belantara mia da iri waofodja edosa oahaliali. 5Dongwidi, bei tafuda Yudea afeng mia Amoba Yerusalem mie da Yohanes hoktia. Da wi apakui Yordan mia watoka misei hetibale, dongwidi da de dosa watangi yoti. 6Yohanes da lungva amur mi diakai habani. Hebaysa lungva hekuli. He siangma be dane tinuy ye nawang.7Yohanes da iri dawetangi," dongwiba ari natia mabahekang he sama badalialei beinei widanaha. Neding bei rofinaha nalukiba netukheia hetila horile. 8Neding na sami kaimitoke, heding sah ba hiangkan mi kaimitoke.YOHANES DASARANSA YESUS HIAKAI MITOKI9Dongwiba, tadeng-tadeng be hedong dami dalekdi, Yesus da Nasehat mia tia, Galilea afeng, Dongwiba Yohanes da Yordan pakui ba bawatoke mia semi sei, 10Da alekang sawa mia mei, Yesus dami herei adiehong wan hawai hua ayodi dongwiba dami herei aheba sam rialing piahe ruaba mek kuliwida da heding hed tahsei. 11Dongwiba, ama hamak nukda surgamiasei,"Edong wiba nomi umbeka. Na ekang watanga." YESUS WE BEKA DAMI HAKOKE12Aleng kanra, Timoi samda YEsus hadoa Belantara misade. 13Dawe dabuki daliale Belantara mia tadeng karbuti timoi beka dami hakoki Yesus da bintang-binatang alemai hanayami malaikat lei kat dasei hariangYESUS GALILEA MIA LAHATALAH HETANGA MATOKTANG14Yohanes da bah homia di kandri, Yesus da Galilea afeng sadi Lahatala hetanga. 15Da watangi, Lahatala wansah hetadeng mitouni wa peddi wa oafudja me Injil hei mia!YESUS DAMOKI-MOKI MIAHIA16Dongwiba Yesus da wafoka Galilea hawa peamia, Da Simon miherei Ye Andreas yehewura, da djala wa toka ba danau mia wabireilah da jala miba heding da afi tahaikang. 17Dongwiba, Yesus da dotafuda hed watangi, "Neluale, dongwiba nariadwa onba ri amakang pukat dia." 18Simon ye Andreas da alekang da jala deiteli dawe heding haluale.19Dawai kul hadau buale hefirei, heding da Yakobus miherei hewi Zebedeus, ye Yohanes, hewura , dae homia de jala wahe kanra. 20Dongwiba, Yesus da de tafuda do tafuda alekang hori dobei dotafuda de mama hopa mianaha, Zebedeus ehongmia da we kari-kari ji hoawake, dongwiba dawe Yesus haluale. YESUS DATA PATING DIA HE KUASA MIA21Dongwiba datefuda sa Kapernaum mia tadeng ba hedong akui mia, Yesus da Sinagoge simade sa tapating dia. 22Dotefuda wadomi halekdi heding datapating dia he ding datapating dia piahe kuasa hadoa, bei piahe fingkang kanghei widanaha.23Hedong hetrena, sinagoge mia neng nuk ahe beka dahatoka mirei da ir maji, 24Dawatangi,teiwidi apang dong ria waoong naha, Yesus dong Nasaret wati? apa atia ba atia lah niat waong bani beka dia hei ba?nohina eding sani nialahatala wida! 25dong wiba Yesus da harunadi da hehalangi, makude! amakang hopa mia ba'' 26Dongwi ba, na beka da hoadayok- dayok dair maji hamak do he wan lawa daliare,ahe ba beka da mia atakia.27Dongwi ba dotafuda dawedomi halekda hedong wiba dahatahani dong wiba datangah apang Na? tapating di ba nuk hekuasa hadoa! heding da ahe ba kang da hapong puna dotafuda wei ba halualdi.28dongwiba, da alekang tangah mitoktangi sa afeng halual ba sa Galilea afeng miji.NENG HEYA SIMON DA AMAKANG FARING HA KANRA30Dongwiba, neng hea simon api hoalire datadea, dotafuda sa alekang mi yesus wahok tangi. 31Yesus da hopang mia da hoamot ba hatang wapuna ba na da natea.32Wan tuntunma, wari he la tidoki dotafuda hadoaba Yesus ama harik beka ye timoi beka da hoamirei. 33dong wiba, ama ba afeng foka mia tafuda sa tofa hefuting mi toka dong mia den mitou. 34Yesus da amakang faring harik hakanra da timoi beka faring haloi. hoba, heding da karii sani hetaki tangah naha, heding dong mia.YESUS DA AKUTI DA WE WONG KANG MATOKTANG36dongwiba simon ye afenga dohaima Yesus hetahai. 37Dongwiba dotafuda yesus hiani, dotafuda watangi amakang tafuda edtahai.38Wan, Yesus da watangi, me pi afeng-afeng foka misade dongwidi lektangah kang hedong mia mi ama wahoktang, hedong henommerang na api tiei.39hedong hi, Yesus da Galilea afeng haluali ba.da sa sinagoge lek waoong kang mitapatin dia dongwiba da timoi beka haloi.AMA BA KUL DA HOAMADIA WAN HOAKANRI41homimbiruake homi hembeka, Yesus datang mi hetahi hatang da amakang harenra dawatangi, nomawa eding ni ayadi fiha dia. 42hen miang hadow, kul ba hoa madia nakdi ama ba hedong wehoakanri.43Yesus da alekang ama ba hedong da haboti da laki wan namak kul ba edwatangi. 44dawai het watangi, doma tang-tanga ba api do hedong sami amawahoktang naha naba midalekdi dongwiba, da laki da mi fingkang kang wahinria. dongwiba, atangbal sa mihede dongwiba dahokanra pia he musa hesura miiti dawatangi dawemahoktangi.45Arik dongwiba, ama da sa watang-tang lolba la falaka-falaka hedwatangi ba lamitiletnyi. hedongwiba, Yesus da afeng foka misa da bei areja-areja laknaha, hoba da afeng ba mikili misa miayang amafaring deihotakia.

Chapter 2YESUS DA HOA HALIAL BA HOA KANDRI NA BEKA HOA KANDRI  
1Dawe tadeng Makdi, Yesus damidawai kapernaum, dawe falingti wan tafa mia. 2Dami detou haba hei sara hadoa naha, wan sa asehak kadou wemidi, dawe ai salah hetanga mahok tange.3Dangwidi, ba ta fuda kapa mitis, da ama kang nuk kadoa ba tia ama kang butida katang wapuna. 1v 4 Dabei ama ba hedong dabei hadowa ba Yesus hopa mebega amakang latukai faring beka, dongwi dong ba da akuimang domi rei damire akui wehaliali amaba hetu beka dami ba domi sei ngdom domi sei Yesus hetuk pea mihatani.5Teite Yesus da herumaimi herei, Da he tukbeka hedwe tanggi, "Hei newiye, etttuwai wan owahalieli." 6Dongwiba, afeng hei fingkang salikalita kang da miti dawe domi tuke, 7"Tek'i te apangdadong wittangga? Dahe ba'i! nak heda dowit wa tanggi, ba lahatala hebai?"8Yesus dawai ladohiana wea san hommia, dawa domi tuke, we hommia ba dawe hedwa tanggi na hedong hommia, "tek ite ridong witba mi romituke?9Teiyo he te mikang, damiamaba nambeka wehe bai, 'e tuai owa halieli,' dou nawa tanggi, 'mialieli esra halieli nateilake'?10Hedongwiba, ohiana ba amakang hewi dame ai salah hekang dei dia da buki hebeka hoahaliele." Yesus da amanang beka hetwatanggi, 11"Na et watanga: mialiali, eisara halielle , etofa mi sade." 12Amaba hetubeka nateime midalielle mba na teti, ei sera halielle, witba uisahame, amakang tafuda hapong pe mia. Dotafuda homikandara Lahatala wahet kandara, dong wiba dawa tangga, " darni nibei hedong hiang naha!"LEWI DA YESUS HALUALE14Daha pietwe da Lewi hiani, Alfeus hewi, dawe pajak wawak hei sara miti. Dongwitba, Yesus dahetwa tange, "Mena luwale." dongwitba, Lewi medialieli haluali.15Dongmidi, Yesus damiti da Lewi hitopa misiang ne, amakang faringda kaibel toa lualle dosa amakang hadou Yesus dofa towa siang ne donghitba he moki dofa, sarongme mia amakang faring, dota fuda Yesus haluali. 16Dongwitba heting mang dining maha Farisi wati daheresi Yesus ye amakang a salah amakang dota fuda toa siang ne ama ba kaibel toa luale, dawe demoki mihatta ha mia, " tek'i tehi Pajak hoyore amababekang amakang dofa towa siang ne ?"17Dongwitba Yesus dawamahia, Dawe hetwa tanggi, " amaba hoa kang dong dabei dokter hopa menaha, hoba amabaha rike. Na api tiang amaba sandri eli hei tianaha amaba tuai tuhuimang homimia nahetia."DAHA TAHANI HEFALATA BA MIDETIBAI HEI18Yohanes he moki hawai Farisi wati damei detbinengri de tibaice. jeningmaha tiei dahatahani, " Teitehei Yohanes samoki Farisi hemoki dadeti baite hoba ei dong dabei deti bainaha?" 19Dongwiba, Yesus dahewa tanggi, "Hehada tilo hei wan tia api hoba neng badai detibai hei neng dar dei sarra mia? neing dardei afenga hopa mia, neng dardei detti bat ti naha.20Dongwitba, heta deng ba datia neng daha hanaya mia hokdi, hewaria ba hedomia dota fukda detibaite. 21Bei ama wada namang ba fieting mea fiamiba waka futnaha . dongwi dombah, kabafia dawe miletang habekda, fietba apido we fokdi.22Dongwitba, bei amawada ANggur fia hami mihei sarra ba makkilan minaha. Dongwidia, anggur bahedong dawe he kuling fieti dongwidomba anggur ba hedo he kuli he iti we fi eti. Mihawai, Anggur ba fiaha mi hawai hei sarra ba fiahami."YESUS DO TADENG SISING HEA DUWA23Dongwitba, daweta dengsi sising homia, Yesus dan name put haluwali, dadar sata ma mia, hemok kida na mei hou. 24Dongwitba, Farisi wa daheba tangi, " Herei, na hedawe akuntadeng mehapeti?"25Dongwitba, Dawe hetwa tanggi, " Darri bei halekda nak Daud dawa oni hedongwitba amakang hopa naha fukda hato mediyei? 26Kotei itbah dala hatalah hetofamme lahtala he tofar ba Abyatar damikariang, dota fukda towa siang ma wa akuihei, he timang data fuda toa siang ne, dongwitba siang ma damitba dei afeinga hede?27Dongwitba, Yesus da farisi wati hekwatanggi, " Aku tadeng wa oni amakang hedi, amakang we aku heding. 28Dongwitba, Amakang Hewing Tuhan, tadeng sising hea duwa."

Chapter 3YESUS DA AMA HARIK BEKA HAKANDRA  
1Dongwitba, Yesus dawe Sinagoge, ama nuki hatang deng beka. 2Dame domi tuke ti da Yesus mi herei kuda tadeng sising dami hakangdrei kang re beka do widi dawe Yesus hei safoka tahai.3Dongwitba, Yesus da ama hatang beka hori, "Mialial ba natei."4Dongwitba, Yesus da he wetangi," deng wiba tadeng sising hong mia da kang hadow weung beka kadou weong re naha? dawe lada kangdra ne naha te dala tervaeng? Dongwidi, da makudi.5Dongwidi, Yesus da deibare rei hami kiliki. hami teng beka he ang he paneng . Dongwidi, Yesus da ama bahatang beka hori atong deng hatule dongwidi ama bahatang beka ha datole, deng wide katang wekandre. 6Dongwidi ama ba Farisi wati dami daberi, dong widi Farisi wati da we Herodian da Yesus heisa foka tahai dongwidi dafeang. AMAKANG FARING DA YESUS HEIHALUALI7Dongwidi, Yesus dami daberi hei sakolah wamuku huwa misadi, dongwidi amakang faring we walelia afeng mia ba helluali, hawai Yudea, 8we Yerusalem, Idumea, we Yordan kula hamina, dongwidi Tirus dongwidi Sidon, baleknya hedew hawai sadan amakang faring da wemahia ti Yesus dana faring weung, da amakang faring da hopa mitia.9Amakang faring dahe , Yesus da demoki wetagi da e nuk mite dongwidi dabei we abedja naha. 10Dongwidi Yesus da amakang faring hakandra , we amakang faring ba titus da homadia dami tadudai tadudai dongwidi da hopanea.11Dongwidi, timomoi beku da Yesus miherei dau hepang pea mia da dababuk harimi dairi, "Edo aisalah hewi!"12Dongwide, Yesus dalah fika hetapi riedu mah. YESUS DA DEMOKI KARNUK WAI AYOKI HAALEKI13Dongwidi, Yesus da buki heng merei dongwidi demoki he hom mirang dahari dongwidi dadufa, dongwidi datia yoti . 14Da amakang karnuk wal ayoki midehow dongwidi datafuda dongwidi da hetibati dongwiba dasa surah san wetanga. 15Dongwiba dawe karisan halui. 16Yesus da amakang karnuk wai ayoki haa taki: Simon (Yesus da wekaniedi ba Petrus),17Yakobus, ba Zebedeus, he wi ha wai Yohanes, Yakobus hemat nyehi (dang Yesus me kane mikari Boanerges, nesalaka tuanghuri hewi"), 18Andreas, Filipus, Bartolomeus, Matius, Tomas, Yakobus, Alfeus hewi, Tadeus, Simon ba Zelot , 19Dongwiba Yudas Iskariot, ba da Yesus hedbaliki. YESUS HE KUASA RAHATALA HEI20Dongwide, Yesus dawe tavanuk mei, hawai amakang faring datia howali Yesus ya hemoki dawe siang ne ti beka. 21Helafenga dadomahia datiei Yesus hadoba midawai dawetagi bada karija. 22Dongwidi heifing hekaliata da Yerusalem miaba tiei dawatangi, "apang kari da hawamadia dawe karilhaki dahawai hekang ba hapong puna mihaluai."23Dongwidi, Yesus dahari hapa me dahada toudangi dawe tamingi,"latihatte karing da karing holai? 24Dongwiba afeng naki dapoki denya hawai dabekdi, afeng ba hedang dabei tukai natet naha. 25Dongwiba fahnuki wepak hayaki denya midenya dadasama dia, tafuba hedo dabei rumai natet nahe.26Wedangwiba midaliali denya dadoa beka dia dongwiba mitepekkaili, kui dabei rumai naha dongwidi wan sa heay hetilapang mia. 27Wan bei amakang nuki hadow tofame naha ama ba tukai dawai taatakaw, dongwidi dadeicudi da amaba tukai de da hedkodi, dongwite hia da hetofa me hawatakaw."28" Tangabah rafi name ektanga, beka be amakang hewilakai hawahalieli, dongwiba toanya hedangwiba dawe tangi. 29Dongwiba, mahe timai san hebai dabei hawalalianaha, dong wede taresi hebeka ba buki dei taha iti." 30Dongwiba, singkaliata dawetangi, "Hedu kari beka da hamadi."YESUS HEAREAMANG MIABA HIANG ROFI31Dongwiba, Yesus hehura ya heya tiai da uisaha mina teti. Ama da taboti weheya hokdibame. 32Amakang faringda Yesus howawal ba miti dongwitba dahed we tangga," Riherei, eayaya emotnehi ye usaha mia erea etahai."33Dongwitba, Yesus dahe hetbe tangga," Niya ya nemoknehi ye tei yokmia?" 34Hedongwitba, Da amakang faring dong riherei," dawe tangnga niya mama nemotnehi ti riado heidi! 35Mahe melahatala hei do halualle he dong he nyemotnyehei baneng ya nemotnehi ba masuwa, ya nia mama."

Chapter 4TAK DA BET MIBA MITAMING IA  
1Yesus da maku foka. habang mia ba da tapating dia ama kang faring da tia howaali Yesus da tapating dia ti amakang dong la we hau hedong widongba da miba mi efoka nuki yong ba bahong dom merei ba da mere maku hom miti. amakang faring da we takata mia. 2Dami amakang faring mi hoktanga na faring tanga hoba dawe taming ia. dong wiba we hewong mia, dami ama kang faring wehebai,3Wefaling! ama ba bin bata hiang kang wice da sa takdi bece. 4Dong wiba dedareji, dong wiba dawe takdi bece, dong wiba bin bata we safoka hamina mitoke, dong wiba rua rua me, haktukda. 5Kabei mi'ba wi tida tak hasei bei anei'faring naha. Bini ba hedong da alekang anei ruma mirang.6Wari foka da'latukai fokda, bin bata midiei dong wiba hetila hopa naha, bin bata hedong takatcji. 7 Kabei mi'ba mi atoba tantama mihasei. dong wiba atoba da we'bari hawai bin bata da we hoafikda ba we moni, dong'wiba bin bata da bei it mi'hede naha.8Hoba,wah da anei kang mihasei dong wiba heit da weja, webare, dong wiba la'we'hau ba'matekda, da hau tahai di karsua hewali haluke, kartalama hewali haluke, ya aisaha nuki'hewali haluke.'' 9Hedong wiba, Yesus da'tangi, '' mahe hawei hopa dia'ti da we faling dodeding dawa faling!''10Tadeng ba Yesus da donakala, ama'ba hamina mia, hemoki dining karnuk wal ayoki dotafuda da mi hatahania na ba da wetaming ido da hehatahani. 11 Dong wiba, da we hawai, '' Lahatala he'weoni heding dong dawibah wan mi Edi, dongwid hoba mi ama tanga hadau wehadasama dia, na'karnuki bah miba mitomia, 12 dongwidi ama'bah dahiang, amaba hianghoba dabei, wemahia naha; daro we'mahia hoba midom ia naha. hedong'ba dabei dabei'doa'fotda naha ya hetuai dong haliale naha.''' Wetaming Ia Takda Bece13Hedong wiba Yesus da amakng faring hada toatanga, tanga ba tom mitaming ia ba rohiana re naha? koteiwida bah we mahia tanga ba nawe taming ia? 14 Ama ba da datnga san we tanga. 15Ama ba hedong wan bin bata sa toke hamina mihasei, sara ba tanga san mi wetanga hei wan hedong hetarenang da tafuda. we mahia dong wi dong bah beka amakang donng latiai bah da tanga sani wetalualei waba hedong hada sama tanga faring mi hoktanga.16Dong wi hoba, bin bata ba mi anai mi takdi bece mi wi'i bata hanaya domi sei hedong amaba tanga san wemahia da we daliti he da nok. 17Dong wid hoba, da bei ailai naha dong wid bah he ai dong anai taha miya ya donakala de itih we hareng ya dabei lunga naha. dong wid bah, beka da midei tilekda nahate taloi tatiai dong dami dalekda hedong tanga sani, widong bah hed loking wan da hasei.18Dong widi ya atanga bah mi kupani mi takdi. hawai hed loking da tanga sani we mahia, 19 hoba ama ba homi da wesei we mire ba mi buki hada sama dia, ya tumirang hedo da tanga san do na mere dong widong ba dah dabei he it hiang naha. 20Hoba bin bata bah mi anai kang mi takdi hedong ama bah tanga san we taling da mi bah dom mi ia ya he it da hopa dia mi ki kar suida, miki kar talama dong widba wasa mi ai saha nukda.''Falaka Wetaming Ia21Dond wid ba, Yesus da wai mehok tnga, defalakang mi ba mi lik ua mi ia naha? biasaba falaka da dalialah miatehi datafuda falake? 22 Da bei wa we hiana naha ya bei we tanga na da dabei binua tafuda dala dofalaka. 23Da mahe hawei hopa da we faling, ya dawe halul domi lohi !24Dong wid ba Yesus da hawai hed wetanga, riwe romi tuke nahe ri wemahi. Nahe'ri mi ba ama huotuke arija ti hedong mi bah mi riah tuke, da ya faring mi bah mi hau. 25Ya mahe hopa ari arija da we haw, do wid hoba ma amakng he bei hopa naha dia ti, amiba da hopa hadaw dawai hokmia.Bin Bata Wetaming Ia26Do wid bah, Yesus dahawai wetanga, ''lahatalah heafeng kang do mi bah mi anei takda bece wetaming ia. 27Bin bata adua tade natei wari ye tuntama, bin hekafual da mirang. bin bata adua dawe domi tuke nahe tewidi. 28 Dong wid bah bin bata tade di wan hela it we. latuhei dong da we bin hekafual, da mirang hela it wea. 29Tadeng da mi nukmia ti namei da wan san maliala, ama bah dong datia how halanga te'iding bati wan henamei maliala wan tiei''Tanga Ba Miba Mi Heila Hebika Wetaming Ia30Hedong wid bah, Yesus da we tangi ko'nah pi miba Lahatalah he tanga dong wetaming ia re ko piwaiy na miba me taming ia. 31Lahatala heisarang piahe heila bika wida.heila bika ba heding latukai kiding bah buki taha mia. 32Dong wid hoba pitakda dawe bar dia ti hela mi fika lohi bah uting mia, dong wid hoba domi foka lohi dong wid bah rua karnuki da tia hong mia de tok ia.33Da faring we taming ia, Yesus da tanga san do mi ba mi wehok tanga dong widek da doh mahia. 34Karnuki ba da mi tanga do da kulwe taming ite hedong wibah da tanga faring dame tanga falaka hatang mi bah de moki loking wehayad ia. Yesus Da Timoi Hetake35Hetadeng dong wan paluisa yesus dawe tanga, me pi wa foka nuk misade. 36Wan ama kang faring heisara domia bah Yesus ya heisakola do tafuda mi bah mi ehong dom mirei Yesus doh tafuda wan ehong mia hoba eafenga hadow dota fuda laki yoti. 37Dong wid hoba, timoi foka beka da me hohayoki nahare he eng midakili bah tamah dah homi mei.38Hedong wid ba Yesus da ehapong meltadea hedong wiba hemoki lokda hateni wa! tuang huri kolal piymong do abei weomi tuk naha kolal pi mong do? 39Dongwidong bah Yesus da natei bah da timoi foka hetaki, hei timoi okandri! hedong widong bah timoi dong werandri.40Hei nak he ri he marekla? hekang dong bei romi mia naha.? 41Wan dotafuda marekla, apido ma? wan timoi hadow da hetaki da ya fow hadow werandri?

Chapter 5AMA NUK GEDARA WATI BEKA HOOMADIA BO HOATANIA  
1Helok da tia kala mia, dawan so Gadara wathe afeng mia. 2Hedong Yesus dah e hong mia ba sei, ana kang nuki fudik hiang mia ba tia ilmoi beka dano madai hapong pea mei Yesus.3Heding da fadik hiang mia do miti. uma nuk bei tukai het ko naha, te rantai miba kode. 4Heding kabei ja tipai tila miba hetuk hatang dong kode, dongwitba dadeinya de rantai , dongwi hoba da we haru le hedong hiba dawa fak palele, bei amakang nuk da hoa tikia naha.5Tuntapa waria, heding fadik hiang mia ir tofoke ye buki-buki ye da dehi wii miba babi tape. 6Het ama da buakla mia Yesus herei, da frei ba Yesus hapong pea me hoafou.7Dongwidi, da ir bada watangi, "heomerang ba nomerang bei toa sama naha, Yesus, Lohatala Hewi daliala taha Mia? na en mi tamin take Lahatala, Noa tiatnya noha!" 8Yesus da het watangi, "otakia et ama ba homa dia naha hey timoi beka!"9Dongwitba, Yesus da ama loki halatani, ane he ma?" Dongwitba, da wahawai nane he Legion nia do nining faring." 10Dahe dawata faki Yesus sarah ba hedong wa nibot naha.11Sara bah hedong fe faring da mi lole. 12Dongwidi, "timoi beka da Yesus mi haming take, dongwidi da mitanga, niboce ni ba ni miba fe-fa homidong me." 13Yesus da tafuda hori. Dongwiba timoi beka dawe ba fe-fe hommei fe faring rifi ayoki da tetiai pa hareni sa wamaku pea mia tafuda miba wamaku dopi sey.14Dongwiba, ama ba fafe wa fokang dong da do takia ba da mibami ama faring he afeng dong me wa wahoktanga. Dongwiba amakang lokida mida beri wa mi herei nahe wan midalekdi.15Dongwiba amakang lokida Yesus hapong mija dongwiba mi herei ama ba na da hat taha dia Legion, dong na da hoa madia, damiti wan de koda tei, dong wiba wan hoa kanri. Dongwiba, amakang loki da miherei.16Dongwitba, ama da miba amakang faring wa hoktangi te it te mi dalekdi he amaba na da hoada lekdi te it te hoakanri dongwiba mi fe-fe homi mey. 17Hedongwiba, amakang faring da Yesus het watangi mida beri.18Hedongwiba, Yesus da e hedong merei ama ba e nada hoa madia hedong watangi Yesus da tafuda lake. 19Donghoba, Yesus da dongma, habot watangi, "eisade eura ena haji hapong mi sade he lok mi hohok tanggah nane he Tuhan homi beka.20Dongwidi, ama wan laki ba mi hoktangi amakang faring ba DEkapolis karnuki wan naha Yesus dan wan omi hedi. Dongwiba , amakang he matnyehi da wadomi take . YAIRUS HEWI MI HAROUDA YE MASUA BA MI MASUA HARIK KE HOA KANRA21Hedong Yesus da ehong wei ba da hawai lake watanga amakang faring da pea mia, dongwiba heding woro tama habang mia. 22Dongwidi, tamukung Sinagoge hane he Yairus datia Yesus hiang dongwiba hetuk heafou. 23DOngwidi, da ming haming take kul-kul rofi Yesus, "Dawa tangga newi muki masua wan bekdi. Ame a atang mita hia dongwiba da howa kanra."24Dongwiba Yesus ye Yairus dia lia lake amakang faring da Yesus halua le hoa kalukla.25Dongwiba, masua wa masua harike wan tangkarnuk wal ayoki. 26Heding wan tei harike da dei sara-sara halaale ama faring fuala hoa kanra na kamuki ba hatang mia yoti hekang dong hadoa naha harik dai harik. 27Hedongwidi ba da Yesus, doma hia da frei Yesus da hopang me he wipea amakang faring hopa mia da hekoda hoafuna.28Wi masua datangah, "na e koda wapena dong, na noakanra". 29Hedongwiba he wea hala hoakanra.30Yesus da he iti do hiana dong wan hoatani. Da amakang faring hopa mia da watangah :"Mahe ne koda wapane?" 31Dongwiba Yesus he wilakai lo da watangah a ama miherei amakang faring da et watangah, 'Dongwiba awa tangah mahe noa pane?" 32Dongwiba, Yesus da mi herei mahe wan wa oni.33Dongwidi, da na mahi nahe wan mi dalekdi he iti mia, wi masua da wan marukliba laharakia, da mei da Yesus hapong pea mia luk fou dongwidi Yesus he watangi. 34Dongwiba, Yesus da wi masua het watangi, "omi tofi he waoni ba oa kanri he kang dei ada sama dia ei sade ."35Do Yesus da tanga mi tanga ama da tia mi hok tanga tamukung Sinagoge hetofa mia ba tia da watanga,"Hewi wan bedik te idi a tuang hakoke?"36Hoba, Yesus da bei wa falling na ha ne da wan watangi, da de tamukung Sinagoge, het watangi ba, "Marekla ala we hedong warumai." 37Dongwiba, Yesus da bei de wi dong watanga nak wa na wale hoba Petrus, ye Yakobus, ye Yohanes, he motnyehi Yakobus. 38Dongwiba, da wan sa tamukung Sinagoge hetofa mia ba, ama mi tefel malinga hamak la tukai mere.39Dongwiba, Yesus do mi mey, da watangi, "Kawai naha fel naha? muki ba dong bei mon naha, hoba dala ta de." 40Hoba da Yesus hoa pisei. Da amakang faring ha bole da muki hea he mama muki hei sara deng merei.41Dongwiba, da muki hatang wafuna ba da watangi,"Talita Kum!" (Muki masua la do watangah mialiale!") 42Muki masua midalial ba da wan tung karmuk wal ayoki da hedo wiba , amakang faring wa marekli. 43Dongwiba, Yesus da hea he mama watangi amakang nuk bai da do mahi he alekang sa muki do siang ma mi hoa ne.

Chapter 6<<<<<<< HEADYESUS HEAFENG MIA HADONG HAWAI  
1Dongwidba Yesus da wansa de fengmia, hedongmiang hemoki lok ela haluali. 2Wansa tadeng ba miakudmieng, Yesus da wan saraba mi akhudhei mia tawomi tapakna, dongwid amafaring da wamahi ya wadomi halekda yada watangi de tekmia apaloking ? Na hekang Da mihedte midakki! piihe dadatang hi weiba woon wida ? 3Apang piihe bata wakariang wida, ba, Maria hewi, hemodnyehi diati Yakobus, Yoses, Yudas se Simon ? Ha ko hewura masua we diati pohamia domiadi? Dongwidba hami bei wasama naha hore da hapong hawai.=======HE IYA HE TALAMA YESUS HE AFENG MIA HAPONG NAWAI1Dongwidba, Yesus da wan sa de afeng-Mia, hedong miang hemoki lok ki haluali. 2Wansa tadeng ba Miakudmiang, Yesus dawan saraba mi akudhemia mi tawomi, tapakna, dongwidba amafaring da wamahi wadomi halekda, Da watangi, "da tekmia apaloking? Na hekang da mihedte midalekdi pihe datang hi weiba woon wida? 3Apang piihe bata wakariang kang wida ba, Maria hewi, hemodnyehi diati Yakobus, Yoses se, Yudas se, Simon? Ha ko hewura masua we diati pohaima domiadi?" Dongwidba, homi bei wasama naha hore da Hapong hawai.>>>>>>> 4b592633a7a570dd5bb5c180764de39f0d3e0289<<<<<<< HEAD4Dongwidba Yesus da watangi sa tekmia-tekmia hadow ama bei Aisala hekang wid dong ho luk hofou naha, ya efenghi lamiate, hawai hemodnehiwe hanaya lamiate hawai kul hetofak lamiate. 5Dongd hore,Yesusda bei nawa woong ba midelekdi naha, ye datang hi mi ama harik kabei hedtahi ba hokanri. 6Dong het ba,hed bai da wodomi nakhe bei ama horumai naha,dongwidba da sa afeng-afeng bale ya tawomi tapakni.=======4Dongwidba, Yesus da watangi, "Sa tekmia-tekmia hadow ama bei aisala hekang wid dong ho luk hofou naha, afeng hi lamaite, hawai hemodnehiwe hanaya lamiate hawai kul hetofak lamiate." 5Dongwid hore, Yesus da bei na wa woon ba midelekdi naha, ya dadatanghi mi ama harik kabei hedtahi ba ho kanri. 6Dongwibba, Hed bai da wodomi halekda nak he bei ama horumai naha.dongwidba dah sa afeng-afeng bale ya tawomi tapakni.YESUS DA DEMOKI LOKI HOLEKE>>>>>>> 4b592633a7a570dd5bb5c180764de39f0d3e0289<<<<<<< HEADYESUS DA DEMOKI LOK HOLEKE7Dongwid ba Yesus da da demoki lok dah wa ayok-ayokdi ba holeki ya, beka hei dong da lila mi hedi naha te kang mi hedi.8dong wid ba da haboti dong widi?sa tama halualdia ti na wa withe ya tikurag hi ripuna,siang kalupa he dong. 9sendal dong heda ri taha hawai koda ayoki teihe.=======7Dongwidba Yesus da demoki loki horiya dah wa ayok-ayokdi ba helokiya, beka hei dang dah lila mi hedi nahate kang mihedi. 8Dongwidba da haboti dong widi setamo haludiati nawo widhe ya, tikurang hi ripuna, siang kalupa hedow dong namang beisara hadow dong seng ba mi baisa hapod hadow dong, 9sendal dong heda ri taha hawai koda ayok teihe.>>>>>>> 4b592633a7a570dd5bb5c180764de39f0d3e0289<<<<<<< HEAD10v 10 dongwidba,Yesus da watangi risa tekmia tofa nuki mia diati hedong sa warii sade.11dabei amawa da ried domawa naha diati,tiduang ba rituk hiad wang mi heasahak dong webolte rimiriwai."=======10Dongwidba Yesus da watangi risa temia tofa nuk mia diati hedong miaba sa warii sade. 11Da bei, amawa da ried domawa naha diati, taduang ba hiad weng mi he asahak dong we bolte rimiriweai.>>>>>>> 4b592633a7a570dd5bb5c180764de39f0d3e0289<<<<<<< HEAD12 hore Yesus heimoki lokda tapak ni ya,faring me hei haluali .13dong wid ba Yesus hemokilok da sa na beka faring haloi hawai minyak minyak urapan mi haloali ya amafaring hoakanri.=======12Hore, Yesus hemoki lokda tawomi tapakni ya, faring me hei haluale. 13Dongwidba, Yesus hemoki loki da sa na beka faring haloi hawai minyak urapan, mi haluali ya amafaring ho kanri.HERODES DA YESUS HE DO FALING>>>>>>> 4b592633a7a570dd5bb5c180764de39f0d3e0289<<<<<<< HEADHERODES DA YESUS HE DO FALING14dongwid, lei Herodes,wan Yesus hana mitikilednyi, amafaring de mi tanga, Yohanis pembabtis won ama faring hanaya mia diang kanri,dong wi hore heiti mia midalekla.15weda watangati heding Elia, da wada watangi ti Aisala hamak hawa puna ba faring hanaya mia.=======15weda wetangi heding Elia.'' da, wada watangi,'' Aisala hamak hewa puna ba faring hanaya mia.''>>>>>>> 4b592633a7a570dd5bb5c180764de39f0d3e0289<<<<<<< HEAD16Hoba Herodes faling ba watanga ti Yohanis ba wa na hiakai haroti yoho he wan diang kanri. YOHANES PEMBAPTIS VAYEN BA MONG17kul, Herodes hei dong rofi ba ama haboti dong wid sa Yohahanis hapuni,ba hom mia Herodes he kodi, henana neng he masua,Pelipus, Herodes, da wan hadanika di.=======16Hoba, Herodes da faling ba watanga ti ,''Yohanis, ba wan na hiakai, haroti yoho he wan diangkandra!'' YOHANIS PEMBAPTIS VAYEN BA MONG 17Kul, Herodes he dodiang rofi ba ama, heboti dong wid sa Yohanis hapuni, ba hom mia Herodes he kodi, henana neng hemasua, Pilipus, Herodes, Herodias watanga wakodi, hada mikodi.>>>>>>> 4b592633a7a570dd5bb5c180764de39f0d3e0289<<<<<<< HEAD18wan Yohanis da herodes watanga wakodi, enana he masua mia bei rofi naha. 19dongwidba, Herodes da mi dommii ba Yohanis kul fayengte, hoba beka! 20dong widba,Herodes da wafaling ti, Yohanis dong amarofi bei beka hopa naha yomba da hiang marekli ba da bei fayeng naha, hedong widba herodes da hedong mia hadou Yohanis he hoawamahia da latukai wedomi halekda hoba Herodes da Yohanis domawa.=======18Wan, Yohanis da Herodes wetanga wakodi,'' e nana hemasua mia bei rofi naha.'' 19Dongwid ba, Herodias da mi dom mi i ba Yohanis kalfayente, hoba beka. 20Dongwid ba, Herodes da wafaling ti Yohanis dong amarofi beka hopa yombati da hian marekli ba da bei fayeng naha, hoba Herodes da hedong miang hadao Yohanis hei wa mahi, da la tukai wedomi halekda, hoba Herodes da Yohanis do mawa.>>>>>>> 4b592633a7a570dd5bb5c180764de39f0d3e0289<<<<<<< HEAD21dong wid ba, sa tadeng ba hedong mia, he tung ba mihayadi,da lek weoni tuang-tuang hawai foka-foka loki ye galelea hei fingkang wehada sama di.22dong wid ba,hedong miang Herodes hewi masua mad da soang dangsa da kang we ong ba Herodes ye ama ba dofa miti ba heihawai, lei da moki masua watangi dia ti na la miede sa mi afeng mia dohadoa.=======21Dong wid ba, sa tadeng ba hedong mia, he tung ba mi hayadi, da lekweoni mi tuang-tuange, foka-foka ye Galilea he fingkang, wahada sama di. 22Dongwid ba hedong miang Herodias hewi masua, mad da dangsa da kang weong ba Herodes ye ama ba dofa miting. homi, hei hawai, leida moki masua watangi hewi ''watanga diati na la miede sa neafeng mia do hadou.''>>>>>>> 4b592633a7a570dd5bb5c180764de39f0d3e0289<<<<<<< HEAD23dong widba, Herodes da dabenri, ank-nak hadow na mi ede,na kul mi ede te, sa ba ba ne afeng mia do hadau na wa mi ede. 24dong widba masua mad dong da laki sa deya watangi na ko nahayekite? heya da wehawai,Yohanis pemaptis heakai. 25dong widba, hed wariang hadou Yohanis pembaptis hiakai mi panei mii ba minedte.=======23Dong, wid ba Herodes da do bendri, hewi nek hadou na mi ede, nakul miedte, sa na ba neafeng mia do hadou na wa mi ede. 24Dong wid ba, masua mad dong da loki ya sa deya,'' watangi newi na ko hayete?'' he ya da wahawai, ''Yohanis Pembaptis hiakai.'' 25Dong, wid ba hed wariang hadou,'' Yohanis Pembaptis hiakai mi panei mi i ba, mined te.''>>>>>>> 4b592633a7a570dd5bb5c180764de39f0d3e0289<<<<<<< HEAD26dong widba, he homi latukai mi bekdi, dofa siang nek dambenri hore hawai milaki naha.27dong widba lei da ama ba terfayeng kang haboti ya ba misa yohanis pembaptis hiakai haweti ba mi moki masua hedi.28dong widba,ba moki masua da panei mii ba sa midea hede. 29dong widba, hedong miang hadou, Yohanis he moki lok da wahawai yombak, datia Yohanis heidmi basa mi anai mii.=======26Dongwid ba, lei homi latukai mbekdi, hoba ama dofa siang nek dombendri hore, debei hawai milaki naha. 27Dong, widba leida amaba terfayeng kang haboti ya bamisa Yohanis Pembaptis hiakai, haweti ba mi moki masua hedi. 28Dongwid, ba moki masua, da me panei mi i ba sa midea hedi. 29Dongwid ba, hedong miang hadau, Yohanis he moki lok da wamahia yombak, datia Yohanis heidmi ba sa mi anei mil.YESUS DA ama RIFI SETING HEWAI SIANG MI NONE>>>>>>> 4b592633a7a570dd5bb5c180764de39f0d3e0289<<<<<<< HEADYESUS DA AMA RIFI SETING HEWAL SIANG MI HOANEI30dong wid,Yesus da moki lok mi tualoli, da hatahani nak ri wohok tangi. 31dong widba,Yesus da hatahani,mek pi sara ba mikili tahai ba dommirei. 32dong widba, Yesus ye hemoki lok do tafuda sara ba mikil tahai ba eh homi domerei.=======30Dongwid ba, Yesus da demoki lok mi toluali, da hatani nak riweon niya, nakri wohok tangi. 31Dongwid ba, Yesus da hatahani, ''mekpi saraba mikili sade ba kabei pomiti, wan amafaring>>>>>>> 4b592633a7a570dd5bb5c180764de39f0d3e028933dong widba,ama faring da dotu firai takata do haluali afeng misa haroisa. 34wan Yesus da wafoka hamina pi mia haroisi ama faring la tukai homi hembeka, piihe lung ba bei hapong puna hadonaha wi da hedong miang Yesus da tanga faring mi we hok tangi.35dong widba, wan sa tungtama, Yesus he moki lok da tia hok tangi, sara ba do latukai mikili ya wan tuntama kang. 36haboti afeng-afeng kiding nya, afeng-afeng foka misa siang do be?37hoba, Yesus da hawai ria, siang kang lupa mi hone, hado da heihawai nisa siang kalupa hebeli aisaha ayoki daner bel te hi tia mi hoa ne. 38Yesus da wehawai seng kalupa seng da ropa? sa herei! wan he moki lok da dohiana di, da wetangi, seng kalupa, afi ayoki.39Dongwid ba Yesus da haboti ya,ted hawal-hawal ba sama welengai hom mia miti. 40Amafaring ba, hedong miting, kabei-kabeiji ba ded mi tualuale ba miti,wa ama aisaha nuki, wa ama karseting. 41Dong wid ba, Yesus da siang kalupa seting, afi ayoki da adii mi rei, da demama wa hatang mii he kang we tangi ba da sik hawali ya Yesus da mi de moki loki ba mi hayaudi, ama faring hadau da afi ayoki mi ba ama hei mahau hesen he ri wang.42Dong wid ba ama haima nei ba sa wasiki. 43Dong wid ba, he moki da pakai karnuk wal ayoki mi ba siang kalupa ye afi ayoki he amoi e miiji. 44Dong wid ba, neng-neng rifi seting siang kalupa nei.45Hedong wid ba, Yesus da de moki loki haboti ya eh hong mirei, deitu Betsaida, we habang mi sade, he hom miang Yesus da ama faring haboti ya deisade. 46Wan Yesus da dong wid tangah da buki misa akuce. 47Wan sa tuntama kang, eh wan tia wa foka tama mia, Yesus da dona kala takata mia.48Dong wid ba da de moki loki hereise, he moki lok da wafoka biake latukai domiaraisa, timoi da filia hadow bei honuki naha, dong wid tungtma misaka ba sa he buti ya Yesus dasa de de moki loki hopa miij. da sa taha milake ba de moki lokimi hapiet. 49Dong witba, he moki loki da ire. 50Wan he moki lok da tafuda Yesus mi herei, dong wid ba da marekli,hoba Yesus da we tangi,mi haranra, api do nedi! merekla naha.51Dong wid ba he moki lok hommirei, ya timoi foka bai wesei, dong wid ba he moki tafuda wa domi halekda. 52Hoba he moki lok dar we hatuk naha hore, siang kalupa midalekdi, homi dar kira. YESUS DA AMA FARING HAKANRA53Dong wid ba, Yesus da de moki loki dahau ba anei Genesaret mi sa do sei. 54Wan do tafuda eh hom mia ba sei amakang lok da wan tiai Yesus da do hiana di. 55Dong wid ba da firei ba sa sara tafuda mi tangi ya ama harik mi dik tahi. hadua ba tia Yesus hei we faling.56Dong wid ba tek misa hadau, da afeng kiding mi sade afeng foka sa hadau, ama da ama harik mi ama faring hanaya mi ha yedi dong wid ba da he koda hiantuk wa pane dia ti hokanra. dong wid ba ma wida he he koda hiantuk we pane dia tia da hokanra.

Chapter 7LAHATALA HEHUKUNG AMAKANG HEMITHENATEA  
1Dongwi ba dami det tou amabavari Yesus dahama haiving hekaliata Yerusalem miabatia.2Dongwiba da herei hemoki kabei Yesus husnei siangkangne datang bei batia naha tambeka hedong datang dabei bati naha. 3Amaba Farisi wati yue Yahudi wad dota luda dabei dota tuda siang neinaha dabei datang bati basai hatang hawata midi naha hedong heihewandong widi heiving hekaliata dawan hedong wapuna. 4Dongwiba ama ba Yahudi wati datia sanaba amakangia riudania siang nenaha darabei datang bati anaha, wan dotafuda hedomawa atanga hadou dami bawapuna, dong wihoba takutang, diamai wabati ahadasama.5Dongwiba, amaba Farisi heiving hekaleta da Yesus mihatahania, '' nahe emokiloking da bei heiving hekaleata, da waoni toasama naha?''a6Yesus da we tangi,'' Yesaya da wa surai kulritako rtafare: 7hoaluk hoafou dong la do kolkoliwan da matoktangi haboting dong amakang.' hei Yesaya 29:138Abei Lahatala hetanga halua naha, ria ong amakang hedomawa.'' 9dong, wi ba Yesus da watangi,'' fulohi mi ba mi Lahatala hehukung parenta mi laki mi ba rimitri nate sunya weiateiwi do mabati. 10Musa dawetangi' emama eya,' hoaluk noa fouse da mahe ama, hetangabeka,' mi ba mi de mama deya' dongkul heahukung di dai mong.'11Dong wi ba, ri watanga riwam mi di ba emama naha te eya,' naya na miki di ba miridi mi ba miri di hedong, romi rofi heminede,' 12nabei natang liki ba e mama nahate eya, 13Ni we hedong wi ba pi hetanga milak mibi yaki Aisala he sura sani hedong mauwa ba domi lohi kul hadau sadomi lohi. wan na faring wa on bna pi do he di.''14Hedong wi ba, Yesus amakang,'' dotafuda hori dong wei ba dawetangi natanga, wafaling rotai, da mi rom mia. 15Na wa da amakang heuisaha mia ba dami nabeda, naha amakang mia ba meng hedong hebeka.'' 16'' hedong amakang wa nu nuk di ba mahei hawai hopa dia tiwafaling, kul dawatangi! ''17Do wi, ba Yesus da tofa mei amakangloki domiti, hemokiloki mitatahani dawataming i. 18Dong wi ba, da ''mihatahi dong wi bada reideng ribei mi habeda naha? 19Da, wehom me da bei homi mia naha, hoba tatoke, dong wi ba miba mia dong me.'' sa hedong do mia, Yesus da wetangi ba tafuda siang ma kang.20Dong wi ba dawetangi, '' nahe amakang dong mia ba me hedong hebeka. 21Da, hom mia, da amakang ho mia homi beka dam mireni, tuai-tuai ba takau, terfayeng, 22Taring tawong, tebeka, mitetukang batace, takor tafare, tomi da wadiai,tebai, mitanoke, hedong tafuda beka. 23Tafuda ba bekang tafuda bah amakang, da mia ba hedong beka sara ba hedong.''HEWAI RUMAI AMA NUKI MASUA24sara ba hedong, mia ba Yesus da mi daleli bah da laki afeng bah Tirus ye Sidon. hedong, da mei da we tofa nuk mei hedong ama nuk dohiana naha, dong wi ba da bei doahaling naha do mi ahelte. 25Alekang ba wan kandri Yesus, hane wa mahia ama nuki masua hewi masua timoi beka da hoamerei da Yesus hetuk pea mi tia. 26 Masua ba hedong Yunani, lahayadi Siro-Fenisia. Yesus da wetangi ridai timoi beka haloise da moki mia ba da dotakia.27Dong wi, ba yesus da masua het ba tangi,'' moki hatok da fikda te dong beka moki-moki hesiang kalupa mi ba mi kai ba hok wat naha.'' 28Dong wi, ba masua da wehawai da Yesus wetangi,'' rofi, Tuhan. hoba, kai-kai ba api da api meja ua mia moki he siang ma he ameta-ameta ba hasei api ne.''29Dong wi, ba Yesus da masua wetangi,'' riarhadou wa lake. ba setang dong wan hoa tiki.'' AMABA HAWLI BEKA WANHOA KANRI 30Dong wiba masua dawai tovami sadi dasahiang tihewing apitadia,setang dongwantaki. AMABAHAWEIBEKA WANHOKANRI32Dongwi badawai hadoa basa Yesus hopamia amaba hawei bekaye amababei ta nganaha. Dawai dotavuda watangi hadoaba Yesus hopam me.33dongwitba, Yesus da amang do na ka amauring hanaya mia. Da Natang paka mi ba mi ama ha wei dom mei da wan ho a punyi, Datang ni halifi tahi. 34dong, wiba Yesus da ahalingtama, mirei da ahel lohi mi ahel dong i ba datangi, "Efata!", dong wite "Dawebireila!" 35Hedong miang, ba ama wei dong valaki, halivi ba koding waruli, dong wid te da mikang tangi.36Dong wiba, Yesus da hetaki misa ama wa hoktangi he. Na ba ded arei di, Mi ama we hoktangi he, dong wihoba kul dei hei take, dong wihoba sa dei ma tok tanga.'' 37dotafuda, waharoidi da hoa fou da watangi, da na weong dia ti tafuda kang. Hei'' rofi da ama bah hawei beka da tangamahia ama ba tanga beka da tanga.''

Chapter 8ROTI SETING AYOKI AMAKANG RUVI BUT HEDE  
1Tadeng ba hedong mia, amangkang fasring da den mitoatou baba na ba ne hei dong hadoa naha, Yesus da demakilak hari bada hedwatanga, 2"Nomi" ama kang faring ba warang hembeka tedwidi bati tadeng sua hammisa do helok hadau nuhaima,naba ne heidang hadaanaha. 3Da, hatak damidiai banahabat ba dei sade ba defa misade, da satama miaba tatur tedwidi bati dining maha da buaskla miaba tia." 4Da, wemaki loki "da hehawai, temiaba pirotima miba anyakang taring hone sara ba piapi miada mikili."5Hedong, widba, Yesus dahatahania, "ri rotikarseng?" dawehawai, "roti seting ayoki" 6Hedong, Yesus da amakang faring habot ba anai miti, dengwidba da roti seting ayok mia, da weakue, dawai kadel-kadeli, ba dadi de mokilok hed ba da rai amakang faring hone hellok da amaksang faring mihoane.7He, mokilok he afi kiding dang hadouy kabei hasdo, hedong widba daweakuti, Yesus da de moki lok haboti ari mi amakang faring heseng. 8Amakang faring da nei ba sa hatak tiddi, da he amoi dong tualuali ya pakai seting ayoki wemiji. 9piaha amakang rifi buti danei, hedang widba, Yesus da habet ba laki. 10Hedong widba Yesus ye hemoloki da etaha meba dalmanuta afeng miji. YESUS MIHAMINGTAKE BA NAHE SURGA MIA MAIDALEDA MAHIANGRIA12Roh da Yesus hemiaba da ahe lohi fili, datangan nahe, "nengmoki masua moki midalekda tahai? na herofi watanga, bei nuk da midalekda mi masua moki nengmoki dp hed naha." 13Hedong, widba Yesus da hedoiti, ba dami dawai ba etahame, ba wehabang me. FARISI WATI HE RAGI YE HERODES HE RAGI1415Hedong widba, Yesus da hapeisake, riar binengra! ba heriminang ba farisi wad heragi te herodes herangi.16Hedong widba hawai mitua tangi nuki mi ya avenga den mitau hetlok ba bey roti hopa naha. 17Dawe, dong widba do hiana dia Yesus da mihok tangah nahe hewe tanga. weriet ba bey roti hopa mia naha? bey rian liake naha? apa romi dong widba lara tafuela?18Riat ba apang riang ropa noba bey hiang naha? hawai riwey ropa hoba bey we faling naha? bey riading he nami nang naha. 19Tadeng ba na roti seting hawece miba mi aisaha seting we hace karseng da pakai homi iti minak " di ba hom mia, siang ma ba rita auali? da he hawai karnuk wai ayoki."20"Hedong widba roti set nayoki mi amabang riui buti siang mma heminak da pakai karseng ah tualoli? hei da we hawai pakai set na yoki." 21Dong, widba da hada tuatangi, rian leka renaha?" YESUS DA BETANIA MIA HIANG BEKA HAKNRI2223Yesus da hiang beka hatang we puna. Afeng uisana misade. Hedong widba ba Yesus da hiang don we puinyi habot deisade dong widba da datang miba mi hiakai tahi da hatahani, wangana wa hiang re naha?"24Dong, widba ama da ahaling tama mirei hedong widba datanga, "na amakang herei, dong da amatang herei bata he lak widba." 25Dong widba Yesus da datang mi tahi, mi hiang tahi, wan daria kang hiang wan wekanri, dang widba karnuk da herai dong kang. 26Dong, widba Yesus da haboti deisade hawai uisaha mi sa naha. YESUS DONG HE KRISTUS28Da mi hok tangi ya nedi Yohanis pembaptis, avenga da we tanga dia Elia; da hawai avenga da we tangi neding Nabi''29Hedong, wid ba Yesus da hawai mi, lanang eding ''he om mia' nedo ma, Petrus da tangi e Kristus?'' 30Hedong, wit ba Yesus da mihaming laki risa ama hopa mia hadow neding mi hok tangi he. DA DESUSA HE WE DA MI BA MI AKANG FARING MI HOK TANGAH31dong with ba, Yesus da dey sakolah mihok tangi amakang hewi yo ko dawe beka hom mija. Yahudi he fingkang dawe hatoke ama, dong wit ba dawe faling ba mong da mong hoba mi tadeng suida diang kandra 32Yesus da wehaluale amakang faring tafuda dor hiana dia dong wit ba, Petrus da Yesus halok ber ba da hoatake,33da de, uipea da hesekolah miherei Yesus, da Petrus hetapi ya dawetangi, nopa do mi abere.! riado ribei Aisala hekang do wetuatuk naha. hoba amakang hei do ma ba haluale.34Hedong wittehi da amakang faring hore, dey sakolah we hau dong widba da het loki da dey sakolah wetanga mahe dong widba me nei haluale do de iti we duare da tikap bata bang dite. hedong ban me ney halual.35Hedong widba mahe we de iti miba ne bualti dia hekang ba dong da hanakela, dong widba we neding nane takmon dia arik he sa hekang hiang tasnga ba hekang dong arik hiang ariija. 36Nahe da miba mekang dia hoba hanotang da nakda? 37Nakhe damiba mi buki taha mia nahe da miba da noting dong heisede?38Dang witba mamahe miduami tuki ba me neding we hamial dia nahe we miba danoting dong bel dong witba ba dahe manyaknya ba deti ba dosa do, hedong arik amakang hewi hadow arik hemama hadompia mia wetanga maleikat-malaikat ban san rialing sadet taou."

Chapter 9  
2 waria, dami talanra dong wiba,Yesus da Petrus,ye Yakobus,hawai Yohanis,dong wiba da dedkalali buku daliala hong mere.dong wiba Yesus da damo hakili da hapong pea mia. 3 dong,wiba heinyamang do falaka kang te kul kang. bei ama ba namang hakul dia wa biku taha mia naha hoba hekang homi mia da hakul dia.4dong, wiba hapong pea mia,Elia Musa,dildilia dil Yesus hada toa tanga. 5dong,wiba Petrus da Yesus hetwetangi,tuang te mikang ni api domia,me pi domia sara sua we ong nuk ey,nuk Musa,hei nuk Elia hei. 6tekidom,bati nak dammehawai da mahawai da marekla.7dong wide tabo kul da detareja dami ba hoa bale, dong wiba tanga nuk da timoi hom damakdi, api do wiba tehekan hoafaling! 8dong,wiba da detbaletnya mi herei,dabei hawai ama afenga wa hien naha Yesus donakala.9dong, wiba da buki hong mia ba me sei,Yesus da haboti dongwidi mi ama we hok tanga naha. nak riheini,sa Lahatala hewi neng dam moni da amoimona hanaya mia midiang kanri. 10dong,wiba dei he tanga wepuna donakala domi mihatahania,mi tiang kanra do ko api na,api mon do ma.11dong,wiba da Yesus hatahania,tekitehi Elia da kul tiese te dei tu te? 12dong,wiba Yesus da hetwetangi, Elia te deitudi dame tafuda we hayaudi te dong wiba me we bilenra ba heiwida dong wiba Lahatala hewi neng da mi araisa hawai hoatietnya. 13dong wiba da hedwetanga Elia wan tiei,dong wiba dame we ong nahe hedomaba,pia he wan mi webilenri ba mi hadasama di.''DONG WIBA HEMOKI DABEI KARI BEKA HATANG NAHA 15dong,wite do kanri amakang faring da hoa wale dong wiba da marekli da firei da hareng lake. 16dong,wiba Yesus da mi hatahania,na meng abet faring bei homi tuting mia naha.17amakang faring mia nuk wehawai,tuang huri moki ba api do nahadoa ba opa me.te idem bati kari da moki ba api do hoa madi do maku. 18tadeng kopang kari dei hoa madia, da denmi anai mati hawa kila dei toke, dong wiba da dawet takea dong wiba dei tikai pang,nawe emoki hetwetangi da kari do haloi hoba bei he hora naha. 19dong wiba Yesus dawe hawai dawe tangi, ne neng moki ba bei kang homi mia naha! adeng karseng he na ropa mia moki ba apang hadoa ba nopang me!20dong, wiba moki da hadoa ba Yesus hopa me. dong wiba kari Yesus da Yesus mi herei, da we moki do hohayok-hayokke moki da detmi anai mati da dakui-dakui hawa kila da toke. 21dong, widi Yesus da moki moki hemama hatahani, api do wan tadeng seng he hoamadia? dawe hawai dar da moki. 22dong,witte kari da bei halialba mi arahiang mat naha mi ba mi sawa mat naha dong witba habekda dong wi hoba, ana na nuk weong omi niang beka a nua hallale.23 Yesus da hewetangi, dong wiba ame mia? karnuki do tafuda-tafuda awe mia miba mi amakang ba heihaluale we hadasama dia.24dong wiba moki he mama da beikli dami homi take,nawe rumai! omi nembeka te ko nabei eihalua naha hoba! 26da do hayok-dohate hatede kul latukai dong wiba kari beka dong do taki moki ba hedo pia he wan mong wida! 27dong,wi hoba Yesus da hatang wa puna dong wiba dami haliali, moki dami daliali.28dong, wiba Yesus da fahomei,Yesus hemoki da hatahani ba he nuk-nukdi teit te ni bei hetiai naha? 29dong wiba da hatahani, na ba api do bei ropa naha hoba la akut te.30YESUS DA MONG HEI WOTANGA 31teidombati da demoki da hada sakola dia naha te hada tutnia da hetwetangi, amakang hewi mi dong wiba dawe fayeni mi tadeng suida damidiang kanra. 32dong wi hoba he mokiloki da bei weharouda naha dong wiba da hien marekla dabei hatahania naha.HEROFI DO MAHE TE FOKA34dong wi hoba dam makudi da safoka mia da mi toa tietnyi nuki ya afenga mahe ko temfoka. 35dong wiba Yesus da da demoki karnuk walayoki hori dong wiba da hetwetangi mahe doma ba deitude, ari dawai sa te dowekda rotafuda dong wiba ri tafuda hapong puna.36dong wiba Yesus,da moki kiding nuk hokdi mi hapong pea mi hatang mi dong widi da hetwetanga.37ma wahe moki do hei mi' name hom mia, hedong he hommia naha,hoba pia he lahatala he naboti hedong he hommia wida.AMA BA WE KARI HALOI BA HANE HOM MIA39dong wi hoba, Yesus dawe tangi,'' hapong hawet hawet naha ma ama he nane homi domia,na ba we domi halekda da do dawe ong hedong he hommia, dongwitehi hedong mia da noa tienya.40mahe pii haluale, hedong he pi afenga. 41kul herofing hi nammeroktanga, mawa he sa takutang nuk mi ede hedong heihaluale hedong hebel hadoa.''AMA BA WE KARI HALOI HANE HOM MIA43dong, wiba atang dong dawe beka weong mikang dong atang dong hawece de mi kang dong awe hommi mit nateti do atang tuk, naha dia ti atang do ayoki a neraka me, ara hiang homi mia ba dabei akung naha. 44sara ba mong dabei mong naha ara dabei takung naha.45dong, wide etuk dong dawo ong ba awe beka weong,etuk dong hawetce. he mikang dong awe afeng kang hom mia etuk dong hawece, naha ba etuk doayoki ame neraka mia, 46sara ba bei mon da mong naha, ara da bei takung naha.47do wiba iang da we we beka weong,iang dong nuk we kille doayoki naha, doayoki enmi naraka mace. 48sara ba mon da bei mong naha ara dabei takung naha.49dong, wite ama kang tafuda atiimakal mi hede ara waising mi hede. 50atii dong kang, hoba he aleising dong da naha dia ti riwai teidweong ba dawe aleising dia?atiimakali miba mi ommi ia dong wiba tapieta tomi tembeka te.

Chapter 10MITASIKE  
1Yesus da saraba hedong doitba ba Yudea afeng misade hoba da Yordan hekula aknuk me dongmia ba amakang faring da hoali ba da tanga mi hoktanga. 2hoba, farisi wat da hok tia ba dokol tia hatahania, ba kulrofi ba neng da demasua wehasike? 3Yesus da hetanga wehawai nak he musa da heriboti? 4dawatangi, musa da weharouda ti neng da sura tasik weong ba mitasik.5hedong widhoba,Yesus da watangati, ri romi kira hatang,musa da webelenri ba miridi. 6hoba dar latuhei weong dong, Aisala da neng masua weon ni.7dong widte,neng da deya demama doiti. 8hedong, dil deit hoanukdi,hore, bei hawai ayoki naha,ya dil heit lanuki. 9dong widba, nahe Aisala da mi hoanuki,amakang dami hasik naha.10hedong widba, da fahom mia ba,demoki loki da tanga ba api hehatanga nia.11dong widba, mahe demasua wehasik ba we afenga hada nika dia ti,da tafui weoni. 12da masua hadou da deneng wehasik ba neng afenga hada nika diati, da tafui weoni.YESUS DA DEKANG MI MOKI-MOKI WE HARENG 14hoba, Yesus da herei, ba denya demoki lok hebai ba dawe tanga, moki-moki kiding da nopang me rihalek naha hoba Aisala he afeng kang dong ama ba hedwida hei.15na tanga ba herofi mi roktanga, mahe bei Asala heafeng mia ba moki nuk wida naha, dabei hom me naha. 16dong widba, Yesus da moki-moki hoa bakea dekang mi hedi ba datang mi tahi.AMA KAWAISA DA YESUS HALUALE DONG MA18Yesus da hed wetangi, nahe ri neng kang wetanga? bei amasanuk hekang wetanga naha, hedonakala kang. 19hetanga-tanga roheana,te terfayeng naha, tafuja, naha,takau naha, tanga fok-fok naha, tedful naha, eya emama hoafou.20ama ba apang da wetanga, tuang hur, na abeti nawan tafuda wehaluali. 21Yesus da neng moki mi hoareadi ba dekang mi hede, damihoktangi,darnanuk touna naha da opa mia, hore lakba na ba opa mia sa balikke,ba miama ba na hopa naha mihede, dia arii ri sorga mia hekang peija hedong miba me haluale. 22hoba tanga ba dami pomi habekda,dalekda homi darbekda tekwidi dabei nawa puna naha.23Yesus da dopa damina mirei ba dademoki lok wetanga, ama ba kafakai dong Aisala he afeng me beka. 24he moki lok dawe dakuri da tanga ba dong mahia, dawai hedwetangi, hei nemoki loki ted witte ri Aisala he afeng kang me beka! 25hemi kang dong unta upi nuk da weting dawe naheiwida amakawaisa dawe Aisala he afeng kang me.26hemoki lok da wedakuri ba tapiata tanga mitoktanga,mahe wedakanra? 27Yesus dami hoarea ba watanga,amakang heihaluale bei rofinaha, hoba bei Aisala naha, hedong Aisala hei.''SEWAI MIBA YESUS HALUALE28Petrus da Yesus hatahania, herei,nikariang do idba niedi aluale.29Yesus dawe tanga, na herofi mi roktanga, bei amanuk da tofa doit naha, ura neng, ura masua, heya, mama,hewilakai,heut mila, da welak wesing,ba tadeng ba woro me, rea ba domilohi. 30me tadeng ba apido bei aisaha nuki toa hapoili ba mia naha tofa,newura neng,newura masua, nia,mama, hewilakai heut hemila da hoalak hoasing ba tadeng ba dami tia sa hetilipang mia. 31hoba ama ba deicudi arii dasa dowekda, da ama ba dowekda arii da dasa deicude.''YESUS DA DEIMONG WATANGA3233 da wetangi, herei, piwan yerusalem mire hoba amakang hewi do miba we leifoka ye'heifing hekaliata hoa hatang.hellok da herfayeng we mi yahudi he amakang hoahatang. 34da hebai, da hoapunya, da hedfayeng, ba sa doimong. hoba tadeng ba he sua da diangkanra.YAKOBUS YE YOHANIS DETANGA MI HOPA DOME36hoba Yesus da hedwetanga, nahe he romi dia nawe halual ba mi rede. 37hellok dawe tanga, omawa dia niding nuk da eikang miti ya'nuk da we eibiki miti,ba da ekang hommia.38hoba,Yesus da hedwetanga,na rieke dar ruhiana naha,romawa we cawan ba nabuce do he riibai ri buce,saba mi niakai mitoki hedong he mi riakai mi toke. 39hellok awatanga, numaba,Yesus dahed wetanga, cawan bana buce arii rii buce. sa ba minikai mitoke arii mi rikai mitoke. 40hoba riwe neikang ye' neibiki miti, neding na bei namihed naha,hoba sara bado amaba deimihayauda hei.41da dong wamahia, hewi karnuki da Yakobus ye'Yohanis hebai. 42hoba,Yesus da horba dawe tanga, rohena ba heding da tapong puna hoba heding bei yahudi wad naha, deidong mawa he domi daliala.43bei da rinaya mia naha, mahe rinaya mia dia he domi foka, hedong he ripong puna. 44mahe henuki he hommirang ba rinaya mia,heding he ripong puna. 45hoba, amakang hewi da tia hapong puna naha,hoba he pipong pona.dade ahe miba amakang faring heihesadi.YESUS DA BARTIMEUS HIANG AKUTA HAKANGRI47Wemahia, Yesus dong Nasareth wati, wanda wetanga Yesus, Daud hewi ominembekakkte. 48Amakang faring da hetake dadarangra. Heda dar latika tanga, "Daud hewi omine nembekatte!"49Hedongwitba, Yesus dawa darangri ba datanga, heding horte, daama akuta horba hewatangi, omi haromai, nateinatea, da ore. 50Hedongwitba, dadekoda foka haruli, hedongwitba da Yesus hopang me.51Yesus da hedwa tanga nahe heomaba dia nawe halualba nami ede ? Ama akutada wehawai, "Tuanghur, dongwitba nareikang." 52Hedongwitba Yesus dahedwa tangi, lake, omirofi he akangra, tadengba hengmia dareikang, hedongwitba dasafoka mia Yesus haluale.

Chapter 11YESUS DA YERUSALEM ME HEFOKA<<<<<<< HEAD  
1dong, witba hel lok da sa Yerusalem, haplekda Betfage ye betania, sa bukit zaitun ,Yesus da desakola ayoki haboti, 2dahet we tanga,''ah lak ba afeng ba apompea mia, wan a hom me, keledai ba dar abeti ri hadatarenra ba dar habuki, dan ama dar=======1Dong, witba hel lok da sa Yerusalem, haplekda Betfage ye betania, sa bukit zaitun ,Yesus da desakola ayoki haboti, 2Dahet we tanga,''ah lak ba afeng ba apompea mia, wan a hom me, keledai ba dar abeti ri hadatarenra ba dar habuki, dan ama dar taha naha. harul kandri ba wit me. 3Ama wa da ri tahania, 'teit te apang ri we ong?', mi tanga, 'Tuhan da keledai ba apido do he mauda ba da hawai taboe ba api do mitia.'''>>>>>>> 53c141d49de6fdb37c50ff988e60add524f9ca554Dong, with ba helloki dawei ba sa keledai ba dar abeti yo kodi ba asek we ha buki, uisaha mia, ba safoka, da wetahang. 5Amakang kabei dong mia nateti da hatahania, ''nahe ri weong keledai weharule?'' 6Da we hawai dong piene Yesus da wetanga do wida, dong witba amakang-amakang loki da het do wati ba laki.7Dong, withba da keledai witba Yesus, hopa misade, dong withba he koda lohi dami ba keledai hong tahi, ba Yesus da taha me miti. 8Ba, amakang faring da de koda lohi mi safoka taha mi iya avenga da uti bata minaka hawet ba puna. 9ama faring hapongpia milake da wetangi. ''Kang Aisalah homimia ba atiai. Mazmur 118; 25- 26 11Dong witba Yesus da Yerusalem misade mi akut tofa hom i do mei, dong witba karnuk wal ayoki ba da minamia da herei dong witba he sakolah karnuk wal ayoki da betania misade hoba wan tungtama. YESUS DA KABUT BATA BENGRI12Hedong mi ariija da ti Betania mia Yesus hatok midei.13Da hedong witba kabut bata herei da buaklah meherei he tala wan faring da sa ua mia herei. ko dong mia nanuk mia hei hoba hetala sunya. het tadeng dong bai kabut bata bei wa weya naha. 14Hedong mia ba Yesus da bata we tangi eding awai api naha. bei nawa amakang da ri it hiang naha ba sa domi lohi, hei sakolah da we faling.YESUS DA AKUT TOFA MISADE 15Dong witba Yerusalem misade, Yesus da Aisalah he tofa me ba bel balike dawe tua halau na ba mi tak balik bai da hakila soki, deinya bel balik bai da tafuda tua halau. 16Wan hedong mia ba ama akut tofa mia balik naha.17Dong witba, Yesus da hori da hadatutni da we tangi, dongwitba we bilenri ne tofa do. sara ba mi akuc hei mi amakang tafuda we hadasama dia, dong wit hoba rimi hakil ba takau tofa dia. 18Dong we imam kepala da we huafaling di ba da safoka tahai ba fayeng heding amakang faring we marekla we duami halekda tanga ba da we tanga. 19Hedong witba wan afeija Yesus ye he sakolah mi daberi mi avenga misade. HEKANG BA AISALAH HOMI MIANG HEDONG PII DI20Dong witba mituana ba da hapiace, kabut bata. kabut bata wang takati 21Petrus da we daminang da Yesus hatahania, tuanghuri kabut bata ba awe bengri yo wan takati.22Yesus da he hawai Aisalah homi ba we rumai ba haluali. 23Herofi-rofi na miba mi ebai, mahe dong withba buki ba apido we tanga buki ba api do mirilial mi tama wa mace. wan homi bai mi sei we merei naha, hoba awe rumai naha awe tangi dia da dei areija.24Nahe rimi noming taki romi rofi-rofi ba ri we haming take da miride. 25Ri natet ba ri akuce hoba romi woro ama hekiliki alekang ri mama Lahatala mi hayeke. 26Aisalah he kang ba pi bei halual naha, Aisala ba sorga mia hadaw dabei dua haliel naha.YERUSALEM HE FINGKANG DA YESUS HE KUASA WE TAHANG27Dong witba da hawai Yerusalem afeng mitiei, Yesus da akut tofa hom milake, he foka loki, Yahuda he foka loki da hopang mitiei. 28Dong wit ba da het we tanga na tukai he mi nede, mahe dong witba tanga mi ette hedong witba awe ong?29Yesus da hatahani, da tanga nuk we tangi, da we hawai, dong witba e kuasa ba ae tanga na we halual. 30Rofi ba Baptisan Yohanis do kul surga hei re amakang hei? da we hawai!31Dong witba da we tuatangi, dong witba pi wehawai, me surga, da wetanga, teit, ribei herofi naha?' 32Doba pi, we hawai, 'he amakang'?'' dong witba hefoka da hiang marekla ba mi amakang faring da dohiana ba Yohanis dong rofi-rofi ba nabi. 33Dong witba, da Yesus mihawai, nuhiana naha.'' dong witba Yesus da we hok tanga, '' nedi bay, nawetanga kuasa nane na wey ba wehaluale.''

Chapter 12ANGGUR UTI WETAMING IBA HEDING TUKAIA  
1Yesus da hada toatangiba dawe taming ia Amanuk he anggur ut hopa daba weongba webakh daulinuk miteki hedong mia mitoa luak dawesaka hetofa nuk oni dahoa wake dabuk afenga misade. 2Wan hou holang tadeng daa manuk haboti utwesakalak hoktia hedong widba da anggur heit mia hei. 3Hedong wi hoba amabatia da herfaeni hetie iba dotaki hatang taka.4Dongwidi dahawai nuk hadau haboti datiei dahie kai boli daong paneng ba hed naha mahada samadi. 5Dawai,ama afeng habot batia yombati dafayen moni. Hedong dami dalekdi we faring we hada sama kabei boli kabei fayena moni.6Ut adua darnuk hadou hopamiaba data boice hewiba homi hembeka. hoba damiba mihedi dawetangiba newida rihieta luk hieta fouse. 7Hedong wihoba amaba ut wefukang lokido damitoa tanga, apido hadou ut adua hore pifang moni henyakarnuki tafuda pidi.8Dahapung yoti dafayeng monyoti hedong widba, dami bami anggur ut mati. 9Nahe anggur ut adua dawe oni? datiaiba daamadawefukang loking herfayeng yoti dongwida anggur uti damiba afenga hede.10Rider bei sura san halekda naha:'wiba tafoongda dowati did wiba mateleki'11Apida Piadua, he ong he paneng pong ong paneng baapido peinghienamia wepomi halekda Mazmur 118:22-2312Hoba hedong mia hedloki dawesa foka tahai dahapunghei hoba ama faring dohiyena Yesus datanga wetanga hore dotaki yati.KAIBEL WEWAR HEI13Hedong, widba dahabatba Yesus hoktia hoba Farisi wat hadau Herodian wat hadau dadetanga weiba mihoa weme. 14Datiai da Yesus we tanga. "tuang nutafuda nuhianaba ama afenga hetanga abeiwefaling naha amadenamangmia abei miherei naha hoba ammatoktangang lahatala heisafoka rofi. hedongko kabei wewakeng hapieta laki pe banaha. 15Nikul wewaki tere nahaba nibei wewak naha? hedong wihoba hedommi koreng piadua wan dohiyena. dami wehok tangi yotba nakrihenei tahai? hadea ba nokme dong widek naherei."16Da, hadoaba tiei yotba Yesus dahed wetangi ma hanoting he api. hed koli dawe hawai kaisar wa hanoting. 17hedong wid ba, Yesus da hed wetangi yot ba na bei kaisar hedia mi bah kaisar hede. nahe Lahatala hei dia miba mi Lahatala hede. da Yesus hed we domi halekda.SADUKI WAT BA DA WETANGI BEI AMA UI MIA MI DA REN DA HADOA NAHA DA YESUS HAPONG PUNA.18saduki, wa ba da wetangi bei ama ul mia mi dar dar hadoi naha. da Yesus hopa mi tei bai dahatahania, da we tangi ya . 19tuang musa da bi lenri ba miniti dawetangi ya. ama nuk heura neng nopa ba moni heimasua hei sara domia, hoba bei hewi, hopa naha heura neng dong masua kalea di hatang toapuna da heti ha mi hadoase. mi heura wahada sandia.20monyehi amakang setnaoki. henuki da masua nu hokdi ba heding moni hoba bei hewi hopa naha. hedong wid ba hetmonyehi he ayoki masua bah hedong. 21dil hatang toa puni hawa moni hadou bei hewi hopa naha, hemonyehi he sua hadou hedong widi. 22motnyehi setnayoki, wa da bei moni hayad naha dong wid ba masua ba hedong haduo moni. 23ul mia mitalia he tadeng hed bai mi dalieli, masua ba hedong mako he masua dia motnyehi setnaoki do wan tawuda hemasua di yoti.24Yesus da hoa hawai, api do he ded heiya di ba rewe hasei rebei sura sani ye Lahatala hekariang rohiyena naha? 25hedong, wid ba het hoki da ama mona, hanaya mia midalia hed hoking bei nuk wa hadau neng masua hokda naha, hed loking malaikat ba afeng kang mia hetoa halikdi.26ama ba wan mon loki hawe harena ba da mi darou da, ri bei musa ,he sura mia ba halekda naha we fei bula alokai we hada sama. tei wit he Lahatala da mahoktangi neding Abraham he Lahatala, Isak he Lalatala, Yakob he Lahatala. 27heding bei ama mona, he Lahatala naha hoba ama rea. he Lahatala.NABA LATUKAI MASENA.28ama nuk, da he foka hanaya mia wefaling ti da we teilake. da hereisi Yesus da huahawai dong kang, dong wide da Yesus hatahani, nahe ko hemi kang ba hanaya mia? 29Yesus da we hawai, '' na ba hemi kang do Israel wa loki wefaling, pi Adua Lahatala ia nuk-nuki ba piAdua. 30omi ba, hekiding dong mi ba piAdua Lahatala hem beka te anoting hadow he hommirang, etukai hadow. 31he, ayoki ombeka tei wida omi e fela hembeka hadow hedong wida te ong paneng tuai ba da hatang hadoa naha.32Hedong ,witba hefoka da Yesus wetangi eding rofi tuang. arofi, wetangi ba naye hedong la nuki hawai afenga hadua naha. 33omi, hekiding dong kul hembeka, hawai he hommirang hawai etukai, hawai e amakang hembeka, ba omi e it hembeka yo wida. kul tafuda kang tatang bal ba hiede da bei hia naha. 34hedong wi ba Yesus da hereisi ama ba hedong da we hawai dong latukai masena, da hed wetangi ba eding abei Aisala. hetova hebuakla naha,'' hedong wid ba ama wa bei tukai ba Yesus. hatahania naha.KRISTUS DONG PIADUA.35da, Lahatala he tofa mia, tapating da wetangi ba. teiyok widek he da hefoka lok da wetangi ba Ktistus dong Daut hewi? 36Daut dona kala timoi san, hom mia tanga 'piAdua da hefoka wetangi ba neikang, do mitia mi miti hedong wide ama ba bei etoa kang naha loking nami etuk pea mi hatang. 37Daut donakala da Kristus wetanga ti 'piAdua'. hore Kristus dong ko da teyok wid hewi dia?'' ama faring, da wefaling dong latukai kang.ONG PANENG BAH MI HEFOKA LOK WE HADASAMA.38Yesus hetapating, hom mia dawetangi, ba hetaminang- taminang te hefoka loki wan da lak-lak loleh da ko da akan lohi tei ba. 39da ama hada luk fou hei sara ba da mit-mit ba ama hada luk hada fou hadau hadoa. 40hetloking datofa ya masua kalea wetaluk wetafik piehe ama kul ba welohi lohi dia wida hoba datuai ba hewoka nuk hepanea he.''TATANG BAL BA HIANG ROFI.41hedong widi, Yesus datatang bal hei sara da pomi hareng ba miti ama ba tia datang bal do seidong dei hoarea ama ba na ba faling hopa da tia faring dosei. 42masua kalea, ba bei na hopa naha da tia seng it ayok, dosei he dong hefaring rupia nuki.43Yesus da, de sakola lok hor ba, dam ma hok tanga herofi-rofi nam ma ok tanga, masua kalea do da latukai faring miba tatang bai heisara domi sei heidong mi dalielaba afenga lok hei taha mia. 44dada, tatang bal miang mi na hopang wei, hoba kalea ba bei na hopa naha datatang bal miang mi heamoi hekaleba halua naha hopa hedong, hi da mi.''

Chapter 13PIADUA HITAPATING WANSAWEHASEIAISALA HEI TOFANG HATET TOKHEI  
2Yesus da wetanga, riedi ''me tofa-tofa do hiang te? bei wei nuki hado bei miti naha wowa wi ua afenga ba dar bei hate hasei naha.''DAR LAHA VIA BAH PI ADUA SUSA TARENI.3lala do Yesus da wowa bukit zaitun miti, hapong ba we tofa Lahatala mia, Petrus, ye Yakobus, ye Yohanis, ye Andreas da hatahania ba Yesus donakala. 4wetangi ba riedi, batadeng mi hasei pi tawuda we kandri?.5hedong, wi ba Yesus wetangi ti riedi, bei ama da ted do hasei naha. 6ama faring wowa me ba mi homi we he Nane, da wetanga ya riedi dening ba ama ba do pi hasei ama faring.7tadeng nuk mia riedi beka bah worong bah, worong me mareli he. 8tadeng nuk ti, arema da mi darodi bah areman nuk hei bai, ari kome da me ba tara-tara hei sara mia, tadeng nuk mia merei foka, harik tuai hayadi.9kang, oang wo kang ari ama it mi sa mi hatani, ari sa e mi reding lei-lei ho hatang he dong ari sa da wetangi. 10Lahatala, hetanga hei tudi mi bah ama kang faring tawuda ho ha tang.11tadeng nuk mia, ama sa emi bah ho hatang ah kliki he na awe tangah, riding bei tangah naha , timoi sani he we tangah. 12arik, emonyehi nuk da hatani arik dai moni , mama hewi lakai ari da mi da li, arik awai mi to hawai hedong bah. 13nedi, mia bah ama ria bai, ama bah mahe he puna basa talipan mija dia ti hedong hekang we harena.NA BA HE BEKA MI AFENG HABEKDA HEI.14'' tadeng, nuk homi mia ama pi herei beka, nuk homi mia Yerusalam ami herei, tetuk akani da akut tofa balea. 15ama ba tufa wai bei tofa homi we naha. 16ama ba sa ut mia da bei dakil naha ya da he koda mia.17ama bah wi hatok mia, da wi hatik susa worong me. 18Akuce hedong bah na ba he areja da kafu bah dami areja he. 19arija- arija ti na da de areja tarik bah foka da areja naha, hedong arik da de areja dar afe-afe bah da we oni, dong wi bah Tuhan da we oni dong wi bah sa lala domiji, ari da bei da areja naha, hedong da we areja, dong wi ba. 20Tuhan da arik da mia bah tadeng-tadeng ba hedong.21do wi bah, ama da we bah tangi, herei, Kristus api domial naha te, aherei, hedi we hedong mia! awai rumai he. 22hedong da mi Yesus hoa pung dokoli de mi nabi- nabi, ari da mi da leli da na mai tiang ria wa tomi halekda kul wa tomi halekda, dong wi ba da te dohasei we hedong rofi, kul ama ba hem mi ahi. 23heri minang te nawan tawuda mi ba, mi tafoda roktangi da bei hedong da bei areja naha.24he bah, arija-arija ti da de areja tadeng bah tarik ba foka, faring ari da we tuana dia, 'ari ia da hadoi da bei falaka naha. 25Firi-firi hadoi da ahaling tama, mia bah da hasei da hasei, karnuki bah ahaling tama mia arik dah hayoke. ARIK DA TIA MOKI BAH AMA KANG .26''arik, da hiang moki bah ama kang da tia homi tabo-tabo dong wi ba he kuasa hedong he kang bah foka. 27dongwi, bah ari da malaikat-malaikat haboti dong wi bah da tuali wa mi a hi dongwi bah hiang buti timoi hiang, tia talipang sa talipang buki tia,talipang mia sa talipang mia tia, adi talipang sa adi talipang.28''halekdi ba wataming i kabut bata:we hasetan- hasetan dong wa do muru we da wan he adita hopa wan da usaha mia, wa ro hiana hedong wari dea wan peka. 29dong wi bah we riedi, wen dong wiba ri mi herei na bah hei loki wa dei arija,wan rohiana ba wan da tia pea pekdi, wan asahak mia.30na wa tanga he dong kul rofi na ma rok tangi, lala mere bah api do da bei do toki naha dai kul tafuda da areja te. 31adi beka ari da nakda, hei tanga ba api do da bei ari nakda naha.''HERIMINAN TE kANG-KANG ROFOKANG TE. 32''ari tadeng, naha te dong we hoba tadeng ye waring bei ama nu he do heina naha bei malaikat-malaikat hadong do hiang naha bei heding hado nohiana naha hoba mama he do hiana.33dong wi hore, heri mina minang. na, tia ba api do bei roheina naha. 34api do pi he lak ama kang wida. hedong wi bah da tofa datang hatani da de kang do mia ba mi dong, de na haji mi hedi mi ba mi nuk-nuk, bah mi hatang mia da ama ba asek we saka dei we saka.35ho re, ri he minang sa tadeng te mia te mia tofa adua tia, we afeja pea re, tuntama kang re, roa da kiaki pi re, mituana beka re. 36da tia lan marela da tia ropa mija ria tade re. 37Na nami ba mi rok tanga, na mi ba ama kang faring: 'we hok tangi dei he riminang!'''.

Chapter 14DAHETITNI BADONG WIDBA DA YESUS VAYENI  
1Tadeng foka ba Paskah hommia dongwiba batako ababa bei bin wamianaha do toa tilaka waria ayokdi, he timang fingkang-fingkang da he safoka tahei ba Yesus hapung ful beka hei haluale da Yesus herfayeng. 2Dongwiba, dawatangi," We tadeng sising hommia kawai ringgiba amakang faring hanaya mia."YESUS DO MINYAK NARWASTU HETTIBACE3Hedongwiba Yesus da beta mia, tufaba Simon kul da hoamadia, dongwiba dawe sara ba misiang ne peam miti, dowing domba masua masua nukdatiai dongwiba takulang kiding nukpana dongwiba takulang hammia do sah ba minuma sa hane narwastu ba hei ti he bei daliala. Dawe kadeli ba mi Yesus hiakai mitoki. 4Dowing domb, amakang kawai dawatangi homim bekda tafiala tembekdi, teid te sah minuma domi habekdi? 5Dongwiba, minyak do hebei daliala hebeli aisaha sua dongwiba miba miamaba hemit henateti dar beka hedong hede. "Dongwiba dawe masua kaliata hebai.6Dongwiba, Yesus dawatangi, "Detamai. Teitte rihewaila? daapa waong dong temikang. 7Dongwidi, ri amakang ba kaleba amakang ropamia, seng te romaba, riwe kang weong do hommia. Dongwihoba, ribeiwe nomi domia naba nedoo beir li dia naha. 8Masua ba apang wan dawawe oni nakda weong kang. Hedei cu ha wele dongwiba sahe tia. 9dongwiba namioktanging herofi, teokmia Lahatala he sura saning wetanggi mebuki taha miia, nak masua ba apang dawatangi diati aril hawai watangi dawatangi bah hawai minada sama dia." YUDAS DAWA BEKA MI AHELI YESUS HETWA BALIKA1011Hedongwiba dawa faling, dotafuda mi tomi dukki seng mi Yudas hede hedong homi kiliki dasafoka tahai, dahetdohasei.WAN DA TADENG FOKA MIHAYADA13Dongwiba, amakang ayok haboti dongwiba mihok tangga, "a afeng ba hedong misadi neng nuk da sah heisarah puna. Teyok ho a hda tarenri hedong. Haluele, 14Dongwiba da teyok misade, miba tofa a dua hatangha hia, 'tuang hur dawatangga: Teyokmi ni neadua he lekne he sakolah dotafuda?'15Arii, da tofa nukmi anri risa mihayaiwa he pingave ye hemok. Heromi waha yauda hedong misa wahayaidi dong misiang ne." 16Hedongwidi, hei moki lok dalaki dasa sara bami hayaudi mia. Yesus Sara ba dawatangi yo wan dahi ani hedongwiba dotafuda waha luali.17Wan we tuntama, Yesus hei moki dining karnuk wal ayoki. 18Hedongmiang, damiti da siangne, Yesus dawatangi, "Na rofi rofi maria bai, hei moki nuk hanaya mia, me na mina miti, dawe hebbaliki." 19Dotafuda memim bekda da wehedwatangi wa nuk nukdi, bei nennaha?"20Yesus da hedwatangi, heding hemoki ba hanaya mia, ama banada siang ne. 21Arii, amakang hewing dawai lake, wan wa bilenri we heiwiba, ama ba hedong hebeka waharena da amakang hewi balike! heding hawai hadowa naha. " MA AWEI PEI BA HI ITI YEH HEWEYA AISALA HEWI NENG22Wanhedong tafuda do siangne, Yesus we batako ta kata mia, dongwiba da wa a uti, dawe kadei hayake dawe heseng, dongwiba dawatangi, " apido mia ne iti." 23Dongwiba, Dahawai wesa san mia, dongwiba dawa akuti. Dawe miba mi heseni, dongwiba dotafuda buti sasan ni. 24Dongwiba, Yesus da hedwatangi," Apido ne wea, ba taming ia, mia amang faring waha da sanri. 25Neding na edwatanga ba herofi, bei nahawai but na bata he it ba apang, ariy dasa heta deng ba na but mia te safiha Lahatala ha pong pe a mia te da butce."26Hedongwiba dasa lahatala heyai watanga, da Zaitun buki mere. HEMOKI-MOKI LOK DO MIDABERI27Dongwidi, Yesus dahewatangi, " ariy rotafuda ned dowace, wan wasu ra i ariy na hawai hei milake, " Hedong ba helungva kafiau damitara dia.' Zakharia 13:728Hedong ariy, na miniang kangra tadeng daminuk mia tina Galilea sade." 29Dongwiba, Petrus dawatanga, "Kul datafuda dotaki hoba dong ho heding bei naha."30Dongwiba, Yesus damma hebai, herofi he na apim ma oktanga, tuntama ba apido, darbei rua da kiak naha mi ayok da, ariy ri neding heroa wari da mi suvda." 31Dongwihoba, Petrus domirofi hewahawai, neding kui pitoal mong, eding na bei heno awar naha! Dongwidi, dotafuda tanga nuk mitanga. YESUS DA GETSEMANI MIA32dongwiba, da sara nuk mia hane he Getsemani, dongwiba da de moki lok wahebai, "dom mitba nerea nawe akutte."33Dongwiba, Petrus ye Yakobus ye YOhanes datafuda, dongwiba dawe temamrek rekli homi te hoaharing. 34Dongwiba, dahe watangi, na noting latuk mibekda, "Dongwiba sa waimong. Nei apidomia tei heta minang."35Dobgwiba, da kabei bahek bua kia dongmia daluki anal taha mia akuti, naha diati, beka ba apido, dowana piace. 36Dongwiba, ''Mama lahatala karnu kido atang hommia. Naha ti takutang ba nam but dowa na piace dongwihoba bei ne halua naha ei hina haluale."37Hedongwiba, dahawai madawai dame damokilok hopa mia ti wan tade midawangi,"Hei Petrus, Simon nak heri hetade riwei rima vukang naha? 38Heriminang da rii roa a kuce dongwidi riwe beka mihadei he. Ri timoi dong hawei bula hoba ri iting a lena. 39Dongwiba dawai, mi dawai ba do akutce kahawai dettanga ba eda mitangi dawai dawa hei sara mitangi.40Hedongwiba, dahawai mei hemot nyehi loki dei tadea hiang do latu kai sangfa, hiang kui latujai tuai kuna tanga heda mi hoa hawai. 41Hedongwiba, Yesus damidawai bahesua dademotnyehi "ye wetangi ba rohtadea ? wan sah hetadeng mia rinataei ba herei amakang hewing miba mi ama babeka waong hatang mi wan mi pi pekdi. Yesus Hapung42miri'riale, me pilake.hiang, amabah nen mia do wan pekdi43Darhedong hada sama, Yesus da tanga mi tanga Yudas, hemoki loki henahaji hedong da hanaya mia da amakqng farimg ba da toda kafak bang Iman Ahli-Alhli Taurat, dong Yahuda heiafeng hekaliata. 44Dowan tanrai nuk mia ba wan mihede, "amaba nahamuisinia, hedong hedhore hapung. 45Hedongwiba Yudas dawn tiyai hopa mia daden mi Yesus hadawetangi ya ne, "tuang huri"hedongwiba da Yesus hamuisingdi. 46 Hedong widomba, da me Yesus hatang dong da wapuna da hapuni.47Hedong widomba, ama da dining karnuk walayoki hanaya mia danatei midaliali, datoda mia bah Iman foka Markus hawei alai. 48Hedong wiba Yesus dawe tangi, bah "nahe ritoda kafak bang batiana pung net bah api do taka ama kang re hapong beka.? 49Waria kanakdi bah nalahatalah hetofa mia tanga, san ba na mi tok tanga nae ribei napung naha dongwiba sura san damitouna. 50Dongwiba amakang donoktaki yoti.51Neng moki nuki da Yesus haluale da lipa kul nuk tei miba he it wehatiai. 52Dongwiba da hapuni denya lipang do hasei bah da doaka. Yahudi Hefing Kang Loki Dahefalaka Wetanga53Dongwiba, Yesus hadoa hiang falaka hok sade, dongwiba , tafuda fing kaliata ba afeng mia, hetimang hok sade dotafuda mitetou. 54Dongwiba, Petrus dei haliale hoba hebuakla, dasa Imam bah sahetofa mia dasa dongmia dawe pengawl hanaya miti dawe ara pei miti.55Dongwiba, hetimang da we Lahatalah he hiakai dame heisa foka tahai da Yesus hada beka dia donwide dawe faeng dongwiba dabei hetanga ba beka mia naha. 56Dongwiba amakang faring dawetagi ti bei rofi naha dami hada sama di, tanga bah bei rofi naha tara tanga.57Dongwiba, dining maha dami toaloli danatei tanga dongwiba Yesus heisafoka tahai. 58Dongwiba wefaling datangi, dawe Lahatala hetofa welake amakng hatang nama tadeng sua hom mia, nahawai fia mihaliale bei amakang hatang nama da wepanea. 59Dongwide dawe we hatangi he tanga apanuk hei dong bei ama hei afenga naha .60Dongwidi, hekalia hiang falaka da hadai sama mina teti da Yesus hatanga dia,"Teite a bei ne tanga wahawai naha ama, amabah hei safoka hetiatuyi?" 61Dongwiba, Dei haha makude dabei wahawai naha he hiang talaka da hatanga diba dawai miherei, hei fing hekalieta Yesus watangi" Edo Mesias, Edo lahatala Hewi neiba wee kandra?"62Dongwiba, Yesus dawatangi, nedo hedi, hedo hewi neng ari hawai niang ariy ha Lahatala heikang miti ariy nawe hekang hesama hom mia tabotaha misei."63Dongwiba, da deiko nyamang tiati, hiang falaka bahefoka dawetanga," Nak he piwai hetanga aye tahai?" 64Dongwiba, rimahia da riabai. Hero maba? Dongwiba, dotafuda hei watanga vayeng ba doimong. 65Amakang kabei dawe hoa punya, Dongwiba hiang hapong waha tiai, daheiwayengi, dawai watangi, " Yat he hapong puna dawe hervayengi. PETRUS DABEI YESUS DAWAHAROU DANAHA66Dongwiba, Petrus da hiang falaka hetofa pea mia, dongwiba masua ba hiang talaka foka hei dawai me. 67Dongwiba, Dame Petrus herei si ara pea mia, dami herei bada watangi, riat do dahou Yesus hado a rova, Yesus ba Nazerat wati." 68Dongwiba, Petrus da wedoari dawatangi," bei nohi ana dabei nohia naha apa rimi tanga." DOngwiba dahawai midawai dasa asek hiang ta kai mia." dongwiba rua kiakai da kiaki.69Msua ba hiang falaka voka do dawai miherei dawai het watanga amakang faring dami hebai,"Amaba apido ko dotafuda." 70Dongwihoba, dawai hedo a wari. Dongwidi, bei milunga naha, amakang faring ba nateti da hawai Petrus miherei, edo hadou ko hei a moi no ia na e do hadou Galilea wati."71Dowingdomba, datangi da doa benri, "Bei nohi a naha amaba apa ri watanga!"72Dongwiba, Ruakiakai dakiaki ba heayoki yoba Petrus da Yesus dahed watangi dahe daminami dawatangi," Dar rua kiakai da wan kiaki ba heayoki wan neding a heowar misung da Petrus homi da bedei dawe doa bialah.

Chapter 15Yesus Da Pilatus Hapong Peamia  
1Daela mituana tuana beka, afeng hei fing kang kaliata kang hawai helei hei fing. dong wid bah da Yesus hapuni, da hadoa bah laki, miba pilatus hoatang. 2Dong wiba Pilatus da hatahani, edo Raja bah Yahudi wati? e, apawetanga, dawehawai e apawetanga. 3dong wid bah, lei fing kaliata da Yesus hoatiatnya ba dei sara haluali.4Dong wid bah, Pilatus dah hatahania, teitehi abei wehawai naha? miherei tanga faring ba ba me mi oatiatnya. 5Dong wid hoba, Yesus da bei wehawai naha Pilatus dawe domi halekda.Yesus Ye Barabas6Tadeng bah hesisig Pilatus da hatahani we dong wi bah hom mia dayeki. 7dong wiba amakang nuki amakang nukiti hane he Barabas e amaba dei beka weong dawe terfang mong mong e amah bah dei beka weong. 8Amakang faring da tia dong wid ba dah tia Pilatus he'hayeke dong wid da we haluale dadeideding hawa dah we hadasma.9Dong wid bah Pilatus dawehawai da we tangi heromaba Raja Yahudi nahoatikia? 10Dohiana, helei fingkang da wan Yesus hoatiatnya. 11dong wid hoba, helei fingkang da amkang faring homi tanga Pilatus da Barabas ho'hatang.12Dong wid bah Pilatus da hedwetanga, dong wihore, na'namiba mihadasandra ama bah riwe'haneadi Raja ba Yahudi wati? 13dong wid bai dawai irma'nya hetikauke!14dong wid bah da Pilatus da hed'wetangi teidi? beka teiok da weoni? dong wihore, da wai lah iri, hetikauke! 15Hedomaba ama kang faring heihaluale Pilatus da Barabas hoatani, dong wid bah da palong mi bah yesus da her faeng, denmihatang mi ba da hetikape. Da Yesus Hoatiatnya Da Faeng16Dong wid bah hemoki da Yesus da bang we istana, hedong wiba tofa pengadilan dong wid bah da moki loki tafuda hori bah dadenmitoalol. dongba, 17Datafuda juba ungu mihobakei, dong wid bah damoko bula da tine, dami Yesus hoadai. 18Dong wid bah hoateki, kang Raja Yahudi wati.19Dong wid bah dawe hiakai domg da kela wei bah weboli dong wid bah dahoapunyi.20 Dong wid bah da Yesus hadoa bah uisaha me dongba dasa hetikapi. yesus Hetikapi 21dong wid bah da domi tuk ti amakang faring hapiece, Simon ba Kirene wati, da afeng mia ba tia, Alexsander he Rufus he mama dong wid bah da me tikauke bata bang.22dong wid bah da Yesus hadoa bah Golgota buki mi sade. kai it'sara mia. 23Dong wid bah dah sah raloang sa aleising toawahawi mi hoabuti dong wid bah da bei mia naha. 24Hedong ba hed loki hedi da hekoda mi hada da, huare na nede25Hedong mia nahuar misyuda dami tikakbata hong domirei. 26Hedong wid bah, da bata kaising mi bilendri miba Yesus hiakai taha mitidi dong wid bah da magda, api do ''Yahudi wat he lei.'' 27Hedong hada sama ama hasala ayok hadow henmi bah tikak bata hong mi tili nuk hei kang mia nuk heibki mia. 28Domia bah sura san dami tounu dawetanga, "heding mib ama bah beka we ong hanaya mihatang."29Hedong wiba amakang faring hopa pea dohaluale da Yesus wehekidai amakang da tafuda diang dawei wehayok we hatede dawe tanga hei edo e' wetangi bah Lahatala he'tofa dong ala'tadeng sua we'ongti dami daliala'ba. 30Alekang o'atikia ba tikak bata hong mia ba osei!31Imam Imam he hiakai, hawai Ahli Taurat, hoatiatnya Yesus dah we tangi nuki hawai afenga loki, "da ama afenga bai dahoakandra , dabei dennya diang hakandra naha! 32 Dodeding Mesias, sang Raja, lalang da tikapi da sei pi miherei ba rofi. helok bai da tikak bata Yesus bai da hoatiatnya. Yesus Da Bekda33wan sa wari ba hetalama, wari da takuna di ba sa he setingbuti.34wari ba hesetingbuti, Yesus da ir ba hamak foka ''Eloi,Eloi, lunga sebaktni hehadatoasama ''NeAisala,NeAisala te ite a ned doawati? 35ye, dawa faling di, ama kang kabei da hopa pea mia natea do watanga, miheri! da elia hore.''36Dongwiba,ama nuk da frei,ba da spons ye anggur matipa, hawai da mi kelatuk mi, dami Yesus hua buce, ba da watanga, pu tafuda miherei kul rofi Elia tia heddo sei.'' 37dongwiba, Yesus da ir hamak do foka do mirei bahe ahe briki. 38Hedongwiba Bait Allah he ka fiat hoa ayokdi, da aremg mia ba da dosei.39Ye hikai mateka, da natea ba Yesus herei, miherei tek wiba Yesus da da ahedong mere hetilipang ,da watanga kul, ama do Aisala hewi! 40 wero dong mia hadou masua mia do buakla mia miherei, helok do haima Maria Makdalena bai hommia, ye hea Maria Yakobus neng muki ye Yoses ye Salomo. 41Dongwiba Yesus da Galilea afeng mia hoba helok da haluale ba tapong puna ye worong mia masua faring da afenga dohaima Yesus da we Yerusalem misade.YESUS HET IA42Wari ba dong wari deh binengra, hedong wari wari akuce. 43Yusuf ba ama Arimatea tiyei heding ama majelis foka wati we hoaluke, ye hebai kerajaan Allah, da tia da hoarea, da de it nitukaji ba da Pilatus hopang me ba da Yesus he iti hayeke. 44Pilatus wadakoisandri dawe faling ba Yesus wan bekdi. Dahiakai mateka horba da hatahani, wan kul rofi yesus wan bekdi.45Dong wiba Pilatus dohiana di hiakai foka, da amaimona miba mi fusuf hede. 46dong wiba Yusuf da lipa linen beli kandri dong wiba da Yesus he mayet do sei, da lipa lenan homi mi pateki, da mi ba ulhomi dongwe da buki homi mia dawiy dong da hasiri da uldong wei kel. 47Maria magdalena ye Yesus heya Maria da heisara miherei Yesus heit da mi tadea.

Chapter 16  
1Dong wiba, tadeng sising hapiece, Maria Magdalena, Maria Yakubus heya, hai Salomo, dawe saminuma beli dong wiba da sami Yesus haluale. 2Mituana beka, dawe hiang fadik misade.3Dawe mitoatangi, "mahe weiba hiang fadik tahid do hakuila. hiang fadik teidte do hakuila? 4Dongwiba, dame hetaha merei si, wiy foka wan hakuili.5Dongwiba, dawe ul homi meti, dawe ti neng abet nuki da kakul tei we heikang harenna miti, dongwiba da marekli. 6Dongwiba, da mihok tangi, " rimarekli he, Yesus ba Naseret wating wan hetikapi. wan midiang kandri, heding wan bey apih doh mia naha. heisara miherei bah mihatahani wan ahaling. 7dongwiba, miriwai bah, hemoki mihoktangi dongwiba Petrus hawai dongwiba deicudi sah Galilea mia. sa dongmia, hawai riha'datarendra, wan da miba miroktangi"8Dongwiba, dami daberi daferei teidibati damarekla, da beimi amakang hoktanga naha da marekla tanga, faring ba da mihaboti dongwidi dami Petrus dawe hoktangi hawi hemotnyehi ye. dami hoktangi bala mi habuja. dongwiba, Yesus hedo diang rofi ba haboce wari mirang mia ba sa wari sei mija, dongwidi dawe tanga sadong mehebai ri tanga san do dabeinaha dia dei kang domilohi atei domilohi. Rofi.] Yesus Dadenmi Demoki Faring We Hianria9Wan Yesus damidiang kandri mituana beka akut bah hedong homi mia, latuhei da demi Maria Magdalena wahianria hedong mia da timoi beka he setnayoki haloi. 10dongwiba, dasa wetangi dongwiba ama bah Yesus dofa damihoktangi, homi kabei beka dafele. 11Dongwiba, dawe faling Yesus diang kanri dongwiba dahiani, dabei weharouda naha.12Dongwiba nadah midalekda, Yesus da denmi ama ayoki ba da lake afeng misade. 13dongwiba, dami dawai dami amakang faring mihoktangi, dongwiba afeng dabei waharouda naha. Yesus Da Demoki Hada Toatanga14Dongwiba, da den mi demoki hoaareji dawi den mi demoki karnuk wal ayoki hoaareji dawetaki dabei weharenra naha ama ba den mi hoaareji dongwiba damidiang kanri. 15Dongwiba, dahada toatangi, "mebuki akang misade mahoktanga mi amakang tafuda wahoktanga. 16Mahe wan weharouda wan nahet tibati dawe he kang hiang, mahe bei wefaling naha arija dahoatiatnya.17Dongwiba, na'na midalekda do arija ti da we haluale: hane hommia ba datimoi beka haloi dawe dong wiba tanga-tanga fiah mitanga: 18Dongwiba dawe datang wei da mon wapuna, dongwiba dah sah beka buce dasei weong, hoba beinyaha, dongwiba dawe datag miba hom mia amaharik beka hettahi, dongwiba ama-ama hedong da hoakandri.Yesus Halial Ba Sorga Sade19dongwiba, Tuhan Yesus dame hebai, halial bah afeng kang mia dawe Lahatalah heikang miti: 20Dongwiba, dalaki dasa Lahatala he tuting metebai Lahatalah deido tafuda deido sama dawe dongwiba de tuting de tapating harumai we dongwiba na'na bah hekang do midetareja.

### Introduction to the Gospel of Mark

## Overview

Mark wrote about what Jesus did during his last three years on earth. Mark called Jesus “God’s servant” (see: Mark 10:45). In this book, Jesus always served God and other people. According to Mark, Jesus travelled to different places, taught people, and did many miracles. Jesus did these miracles to prove that he taught true things from God. Mark wrote about the miracles of Jesus more than any other gospel writer.

Mark wrote that Jesus was both God and man. The things Jesus said and did allowed people to know how to do things and say things that honor God.

See: Miracle; Gospel; Jesus is God

#### Who wrote this letter?

In the gospel, the author does not write who the author was. Also, the author did not say that he saw everything that he wrote about.

Two of the first Christian leaders, wrote letters writing the author was Mark. These letters are not in the Bible.

In the Bible, Mark was also called John (see: Acts 12:12, 25; 15:37). His mother was a woman named Mary and she lived in Jerusalem (see: Acts 12:12). Mark’s cousin was Barnabas (see: Colossians 4:10).

Mark traveled with Barnabas and Paul on the first missionary trip (see: Acts 13:5).

Mark was a friend to the apostle Peter, (see: 1 Peter 5:13). Mark learned most of the things he wrote about from Peter.

See: Gospel; Paul's Missionary Journeys;Apostle

#### To whom did Mark write?

In the gospel, the author did not speak about the people to whom he wrote. Mark wrote in the Greek language. He explained Aramaic words. So it is thought the readers did not know Aramaic (see:Mar k3:17, 5:41, 7:11, 7:34, 10:46, 14:36, 15:22, and 15:34).

Mark did not explain the different names for Jesus such as Messiah, Son of God, Son of David, Lord, and the “Son of Man.” He also did not explain the words gospel, King Herod, Pilate, and many of the towns in his book. Because he did not explain these words, the audience probably knew these words and believed in Jesus.

Mark wrote fourteen Latin words that were spoken by the people in Rome. One example was when he explained the value of the two coins the widow gave (see: Mark 12:42). He wrote the Latin name for the coin. Because of these Latin words, scholars think Mark wrote to people in Rome.

See: Gospel;Languages in the New Testament; Messiah (Christ); Son of God;Son of Man

See Map: Rome

#### What did Mark write about in this letter?

##### Messianic secret

In the first part of Mark’s gospel Jesus did not tell people that he was the messiah. In the second part of Mark’s gospel, he told his disciples that he was the messiah. However, Jesus told them not to tell anybody.

See: Messiah (Christ); Gospel;Messianic Secret; Disciple

##### Suffering servant

The “suffering servant” was a certain person who serves God and suffers for doing it. Isaiah prophesied about this person (see: Isaiah 53). This person is Jesus. Mark said, “For even the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give his life as a ransom for many” (see: Mark 10:45)

Jesus not only came to serve God and man, he commanded Christians to do the same.

See: Prophecy (Prophesy) ; Son of Man

##### Son of Man

Jesus often called himself the “Son of Man.” He did this because he was a man who served God and would die.

However, the “Son of Man” had a different meaning in the book of Daniel (see: Daniel 7:13-14). In those verses, the Son of Man was a specific person who would have all power and judge all people. When Jesus called himself the Son of Man, he wanted to say that he was not just a man who served God. He would also rule the world and judge everyone.

See: Ezekiel 2:1

See: Son of Man

##### Son of God

Jesus is sometimes called the “Son of God.” In Mark, other people often call Jesus the “Son of God.”

See: Son of God

##### Kingdom of God

Mark often wrote about the kingdom of God.

See: Kingdom of God

#### Why did Mark write this letter?

Mark wanted to tell people about the gospel of Jesus the Messiah, the Son of God (see: Mark 1:1). Jesus was both the “Son of God” and the “Son of Man.” He was a humble man who served other people. He rescued people and got them to worship God. Jesus tells everyone to trust him and to follow him.

See: Gospel; Messiah (Christ); Son of God; Son of Man

## Outline of the Gospel of Mark

1. Jesus, the Son of God (1:1-13)
2. The baptism and teaching of John (1:1-8)
3. The baptism of Jesus (1:9-11)
4. The temptation of Jesus (1:12-13)
5. Jesus at work in Galilee (1:14-9:50)
6. He begins his work (1:14-45)
7. He teaches about his kingdom (2:1-5:43)
8. He meets people who want to stop him (6:1-8:26)
9. He prepares his disciples for the end (8:27-9:50)
10. Jesus prepares for death (10:1-14:31)
11. He goes to Jerusalem (10:1-11:11)
12. He stays in Jerusalem and vicinity (11:12-14:31)
13. Jesus suffers and dies at the hands of men (14:32-15:47)
14. His suffering in Gethsemane (14:32-42)
15. His arrest (14:43-52)
16. His trial before Jewish leaders and Peter denies knowing him (14:53-72)
17. His trial before Pilate (15:1-15)
18. His crucifixion (15:16-41)
19. His burial (15:42-47)
20. Jesus triumphs over death (16:1-20)
21. His resurrection (16:1-8)
22. His appearances on earth (16:9-18)
23. His ascension into heaven (16:19-20)

## Mark

Chapter 1

1This is the beginning of the gospel of Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

2As it is written in Isaiah the prophet,"Look, I am sending my messenger before your face,the one who will prepare your way.3The voice of one crying out in the wilderness,'Make ready the way of the Lord;make his paths straight.'"

4John came, baptizing in the wilderness and preaching a baptism of repentance for the forgiveness of sins.5The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. They were baptized by him in the Jordan River, confessing their sins.6John wore a coat of camel's hair and a leather belt around his waist, and he ate locusts and wild honey.

7He was preaching, saying, "One will come after me who is more powerful than I; the strap of his sandals I am not worthy to stoop down and untie.8I baptized you with water, but he will baptize you with the Holy Spirit."

9It happened in those days that Jesus came from Nazareth in Galilee, and he was baptized by John in the Jordan River.10As Jesus came up out of the water, he saw the heavens split open and the Spirit coming down on him like a dove.11A voice came out of the heavens: "You are my beloved Son. I am very pleased with you."

12Then the Spirit compelled him to go out into the wilderness.13He was in the wilderness forty days being tempted by Satan. He was with the wild animals, and the angels served him.

14Now after John was arrested, Jesus came into Galilee proclaiming the gospel of God.15He said, "The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God is near. Repent and believe the gospel."

16When he was walking beside the Sea of Galilee, he saw Simon and Andrew the brother of Simon casting a net in the sea, for they were fishermen.17Jesus said to them, "Come, follow me, and I will make you fishers of men."18Then immediately they left the nets and followed him.19As Jesus was walking on a little farther, he saw James son of Zebedee and John his brother; they were in the boat mending the nets.20He called them, and they left their father Zebedee in the boat with the hired servants, and they followed him.

21Then they came into Capernaum, and on the Sabbath, Jesus went into the synagogue and taught.22They were astonished at his teaching, for he was teaching them as someone who has authority and not as the scribes.23Just then a man in their synagogue who had an unclean spirit cried out,24saying, "What do we have to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth? Have you come to destroy us? I know who you are. You are the Holy One of God!"

25Jesus rebuked the demon and said, "Be quiet and come out of him!"26The unclean spirit threw him into convulsions and went out from him while crying out with a loud voice.27All the people were amazed, so they asked each other, "What is this? A new teaching with authority! He even commands the unclean spirits and they obey him!"28The news about him went out everywhere into the whole region of Galilee.

29After coming out of the synagogue, they came into the house of Simon and Andrew, along with James and John.30Now Simon's mother-in-law was lying sick with a fever, and they told Jesus about her.31So he came, took her by the hand, and raised her up; the fever left her, and she started serving them.

32That evening after the sun had set, they brought to him all who were sick or possessed by demons.33The whole city gathered together at the door.34He healed many who were sick with various diseases and cast out many demons, but he did not allow the demons to speak because they knew him.

35He got up very early, while it was still dark; he left and went out into a solitary place and there he prayed.36Simon and those who were with him searched for him.37They found him and they said to him, "Everyone is looking for you."

38He said, "Let us go elsewhere, out into the surrounding towns, so that I may preach there also. That is why I came out here."39He went throughout all of Galilee, preaching in their synagogues and casting out demons.

40A leper came to him. He was begging him; he knelt down and said to him, "If you are willing, you can make me clean."

41Moved with compassion, Jesus reached out his hand and touched him, saying to him, "I am willing. Be clean."42Immediately the leprosy left him, and he was made clean.43Jesus strictly warned him and sent him away.44He said to him, "Be sure to say nothing to anyone, but go, show yourself to the priest, and offer for your cleansing what Moses commanded, as a testimony to them."45But he went out and began to declare it freely and spread the word, so much so that Jesus could no longer enter a town openly but he stayed out in remote places. Yet people were still coming to him from everywhere.

### Mark 1 Commentary

## 1:1-8

#### What is the gospel?

[1:1]

See: Gospel

#### How is Jesus the “son of God”?

[1:1]

See: Son of God

#### Who was John the Baptist?

[1:4]

Mark wrote about John the Baptist fulfilling a prophecy from the Old Testament. Three different prophets spoke about this prophecy (see: Exodus 23:20; Isaiah 40:3; Malachi 3:1). Mark wanted people to know that God promised to do something, and it happened. God promised that a prophet would come before the messiah to tell people that the messiah was coming. John the Baptist was this promised prophet.

See: Fulfill (Fulfillment); Prophecy (Prophesy) ; Prophet; Messiah (Christ)

#### How did John the Baptist serve God?

[1:4, 1:5]

John the Baptist served God by telling people that they needed to repent. They needed to worship and obey God. They were unclean because they disobeyed God. They needed to be made clean. John also served God by baptizing people who believed in God and repented of their sins.

See: Repent (Repentance); Sin; Clean and Unclean; Baptize (Baptism); Gentile; Confess (Confession)

#### Why was John’s baptism different from all other baptisms?

[1:4, 1:5]

John’s baptism was not like other baptisms. John’s baptism helped people get ready for the messiah. People wanted to follow the messiah, so they confessed their sins. They were at peace with God for a time. This helped them to know the messiah when they heard him speak. In ancient Israel, other leaders might have baptized and preached repentance. However, only John prepared the people in Judea and in Jerusalem for Jesus.

See: Baptize (Baptism); Preach (Preacher); Repent (Repentance); Clean and Unclean

See Map: Jerusalem; Judea

#### Where is Judea and Jerusalem?

[1:5]

See Map: Judea; Jerusalem

#### Why did Mark write about the clothes John the Baptist wore and the things he ate?

[1:6]

The Jews thought the prophet Elijah would come back to earth before the messiah (see: Malachi 4:5). Elijah was a prophet who wore a coat made of hair and a leather belt around his waist (see:2 Kings 1:8). John dressed in the same way as Elijah.

Both Elijah and John lived in the wilderness. People who lived in the wilderness ate locusts and honey.

Mark wrote these things so everyone would know that John was the prophet who God promised to send before the messiah came. John told people that the messiah would be there soon.

See: Prophet; Messiah (Christ); Locust; Wilderness

#### Why did John not want to untie Jesus’ sandal?

[1:7]

In ancient Israel, people thought that feet were very dirty. Because of this, only servants or slaves would touch someone’s feet. It dishonored someone to touch dirty feet. However, John thought that even touching Jesus’ feet was a greater honor than John deserved.

**Advice to translators**: A sandal is a certain type of shoe. It does not cover the entire foot.

See: Clean and Unclean

#### How was Jesus’ baptism different from John’s baptism?

[1:8]

John’s baptism was a way for people to show other people that they wanted to obey and honor God. They wanted to stop sinning. Jesus baptizes people with the Holy Spirit. That is, he did not just wash their body with water. They were baptized because they believed in Jesus.

See: Matthew 3:11; Luke 3:3-16; John 1:19-34; Acts 2

See: Baptize (Baptism); Holy Spirit;Spirit (Spiritual)

## 1:9-11

#### How were the heavens split open?

[1:10]

Mark wrote that the heavens were “split open” or tore and opened when Jesus came out of the water. Mark wrote the same word to write about God tearing the curtain of the temple from top to bottom when Jesus died on the cross (see: Mark 15:38). This was at the beginning and the end of Mark’s gospel. Mark wanted people to know that Jesus is the Son of God. Mark wrote about the heavens opening because he wanted to say that God was allowing people to know more about God.

See: Temple; Cross; Gospel; Son of God; God;Heaven

#### Why did the voice say “You are my beloved Son. I am very pleased with you”?

[1:11]

The voice saying “You are my beloved Son” was saying that the messiah had come to earth. After this, Jesus began to do certain things to serve God and tell people that he was the messiah. God sent the Holy Spirit as a dove so people would know that God had anointed Jesus for ministry.

The words spoken by God the father made the readers think about Isaiah 42:1.

See: Psalms 2:7; Matthew 3:13-17; Luke 3:21-23

See: Son of God; God the Father; Holy Spirit; Messiah (Christ); Minister (Ministry); Anoint (Anointing)

## 1:12-13

#### Why did Jesus go to the wilderness after he was baptized?

[1:12]

Jesus went to the wilderness because the Holy Spirit wanted him to go there. Jesus completely obeyed the Holy Spirit and went to the wilderness.

See: Wilderness; Holy Spirit; Baptize (Baptism)

#### Why did God send Jesus into the wilderness?

[1:13]

God sent Jesus into the wilderness. This is because Satan was going to tempt him. Jesus was given choices to follow God or not. Jesus obeyed God because he trusted God. Jesus did not sin when he was tempted. He did not follow Satan. After the temptations, angels served Jesus because his body was weak.

See: Matthew 4:1-11; Luke 4:1-13

See: Satan (The Devil); Tempt (Temptation); Angel

## 1:14-15

#### Why was John put into prison?

[1:14]

John was put in prison because he told Herod that he could not marry his brother’s wife, Herodias. John said that Herod broke the law by marrying Herodias.

#### Where is Galilee?

[1:14]

See Map: Galilee

#### Why did Jesus say that the “kingdom of God” is near?

[1:15]

Jesus said that the kingdom of God was near. Some scholars think Jesus’ kingdom was on the earth. He was the king of the earthly kingdom.

Other scholars think Jesus wanted to say the “kingdom of God” has started so that people did not have to sin any more. God rules the things someone thinks and the things they do when they believe in Jesus and do the things he said to do. Before, people could only do evil before Jesus came to earth. Now people can return to God and do the things that honor him.

Other scholars think Jesus was coming to offer to his kingdom to Israel. His kingdom was going to begin if they believed in him. Because they rejected him, his kingdom did not begin.

See: Matthew 4:12-17; Luke

See: Kingdom of God; Messiah (Christ); Proclaim (Proclamation)

## 1:16-20

#### Why did Jesus say they would be “fishers of men”?

[1:17]

Jesus used a metaphor when he said they would be “fishers of men.” Peter, Andrew, John and James were all fishermen. They fished to earn money. Jesus said this to say that they were no longer going to catch fish for money. Instead, they would bring men to God by telling them about the gospel. Jesus wanted to tell them they would serve God in a different way.

See: Metaphor; Gospel

#### Why did Peter and Andrew follow Jesus immediately?

[1:18]

Andrew heard what John the Baptist said about Jesus (see: John 1:40). Andrew was ready to follow Jesus because of John. Andrew found his brother Peter. Peter was also ready to follow Jesus (see: John 1:41-42).

#### Why did Mark write about the hired men?

[1:20]

The disciples left their family, their work, and their homes to follow Jesus. They left everything that they had. Mark wrote that they did not leave their father to fish without help. He had hired men who would help him. They honored their father by making sure he was not alone.

See: Matthew 4:18-22; John 1:40-42

See: Disciple

See Map: Sea of Galilee

## 1:21-28

#### Where was Capernaum?

[1:21]

See Map: Capernaum

#### What was the Sabbath?

[1:21]

See: Sabbath

#### What was a synagogue?

[1:21]

See: Synagogue

#### How were the things Jesus taught different from other teachers?

[1:22]

In ancient Israel, teachers said what other teachers that came before them said. Jesus’ teaching was different. He taught what God commanded. Jesus did not follow the things that other people taught because other people taught it. He only taught about what God said and the people were amazed.

#### Why did the unclean spirits cry out?

[1:23]

The unclean spirits cried out. That is, they were afraid. They knew that Jesus is God and will one day judge them and punish them.

See: Clean and Unclean;Demon

#### Where was Nazareth?

[1:24]

See Map: Nazareth

#### Who is the “holy one” of God?

[1:24]

Jesus is the holy one of God. That is, he is the messiah.

See: Messiah (Christ)

#### Why did Jesus tell the demon to be quiet?

[1:25]

Jesus made others know that he had power over the demons when he told them to be quiet. They needed Jesus’ permission to speak.

See: Demon

#### Why were the people amazed?

[1:27]

The people were amazed because even the demons did what Jesus told them to do. He had power that they had never seen before.

See: Luke 4:31-37

## 1:29-31

#### Why did Mark write that the woman served Jesus after she was healed?

[1:31]

Mark wrote that Peter’s mother-in-law served Jesus so everyone would know that Jesus had completely healed her.

See: Matthew 8:14-15; Luke 4:38-39

## 1:32-39

How was someone possessed by a demon?

See: Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons)

#### Why did Mark write that the people came to Jesus after sunset?

[1:32]

Mark wrote that people came to Jesus after sunset. The people wanted to follow the Law of Moses and not do any work on the Sabbath. The Jewish leaders taught that carrying a person who could not walk was work. Therefore, it was against the Law of Moses. The people waited until after the Sabbath was over at sunset to come to Jesus for healing.

See: Law of Moses; Sabbath

#### Why did Mark write Jesus woke up early and prayed in a quiet place alone?

[1:35]

Mark wrote about Jesus getting up early in the morning and praying. For Jesus, prayer was the most significant part of his day. He was able to talk and listen to God the father. God the father told Jesus what he needed to do while he prayed. This is the beginning of Jesus’ preaching and healing in Galilee.

See: God the Father; Preach (Preacher)

See Map: Galilee

## 1:40-45

#### What is leprosy?

[1:40]

See: Leprosy (Leper)

#### Why did Jesus touch the leper?

[1:41]

A person became unclean if they touched a leper. This is what is written in the Law of Moses. Mark wanted people to know that Jesus touched the leper. Jesus did not worry about being unclean because he leper was made clean and was healed of his leprosy when Jesus touched him.

See: Clean and Unclean; Law of Moses; Leprosy (Leper)

#### Why did Jesus warn the leper not to speak about being healed?

[1:44]

The Law of Moses required a leper to show himself to the priest. The priest would pronounce that he was clean. In this way, Jesus was following the Law of Moses. Mark wrote that Jesus healed three different people. He told each of them not to tell anyone (see: 1:44; 5:43; and 7:36). The leper who was cured did not obey Jesus. He told everyone. Crowds then came to be healed by Jesus instead of coming to hear Jesus teach. Because of the crowds, Jesus could no longer teach in the synagogues. He began to teach outside of the towns where no one lived.

See: Matthew 8:1-4; Luke 5:12-16

See: Law of Moses;Leprosy (Leper); Priest (Priesthood); Clean and Unclean;Synagogue

#### Mark 1:1

##### Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### Mark 1:2

##### before your face

This means "ahead of you."

##### your face ... your way

Here the word "your" refers to the Lord and is singular.

##### the one

This refers to the messenger.

##### will prepare your way

"will prepare the people for your arrival"

#### Mark 1:3

##### The voice of one crying out in the wilderness

"The voice of one crying out in the wilderness is heard" or "They hear the sound of someone crying out in the wilderness"

##### Make ready the way of the Lord

"Prepare yourselves for the Lord to come" or "Be ready for the Lord when he comes"

#### Mark 1:4

##### John came

"So John came" or "In fulfillment of that prophecy, John came"

#### Mark 1:5

##### The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem

"Many people from Judea and Jerusalem"

##### They were baptized by him in the Jordan River, confessing their sins

"When they repented of their sins, John baptized them in the Jordan River"

#### Mark 1:6

##### he ate locusts and wild honey

Locusts and wild honey were foods that John could find in the wilderness. Wild honey is honey that wild bees make.

#### Mark 1:7

##### He was preaching

"John was preaching"

##### the strap of his sandals I am not worthy to stoop down and untie

"I am not even worthy to do the lowly task of removing his shoes"

##### the strap of his sandals

People often wore sandals that were made of leather and were tied to their feet with leather straps.

##### stoop down

"bend down"

#### Mark 1:8

##### but he will baptize you with the Holy Spirit

To baptize with the Holy Spirit means that God would send the Holy Spirit to purify people. The Holy Spirit would then live in them and empower them to stop sinning and to obey God. If possible, use the same word for "baptize" here as you used for John's baptism.

#### Mark 1:9

##### It happened in those days

This marks the beginning of a new event in the story.

##### he was baptized by John

"John baptized him"

#### Mark 1:10

##### the Spirit coming down on him like a dove

Possible meanings are 1) the Spirit descended upon Jesus as a bird descends from the sky toward the ground or 2) the Spirit literally looked like a dove as he descended upon Jesus.

#### Mark 1:11

##### A voice came out of the heavens

"God spoke from the heavens"

##### beloved Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son. The Father calls Jesus his "beloved Son" because of his eternal love for him.

#### Mark 1:12

##### compelled him to go out

"forced Jesus to go out"

#### Mark 1:13

##### He was with

"He was among"

#### Mark 1:14

##### after John was arrested

"after King Herod had John arrested" or "after soldiers arrested John"

##### proclaiming the gospel

"telling many people about the good news"

#### Mark 1:15

##### The time is fulfilled

"It is now time"

##### the kingdom of God is near

"God is beginning to rule over all" or 2) God would soon rule over all.

#### Mark 1:16

##### casting a net in the sea

"throwing a net into the water to catch fish"

#### Mark 1:17

##### I will make you fishers of men

"I will teach you to gather men to me like you gather fish"

##### men

human beings, persons, people, not specifically males

#### Mark 1:19

##### mending the nets

"repairing the nets"

#### Mark 1:20

##### called them

"called them to come with him"

##### hired servants

"servants who worked for them"

##### they followed him

James and John went with Jesus.

#### Mark 1:21

##### came into Capernaum

"arrived at Capernaum"

#### Mark 1:22

##### for he was teaching them as someone who has authority and not as the scribes

"for he was teaching them as someone who has authority teaches and not as the scribes teach"

#### Mark 1:24

##### What do we have to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth?

"Jesus of Nazareth, leave us alone! There is no reason for you to interfere with us."

##### we ... us

These pronouns refer to the demon inside the man and all other demons, but do not include the listener.

##### Have you come to destroy us?

"Do not destroy us!"

#### Mark 1:26

##### threw him down

Here the word "him" refers to the demon-possessed man.

#### Mark 1:27

##### so they asked each other, "What is this? ... they obey him!"

"so they said to each other, 'This is amazing! ... they obey him!'"

##### A new teaching with authority!

"He gives a new teaching, and he speaks with authority!" or "He teaches something new, and he has authority!"

##### He even commands the unclean spirits and they obey him!

This was evidence of Jesus' authority.

#### Mark 1:30

##### Now Simon's mother-in-law was lying sick with a fever

Mark introduces Simon's mother-in-law to the story and gives information about her health.

#### Mark 1:31

##### raised her up

"caused her to stand" or "made her able to get out of bed"

##### the fever left her

"Jesus healed her of the fever"

##### she started serving them

"she provided them with food and drinks"

#### Mark 1:32

##### all who were sick or possessed by demons were brought to him.

"many who were sick or possessed by demons were brought to Jesus"

#### Mark 1:33

##### The whole city gathered together at the door

"Many people from that city gathered outside the door"

#### Mark 1:34

##### He healed

"Jesus healed"

#### Mark 1:35

##### He got up and went to a solitary place

"Jesus got up and went to a place where he could be alone"

#### Mark 1:36

##### Simon and those who were with him

Here "him" refers to Simon. Those with him include Andrew, James, John, and possibly other people.

#### Mark 1:37

##### Everyone is looking for you

"Many people are looking for you"

#### Mark 1:38

##### Let us go elsewhere

"We need to go to some other place."

#### Mark 1:39

##### He went throughout all of Galilee

"He went to many places in Galilee"

#### Mark 1:40

##### If you are willing, you can make me clean

"If you want to make me clean, then you can make me clean"

##### you can make me clean

"you can heal me"

#### Mark 1:41

##### Moved with compassion, Jesus

"Having compassion for him, Jesus" or "Jesus felt compassion for the man"

##### I am willing

"I am willing to make you clean"

#### Mark 1:44

##### show yourself to the priest

Jesus told the man to show himself to the priest so that the priest could look at his skin to see if his leprosy was really gone. The law of Moses required people to present themselves to the priest if they had been unclean but were no longer unclean.

##### a testimony to them

Possible meanings are 1) "a testimony to the priests" or 2) "a testimony to the people."

#### Mark 1:45

##### But he went out

The word "he" refers to the man Jesus healed.

##### began to declare it freely

"began to tell people in many places about what Jesus had done"

##### that Jesus could no longer enter a town openly

"so much that Jesus could no longer enter a town publicly" or "that Jesus could no longer enter the towns in a way that many people would see him"

##### remote places

"lonely places" or "places where no one lived"

##### from everywhere

"from all over the region"

Chapter 2

1When Jesus came back to Capernaum after a few days, it was heard that he was at home.2So many gathered there that there was no more space, not even at the door, and he spoke the word to them.3Then some men came to him who were bringing a paralyzed man; four people were carrying him.4When they could not get near him because of the crowd, they removed the roof that was above Jesus, and after they made an opening, they lowered the mat the paralyzed man was lying on.5Seeing their faith, Jesus said to the paralyzed man, "Son, your sins are forgiven."

6Now some of the scribes were sitting there, and they reasoned in their hearts,7"How can this man speak this way? He blasphemes! Who can forgive sins but God alone?"

8Immediately Jesus knew in his spirit what they were thinking within themselves. He said to them, "Why are you thinking this in your hearts?9Which is easier, to say to the paralyzed man, 'Your sins are forgiven,' or to say, 'Get up, take up your mat and walk'?10But in order that you may know that the Son of Man has authority on earth to forgive sins," he said to the paralytic,11"I say to you, get up, take up your mat, and go to your house."

12He got up and immediately took up the mat, and went out of the house in front of everyone, so that they were all amazed and they gave glory to God, and they said, "We never saw anything like this."

13He went out again by the lake, and all the crowd came to him, and he taught them.14As he passed by, he saw Levi son of Alphaeus sitting at the tax collector's tent and he said to him, "Follow me." He got up and followed him.

15Jesus was having a meal in Levi's house and many tax collectors and sinners were dining with him and his disciples, for there were many and they followed him.16When the scribes, who were Pharisees, saw that Jesus was eating with sinners and tax collectors, they said to his disciples, "Why does he eat with tax collectors and sinners?"

17When Jesus heard this, he said to them, "People who are strong in body do not need a physician; only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people, but sinners."

18Now John's disciples and the Pharisees were fasting. Some people came and said to him, "Why do John's disciples and the disciples of the Pharisees fast, but your disciples do not fast?"

19Jesus said to them, "Can the wedding attendants fast while the bridegroom is still with them? As long as they have the bridegroom with them, they cannot fast.20But the days will come when the bridegroom will be taken away from them, and in those days, they will fast.21No one sews a piece of new cloth on an old garment. Otherwise the patch tears away from it, the new from the old, and there is a worse tear.22No one puts new wine into old wineskins. Otherwise the wine will burst the skins and both the wine and the wineskins are lost. Instead, new wine is put into fresh wineskins."

23On the Sabbath day Jesus went through some grainfields, and his disciples began picking heads of grain as they made their way.24The Pharisees said to him, "Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful on the Sabbath day?"

25He said to them, "Have you never read what David did when he was in need and hungry—he and the men who were with him—26how he went into the house of God when Abiathar was high priest, and ate the bread of the presence, which is unlawful for anyone to eat except the priests, and he even gave some to those who were with him?"27Jesus said, "The Sabbath was made for mankind, not mankind for the Sabbath.28Therefore, the Son of Man is Lord, even of the Sabbath."

### Mark 2

## 2:1-12

#### Whose home did Jesus go to?

[2:1]

Mark wrote that Jesus was “at home.” He did not return to the place where his family lived. He went to Capernaum. Jesus left and returned there many times. Scholars think this was Simon and Andrew’s home (see: Mark 1:29).

See Map: Capernaum

#### How did Jesus speak the word?

[2:2]

Mark wrote that Jesus “spoke the word.” This was a metaphor. He wanted to write that Jesus taught things about God. People needed to do the things he taught because they were the things God wanted them to do.

See: Metaphor

#### What did Mark want to write about the people who opened the roof?

[2:4]

Mark wanted people to know that these people were going to get their sick friend to Jesus no matter how hard it might be. In ancient Israel, homes usually had an outside stairway or ladder that went up to a flat roof. The roofs were made of slabs of burnt or dried clay. This was placed on supporting beams that stretched from one wall to another wall. The friends removed some of these slabs to make a hole in the roof. They then lowered the sick man into the room with Jesus.

**Advice to translators**: A slab is something that is large and flat. It may be 1 to 3 meters long and wide, but only a few centimeters thick. A beam is a long piece of wood that is very strong.

#### Whose trust in God did Jesus see and reward?

Jesus saw these four friends trusted Jesus to heal the paralyzed man. These men worked very hard to bring the paralyzed man to Jesus so Jesus could heal him. Because they trusted Jesus, he rewarded them by healing the man and forgiving his sins.

**Advice to translators**: Someone who is paralyzed cannot walk.

See: Sin

#### Why were the teachers of the law angry that Jesus said: “your sins are forgiven”?

[2:5]

The teachers of the Law of Moses thought Jesus had insulted God when he said, “your sins are forgiven.” This is because only God can forgive sins. They believed God alone could forgive sins.

See: Law of Moses; Sin

#### What did Jesus say to the teachers of the law?

[2:8, 2:9]

Jesus knew what the teachers of the Law of Moses were thinking. He gave them something new to think about. Jesus asked them a question. He did not want them to answer. Anyone could say that a person’s sins were forgiven. This is because people would not know if this happened. However, if someone told someone to get up and walk but they did not get up and walk, then everyone could see this. People would know the person lied if the could not to heal the other person. However, Jesus healed this man by telling him to “Get up and walk.” People saw that the man got up and walked. Therefore, Jesus healed him. So when Jesus said that, “Your sins are forgiven,” he showed them that he had the power to forgive sins by healing the man.

See: Matthew 9:1-8; Luke 5:17-26

See: Law of Moses; Sin

#### Who is the “son of man”?

[2:10]

See: Son of Man

## 2:13-17

#### What was the lake about which Mark wrote?

[2:13]

Mark wrote about the Sea of Galilee

See Map: Sea of Galilee

#### How did Mark talk about Levi?

[2:14]

Mark called the tax collector Levi, son of Alphaeus. In the gospel of Matthew, Levi was named Matthew (see: Matthew 9:9-11).

Matthew was a tax collector. People in Israel hated the tax collectors. Tax collectors were Jews who worked for the Roman government. They paid the Romans so they could collect taxes from other people. If they collected more taxes than they paid the Roman government, then they were allowed to keep it. Because of this, many tax collectors became rich. The Jews thought a Jewish tax collector betrayed the Jewish people because they took money from the Jews and gave it to the Romans. They thought tax collectors were evil because they took money from people who honored God and gave it to people who rejected God.

#### Who were the people who followed Jesus?

[2:15]

The twelve disciples were certain people who believed in Jesus and followed him. In 2:15, Mark wrote about other people who followed Jesus. Some of them believed in Jesus and followed him. Others did not believe in Jesus, but they still followed him. They wanted to see the great miracles he did. However, they did not believe Jesus was the messiah.

See: Miracle; Messiah (Christ); Disciple

#### Why did the Pharisees ask Jesus’ followers “Why does he eat with tax collectors and sinners?

[2:16]

Pharisees wanted to follow the Law of Moses. They thought that eating with unclean people would make them unclean. This is not what the Law of Moses said. It is what the Pharisees taught. Because of this, they did not know why Jesus wanted to be near people who sinned. They were saying that Jesus had broken the Law of Moses. However, he was not breaking the Law of Moses.

See: Pharisees; Clean and Unclean; Law of Moses; Sin

#### What did Jesus say to the Pharisees?

[2:17]

Jesus told the Pharisees that he was a type of doctor. This was a metaphor. Doctors needed to be near sick people so that they could help them. Certain people knew they sinned and were not at peace with God. They knew they needed God to forgive them.

Jesus called the Pharisees “righteous.” This is because they were the teachers of the Law of Moses. They thought they did not sin and were at peace with God. They did not think they needed God to forgive them. However, everyone needs to be forgiven by God because everyone has sinned.

See: Matthew 9:9-13; Luke 5:27-32

See: Metaphor; Righteous (Righteousness); Sin

## 2:18-22

#### Why were people arguing about fasting?

[2:18]

The people argued because they did not see the disciples of Jesus fasting. In ancient Israel, people fasted often. They fasted when bad things happened (see: Ezra 8:23). They fasted when people died (see: 1 Samuel 31:13; 2 Samuel 1:12). They fasted when people were sick (see:2 Samuel 1:16). They fasted when they repented (see: 1 Kings 21:27). Many Jews fasted two days every week when Jesus was on the earth (see: Luke 18:9-14).

See: Disciple; Fasting; Repent (Repentance)

#### How did Jesus answer the question of fasting?

[2:19]

The Pharisees asked Jesus a question about fasting. Jesus answered the question by asking a question. He asked if people needed to fast when good things happened. Jesus said that people did not fast when good things happened. People should have been very happy while Jesus was on earth. Therefore, they should not fast. Jesus prophesied that he would be killed. When this happens, people will be very sad. Then they will fast.

Jesus also used two metaphors. One metaphor was about clothes and the other was about wineskins. He wanted to say that people do things differently after something new happens. The disciples did something different because they were with Jesus, the messiah.

**Advice to translators**: A wineskin is a bag that holds wine. It was made of leather, that is, the skin of an animal.

See: Matthew 9:14-17; Luke 5:33-39

See: Pharisees; Fasting; Wedding;Marriage; Bride of Christ; Lamb of God; Prophecy (Prophesy) ; Metaphor; Wine (Winepress); Messiah (Christ)

## 2:23-28

#### Why did the Pharisees say Jesus’ followers broke the rules about the Sabbath?

[2:24]

According to the Law of Moses, one could work on the Sabbath. However, it does not say what people needed to stop doing. The Pharisees made many rules about what someone could and could not do on the Sabbath. However, this was not in the Law of Moses. The disciples picked small pieces of grain and rubbed them together so they could eat them. In the Law of Moses, people were allowed to do this when they went from one place to another place (see: Deuteronomy 23:25). However, the Pharisees taught that this was wrong. Jesus knew it was not wrong to break the Pharisees’ rule.

See: Pharisees; Sabbath; Law of Moses

#### How did Jesus answer the Pharisees?

[2:25, 2:26, 2:27, 2:28]

Jesus told the Pharisees that eating was not breaking the Law of Moses. The Law of Moses had certain rules about the Sabbath. Jesus told them a story about David (see: 1 Samuel 21:2-6). David broke the Law of Moses. However, this was not evil. It was not evil to help people or to eat if you needed to eat. Jesus created the Sabbath. Therefore, if Jesus said they were not doing something evil, then they were not doing something evil.

Jesus wanted people to know that God cared more about people than the rules about the Sabbath. God made the Sabbath for people and it was a gift he gave to people.

See: Matthew 12:1-8; Luke 6:1-5

See: Pharisees; Law of Moses; Sabbath

#### Mark 2:1

##### it was heard that he was at home

"the people there heard that he was staying at his home"

#### Mark 2:2

##### So many gathered there

"So many people gathered there" or "So many people came to the house"

#### Mark 2:3

##### were bringing a paralyzed man

"were bringing a man who was unable to walk or use his arms"

#### Mark 2:4

##### could not get near him

"could not get close to where Jesus was"

##### they removed the roof that was above Jesus, and after they made an opening, they lowered the mat the paralyzed man was lying on

"they removed the tiles from the part of the roof above where Jesus was. And when they had dug through the clay roof, they lowered the mat the paralzyed man was lying on" or "they made a hole in the roof above Jesus, and then they lowered the paralyzed man on the mat"

#### Mark 2:5

##### Seeing their faith

Possible meanings are 1) that only the men who carried the paralyzed man had faith or 2) that the paralyzed man and the men who brought him to Jesus all had faith.

##### Son

"My son"

##### your sins are forgiven

"your sins are gone" or "you do not have to pay for your sins" or "your sins do not count against you"

#### Mark 2:6

##### reasoned in their hearts

"were thinking to themselves"

#### Mark 2:7

##### How can this man speak this way?

"This man should not speak this way!"

##### Who can forgive sins but God alone?

"Only God can forgive sins!"

#### Mark 2:8

##### in his spirit

"in his inner being" or "in himself"

##### they were thinking within themselves

Each of the scribes was thinking to himself; they were not talking to each other.

##### Why are you thinking this in your hearts?

"What you are thinking is wrong." or "Do not think that I am blaspheming."

##### this in your hearts

"this inside yourselves" or "these things"

#### Mark 2:9

##### Which is easier, to say to the paralyzed man, ... take up your mat and walk'?

"I just said to the paralyzed man, 'Your sins are forgiven.' You may think that it is harder to say 'Get up, take up your mat and walk,' because the proof of whether or not I can heal him will be shown by whether or not he gets up and walks." or "You may think that it is easier to say to the paralyzed man 'Your sins are forgiven' than it is to say 'Get up, take up your mat and walk.'"

#### Mark 2:10

##### that the Son of Man has authority

"that I am the Son of Man and I have authority"

#### Mark 2:12

##### in front of everyone

"while all the people there were watching"

#### Mark 2:13

##### the lake

This is the Sea of Galilee, which is also known as the Lake of Gennesaret.

#### Mark 2:14

##### the tax collector's tent

We do not know what kind of a structure this was or what it was made of. It may have been a tent or booth. It probably included a table and some kind of protection from sun and rain.

#### Mark 2:15

##### sinners

In this verse, the word "sinners" refers to people who did not obey the law of Moses but committed what others thought were very bad sins

##### for there were many and they followed him

Possible meanings are 1) "for there were many tax collectors and sinful people who followed Jesus" or 2) "for Jesus had many disciples and they followed him."

#### Mark 2:16

##### Why does he eat with tax collectors and sinners?

"He should not eat with tax collectors and sinners!"

#### Mark 2:17

##### he said to them

"he said to the scribes"

##### People who are strong in body do not need a physician; only people who are sick need one

Jesus used this proverb about sick people and doctors to teach them that only people who know that they are sinful realize that they need Jesus.

##### strong in body

"healthy"

##### I did not come to call righteous people, but I came to call sinners

"I came for people who understand they are sinful, not for people who believe they are righteous"

#### Mark 2:18

##### the Pharisees were fasting ... the disciples of the Pharisees

These two phrases refer to the same group of people, but the second is more specific. Both refer to the followers of the Pharisee sect, but they do not focus on the leaders of the Pharisees.

##### Some people

The possible meanings are 1) these men were not among John's disciples or the disciples of the Pharisees or 2) these men were among John's disciples.

##### came and said to him

"came and said to Jesus"

#### Mark 2:19

##### Can the wedding attendants fast while the bridegroom is still with them?

"Wedding attendants do not fast while the bridegroom is with them. Rather they celebrate and feast."

#### Mark 2:20

##### the bridegroom will be taken away and then they will fast

"the bridegroom will go away and then the the wedding attendants will fast"

#### Mark 2:21

##### No one sews a piece of new cloth on an old garment

Sewing a piece of new cloth on an old garment will make the hole on an old garment worse if the piece of new cloth has not yet shrunk. Both the new cloth and old garment will be ruined.

#### Mark 2:22

##### new wine

"grape juice." This refers to wine that has not fermented yet. If grapes are unknown in your area, use the general term for fruit juice.

##### old wineskins

This refers to wineskins that have been used many times.

##### wineskins

These were bags made out of animal skins. They could also be called "wine bags" or "skin bags."

##### the wine will burst the skins

New wine expands as it ferments. If it is put in new wineskins, the wineskins will stretch. But old wineskins are brittle and cannot stretch. If new wine is poured into old wineskins, the wineskins will tear open and be ruined.

##### fresh wineskins

"new wineskins" or "new wine bags." This refers to wineskins that have never been used.

#### Mark 2:23

##### began picking heads of grain

The disciples were picking heads of grain to eat the kernels, or seeds, in them while they were walking. They were not harvesting the grain to take it home. Plucking grain in others' fields and eating it was not considered stealing. The question was whether it was lawful to do this on the Sabbath.

##### heads of grain

The "heads" are the topmost part of the wheat plant, which is a kind of tall grass. The heads hold the mature grain or seeds of the plant.

##### as they made their way

"as they walked along"

#### Mark 2:24

##### Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful on the Sabbath day?

"Look! They are breaking the Jewish law concerning the Sabbath."

#### Mark 2:25

##### He said to them

"Jesus said to the Pharisees"

##### Have you never read in the scriptures what David did

"You have read what David did" or "Remember what you read about what David did"

#### Mark 2:26

##### how he went into the house of God ... to those who were with him?

"how he went into the house of God ... to those who were with him."

##### the bread of the presence

This refers to the twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God.

#### Mark 2:27

##### The Sabbath was made for mankind

"God made the Sabbath for mankind"

##### mankind

"man" or "people" or "the needs of people." This word refers to both men and women.

##### not mankind for the Sabbath

"mankind was not made for the Sabbath" or "God did not make mankind for the Sabbath"

Chapter 3

1Again Jesus walked into the synagogue, and there was a man with a withered hand.2Some people watched him closely to see if he would heal him on the Sabbath so that they could accuse him.3Jesus said to the man with the withered hand, "Get up and stand here in the middle of everyone."4Then he said to the people, "Is it lawful to do good on the Sabbath day or to do harm; to save a life or to kill?" But they were silent.5He looked around at them with anger, and he was grieved by their hardness of heart, and he said to the man, "Stretch out your hand." He stretched it out, and his hand was restored.6The Pharisees went out and immediately began to plot with the Herodians as to how they might put him to death.

7Then Jesus, with his disciples, went to the sea, and a great crowd of people followed from Galilee and from Judea8and from Jerusalem and from Idumea and beyond the Jordan and around Tyre and Sidon. When they heard about the things he was doing, a great crowd came to him.9He told his disciples to have a small boat ready for him because of the crowd, so that they would not press against him.10For he healed many, so that everyone who had afflictions eagerly approached him in order to touch him.11Whenever the unclean spirits saw him, they fell down before him and cried out, and they said, "You are the Son of God."12He strictly ordered them not to make him known.

13He went up on the mountain, and he called for those he wanted, and they came to him.14He appointed the twelve (whom he named apostles) so that they might be with him and he might send them to proclaim the message,15and to have authority to cast out demons.16He appointed the twelve: Simon, to whom he gave the name Peter;17James son of Zebedee, and John the brother of James, to whom he gave the name Boanerges, that is, "Sons of Thunder";18and Andrew, Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot,19and Judas Iscariot, who would betray him.

20Then he went home, and the crowd came together again, so that they could not even eat bread.21When his family heard about it, they went out to seize him, for they said, "He is out of his mind."

22The scribes who came down from Jerusalem said, "He is possessed by Beelzebul" and "By the ruler of the demons he drives out demons."

23Jesus called them to himself and said to them in parables, "How can Satan cast out Satan?24If a kingdom is divided against itself, that kingdom cannot stand.25If a house is divided against itself, that house will not be able to stand.26If Satan has risen up against himself and is divided, he is not able to stand, but has come to an end.27But no one can enter into the house of a strong man and steal his belongings without tying up the strong man first, and then he will plunder his house.28Truly I say to you, all sins of the sons of men will be forgiven, even all the blasphemies which they utter,29but whoever blasphemes against the Holy Spirit will never have forgiveness, but is guilty of an eternal sin."

30Jesus said this because they were saying, "He has an unclean spirit."

31Then his mother and his brothers came and stood outside. They sent for him, summoning him.32A crowd was sitting around him and they said to him, "Your mother and your brothers and your sisters are outside, and they are looking for you."

33He answered them, "Who are my mother and my brothers?"34He looked around at those who were sitting in a circle around him and said, "See, here are my mother and my brothers!35For whoever does the will of God, that person is my brother, and sister, and mother."

### Mark 3

## 3:1-6

#### To which Synagogue did Jesus return?

[3:1]

Jesus returned to a synagogue. Scholars think Jesus returned to the synagogue in Capernaum. (see: Mark 1:21).

See: Synagogue

See Map: Capernaum

#### What caused the man’s hand to be withered?

[3:1]

Mark wrote about a man with a withered hand. That is, his hand was damaged or deformed. However, he was born with a normal hand. Scholars think the man got sick and the sickness damaged his hand.

#### Why did people watch to see if Jesus would heal this man on the Sabbath?

[3:2]

The Pharisees taught that it was wrong to heal someone on the Sabbath unless the person could die. If they were not going to die, then the Pharisees said you must wait to heal them. They thought that healing was a kind of work. The Law of Moses taught that people are not to work on the Sabbath. Certain people wanted to say Jesus did something evil by healing this man. However, it was not wrong for Jesus to heal this man. It was wrong for them to want to say Jesus did something evil. This was why Jesus was angry.

See: Mark 2:24

See: Pharisees; Sabbath;Law of Moses

#### Who were the Herodians?

[3:6]

The Herodians were Jewish teachers. They liked King Herod and the people that would rule after he did. The Roman government gave these men permission to rule Israel. They liked things and ideas that were from Greece and Rome. They did not think there was going to be a Jewish messiah and they did not like Jesus’ teaching. The Pharisees needed help from these leaders so they could kill Jesus.

See: Matthew 12:9-14; Luke 6:6-11

See: Messiah (Christ)

See Map: Greece; Rome

## 3:7-12

#### Where is Galilee?

[3:7]

See Map: Galilee

#### Where is Idumea, Jordan, Tyre and Sidon?

[3:8]

Idumea was an area south of Israel. It was also called Edom. Tyre and Sidon were Gentile cities north of Israel.

See: Esau (Edom); Gentile

See Map: Jerusalem; Edom; Jordan; Tyre; Sidon; Israel

#### What was an unclean spirit?

[3:11]

See: Demon

#### Why did Jesus tell the unclean spirits to be silent?

[3:12]

The unclean spirits knew Jesus. They fell down to worship him. However, Jesus did not want them to tell people that he was the Son of God. Scholars think Jesus wanted people to tell other people that He was the Son of God and not the demons.

See: Mark 1:24-25, 34; Acts 16:17-18

See: Demon; Son of God

## 3:13-19

#### What were apostles?

[3:14]

See: Matthew 10:1-4; Luke 6:13-16

See: Apostle

#### What was the message they told others?

[3:14]

The apostles were going to tell other people a message. That message was the gospel.

See: Apostle; Gospel

## 3:20-30

#### Why did Jesus’ family think Jesus was “out of his mind”?

[3:21]

Mark wrote that Jesus’ family thought Jesus was “out of his mind.” That is, they thought he was no longer able to think in a right way. Some scholars think that because Jesus was too busy to even eat, his family thought he was no longer thinking rightly. Other scholars think Mark wrote that the crowd thought Jesus was “out of his mind.”

#### Who was Beelzebul?

[3:22]

Beelzebul was a name for Satan.

See: Matthew 12:24-32; Luke 11:17-23

See: Satan (The Devil)

#### How did the scribes think Jesus was able to remove demons from people?

[3:22]

The scribes said that Satan gave Jesus permission to remove demons from people.

See: Scribe;Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons); Demon; Satan (The Devil)

#### What was a parable?

[3:23]

See: Parable

#### What did Jesus say to the scribes?

[3:23, 3:24]

Jesus spoke against what the Scribes said. Jesus said that he fought against Satan by casting out demons. If Jesus wanted to help Satan, then he would not fight against Satan. Jesus also fought against the things Satan ruled on earth. God allowed Satan to rule these things for a period of time. Jesus proved that he was stronger than Satan and could defeat Satan by casting out demons.

See: Scribe; Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons); Demon; Satan (The Devil)

#### What was the blasphemy of the Holy Spirit?

[3:29]

Jesus said that every sin could be forgiven except one. That was blasphemy of the Holy Spirit. Scholars disagree about how someone blasphemes the Holy Spirit.

1. Some scholars think Jesus spoke about rejecting him. If someone does not believe in Jesus, then they will not be forgiven of their sins.
2. Some scholars think Jesus spoke about someone seeing Jesus do miracles and saying that Satan gave him the power to do this. Therefore, people today cannot blaspheme the Holy Spirit.
3. Other scholars think Jesus spoke about people who said that the Holy Spirit did not do the things that he did.

See: Sin; Blaspheme (Blasphemy); Holy Spirit; Miracle

#### What was an unclean spirit?

[3:30]

An unclean spirit was a demon.

See: Demon; Clean and Unclean

## 3:31-34

#### Who were Jesus’ family?

[3:32]

Mary was Jesus’ mother. The names of four of Jesus’ brothers were James, Joseph, Simon and Judas. Although Jesus had sisters, their names are not in the Bible.

See: Matthew 12:46-50; 13:55-56; Mark 6:3; Luke 8:19-21

See: Family of Jesus

#### Who else is Jesus’ family?

[3:35]

Jesus talked about his family. But this was not his mother and brothers. He spoke about how Christians are children of God. Because of this, they are part of Jesus’ family.

See: Children of God

#### What was the will of God?

[3:35]

See: Will of God

#### Mark 3:1

##### a man with a withered hand

"a man with a crippled hand"

#### Mark 3:2

##### Some people

"Some of the Pharisees."

##### so that they could accuse him

"so that they could accuse him of wrongdoing" or "so that they could accuse him of breaking the law"

#### Mark 3:3

##### in the middle of everyone

"in the middle of this crowd"

#### Mark 3:4

##### Is it lawful to do good on the Sabbath ... or to kill?

Jesus said this to challenge them. He wanted them to acknowledge that it is lawful to heal people on the Sabbath.

##### to save a life or to kill

"is it lawful to save a life or to kill"

##### to save a life

"to save someone's life" or "to save someone from dying"

##### But they were silent

"But they refused to answer him"

#### Mark 3:5

##### was grieved

"was deeply saddened"

##### by their hardness of heart

"because they were unwilling to have compassion on the man"

##### Stretch out your hand

"Reach out with your hand"

##### his hand was restored

"Jesus restored his hand" or "Jesus made his hand the way it was before"

#### Mark 3:6

##### began to plot

"began to make a plan"

##### the Herodians

This is the name of an informal political party that supported Herod Antipas.

##### how they might put him to death

"how they might kill Jesus"

#### Mark 3:7

##### the sea

This refers to the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 3:8

##### Idumea

This is the region, previously known as Edom, which covered the southern half of the province of Judea.

##### the things he was doing

"the great miracles that Jesus was performing"

#### Mark 3:9

##### He told his disciples to have a small boat ... not press against him

As the large crowd was pushing forward toward Jesus, he was in danger of being crushed by them. They would not crush him intentionally. It was just that there were so many people.

#### Mark 3:10

##### For he healed many, so that everyone ... to touch him

"For, because Jesus had healed many people, everyone ... to touch him"

##### everyone who had afflictions eagerly approached him in order to touch him

"all the sick people pushed forward eagerly trying to touch him so that they might be healed"

#### Mark 3:11

##### saw him

"saw Jesus"

##### they fell down ... cried out, and they said

"they caused the people they were possessing to fall down before him and to cry out to him"

##### they fell down before him

The unclean spirits did not fall down before Jesus because they loved him or wanted to worship him. They fell down before him because they were afraid of him.

##### You are the Son of God

Jesus has power over unclean spirits because he is the "Son of God."

#### Mark 3:12

##### He strictly ordered them

"Jesus strictly ordered the unclean spirits"

#### Mark 3:16

##### Simon, to whom he gave the name Peter

The author begins to list the names of the twelve apostles. Simon is the first man listed.

#### Mark 3:17

##### to whom he gave

The phrase "to whom" refers to both James son of Zebedee and his brother John.

##### the name Boanerges, that is, Sons of Thunder

"the name Boanerges, which means men who are like thunder" or "the name Boanerges, which means Thunder Men"

#### Mark 3:18

##### Thaddaeus

This is the name of a man.

#### Mark 3:19

##### who would betray him

"who would betray Jesus" The word "who" refers to Judas Iscariot.

#### Mark 3:20

##### Then he went home

"Then Jesus went to the house where he was staying."

##### they could not even eat bread

"Jesus and his disciples could not eat at all" or "they could not eat anything because of the crowd"

#### Mark 3:21

##### they went out to seize him

Members of his family went to the house so that they could take hold of him and force him to go home with them.

##### for they said

Possible meanings for the word "they" are 1) his relatives or 2) some people in the crowd.

##### out of his mind

"crazy" or "insane"

#### Mark 3:22

##### By the ruler of the demons he drives out demons

"By the power of Beelzebul, who is the ruler of the demons, Jesus drives out demons"

#### Mark 3:23

##### Jesus called them to himself

"Jesus called the people to come to him"

##### How can Satan cast out Satan?

"Satan cannot cast out himself!" or "Satan does not go against his own evil spirits!"

#### Mark 3:24

##### If a kingdom is divided against itself it cannot stand

"If the people who live in a kingdom are divided against each other, the kingdom cannot endure or will end"

#### Mark 3:25

##### house

"family" or "household"

#### Mark 3:26

##### If Satan has risen up against himself and is divided

"If Satan and his evil spirits were fighting one another" or "If Satan and his evil spirits have risen up against each other and are divided"

##### is not able to stand

"cannot endure" or "cannot stay strong"

#### Mark 3:27

##### plunder

to steal a person's valuables and possessions

#### Mark 3:28

##### Truly I say to you

This indicates that the statement that follows is especially true and important.

##### the sons of men

"people"

##### utter

speak

#### Mark 3:29

##### will never have forgiveness

"will never be forgiven"

##### is guilty of an eternal sin

"is guilty of a sin that will be punished eternally"

#### Mark 3:30

##### they were saying

"the people were saying"

##### has an unclean spirit

"is possessed by an unclean spirit"

#### Mark 3:31

##### They sent for Jesus, summoning him

"They sent someone inside to tell Jesus that they were outside and to have him come out to them"

#### Mark 3:32

##### are looking for you

"are asking for you"

#### Mark 3:33

##### Who are my mother and my brothers?

"I will tell you who are really my mother and brothers."

#### Mark 3:34

##### here are my mother and my brothers

Jesus's disciples belong to Jesus's spiritual family. This is more important than belonging to his physical family.

#### Mark 3:35

##### whoever does ... that person is

"those who do ... they are"

##### that person is my brother, and sister, and mother

"that person is like a brother, sister, or mother to me"

Chapter 4

1Again he began to teach beside the sea, and a large crowd gathered around him. He stepped into a boat that was on the sea, and he sat down in it. The whole crowd was on the shore beside the sea.2He taught them many things in parables, and in his teaching, this is what he said to them.3"Listen! A farmer went out to sow his seed.4As he sowed, some seed fell beside the road, and the birds came and devoured it.5Other seed fell on the rocky ground, where it did not have much soil. Immediately it sprang up, because it did not have deep soil.6But when the sun rose, the plants were scorched, and because they had no root, they dried up.7Other seed fell among the thorn plants. The thorn plants grew up and choked it, and it did not produce a crop.8Other seed fell into good soil, and it produced a crop growing up and increasing and yielding thirty, sixty, and even a hundred times."9Then he said, "Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear!"

10When Jesus was alone, those around him with the twelve asked him about the parables.11He said to them, "To you is given the mystery of the kingdom of God. But to those outside everything is in parables,12so that when they look,yes they look,but do not see,and so that when they hear,yes they hear,but do not understand,or else they would turnand God would forgive them."

13He said to them, "Do you not understand this parable? How then will you understand all the parables?14The sower sows the word.15These are the ones beside the road, where the word is sown. When they hear, Satan immediately comes and takes away the word that is sown in them.16And these are the seed sown on the rocky ground; who, when they hear the word immediately receive it with joy.17But they do not have root in themselves, but they endure for a while. Afterward when tribulation or persecution arises on account of the word, they immediately fall away.18Still others are the ones sown among the thorns. They are those who hear the word,19but the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of wealth and the desires for other things come in and choke the word, and it is unproductive.20Those that were sown on the good soil are the ones who hear the word, accept it and bear fruit, thirty, sixty, or even a hundred times as much."

21Jesus said to them, "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand.22For nothing is hidden that will not be known, and nothing is secret that will not come out into the open.23If anyone has ears to hear, let him hear!"24He said to them, "Pay attention to what you hear, for the measure you use will be measured to you, and more will be added to you.25Because whoever has, to him will be given more, and whoever does not have, even what he has will be taken."

26He also said, "The kingdom of God is like a man who sows his seed on the ground.27He sleeps at night and gets up by day, and the seed sprouts and grows, though he does not know how.28The earth bears grain by itself: First the blade, then the ear, then the mature grain in the ear.29When the crop is ripe, he immediately sends in the sickle because the harvest has come."

30Again he said, "To what can we compare the kingdom of God, or what parable can we use to explain it?31It is like a mustard seed, which, when it is sown, is the smallest of all the seeds on earth.32Yet, when it is sown, it grows and becomes greater than all the garden plants, and it forms large branches, so that the birds of heaven can make their nests in its shade."

33With many parables like this he spoke the word to them, as much as they were able to understand,34and he did not speak to them without a parable. But when he was alone, he explained everything to his own disciples.

35On that day, when evening had come, he said to them, "Let us go over to the other side."36So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, just as he was, in the boat. There were other boats going along with him.37Just then a violent windstorm arose, and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was almost full of water.38But Jesus himself was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. They woke him up, saying, "Teacher, do you not care that we are about to die?"

39He got up, rebuked the wind, and said to the sea, "Peace! Be still!" Then the wind ceased, and there was a great calm.40Then he said to them, "Why are you afraid? Do you still not have faith?"

41They were filled with great fear and said to one another, "Who then is this, because even the wind and the sea obey him?"

### Mark 4

## 4:1-9

#### Why did Jesus get into the boat?

[4:1]

Jesus got into the boat near the shore. By doing this, people could not get too close to him. Therefore, everyone could see him and could hear him.

#### What was a parable?

[4:2]

See: Parable

#### Why did Mark write about sowing seeds?

[4:3]

In this passage, Mark wrote about sowing seeds. This was a long metaphor. He wrote about the different types of people. However, scholars do not agree on who were the people about which Mark wrote.

See: Matthew 13:3-9; Luke 8:5-8

See: Sow (Plant); Metaphor

#### What was a thorny plant?

[3:7]

A thorny plant was a type of weed. Weeds are bad plants. They harm the good plants. These plants grew in places where people did not want them to grow. Farmers wanted to stop these plants from growing because they harmed the good plants that they wanted to grow.

#### Why did Jesus say, “he who has ears to hear, let him hear”?

[4:9]

When someone said “he who has ears to hear, let him hear,” they wanted someone to really listen to what they said because they needed to hear it.

## 4:10-12

#### Who were the twelve?

[4:10]

Mark wrote about the twelve disciples when he wrote about the twelve.

See: Disciple

#### What was the mystery?

[4:11]

See: Mystery

#### Who was given the mystery of the kingdom of God?

[4:11]

Those who believed in Jesus were given the mystery of the kingdom of God. Anyone who rejected Jesus would not understand the things he taught. In 4:12, Jesus said that if they understood the things he taught, then they would have believed in him.

See: Mystery; Kingdom of God

## 4:13-20

#### What was the word?

[4:14]

Jesus explained the metaphor about sowing seeds. He said the sower sowed the word. That is, the things about which Jesus taught. Some scholars think Jesus spoke about the gospel. Fewer scholars think Jesus spoke about the kingdom of God.

See: Sow (Plant);Metaphor; Word of God; Gospel; Kingdom of God

#### Who were the people who were like seeds sown beside the road?

[4:15]

Jesus used a metaphor to talk about what happened to people when they heard the gospel. Jesus talked about certain people who were like seeds sown beside the road. This was a place where seeds could not grow. Those seeds died because the dirt was too hard. Some scholars think that Jesus spoke about Christians. These people say they were Christians, but they did not do things that honored God. Therefore, they were not at peace with God.

Other scholars think that Jesus spoke about people who were not Christians. These people did not believe in the things Jesus taught. They did not believe in Jesus.

See: ; Gospel; Satan (The Devil); Metaphor

#### What people were like the seeds sown on rocky ground?

[4:16]

Jesus used a metaphor to talk about what happened to people when they heard the gospel. Jesus talked about certain people who were like seeds sown on rocky ground. On the rocky ground, the seed could begin to grow. But there was not enough dirt for it to grow very much, so it died.

Some scholars think that Jesus spoke about Christians. These people believed in Jesus, but they rejected Jesus when they were persecuted. Therefore, they are not at peace with God.

Other scholars think that Jesus spoke about people who were not Christians. These people said they were Christians, but rejected Jesus when they were persecuted. Therefore, they were not Christians.

See: Persecute (Persecution) ; Metaphor; Gospel

#### What people were like seeds sown with the thorns?

[4:18]

Jesus used a metaphor to talk about what happened to people when they heard the gospel. Jesus talked about certain people who were like seeds sown with the thorns. Thorn plants were bad plants. The thorn plants killed the good plants.

Some scholars think Jesus spoke about Christians. These people believed in Jesus, but they made other things more significant than Jesus in their life. They did not honor God as much as they should have honored him.

Other scholars think Jesus spoke about people who were not Christians. They said they were Christians, but they cared more for the things they owned than they cared for Jesus. They were not Christians.

**Advice to translators**: Here, “thorns” is a type of plant that grows among other plants and kills them. It is also not good to be used for anything.

See: Fruit (Metaphor); Metaphor; Gospel

#### What people were like seeds sown on good soil?

[4:20]

Jesus used a metaphor to talk about what happened to people when they heard the gospel. Jesus talked about certain people who were like seeds sown on good soil. These people obeyed God and did things that honored God. They made fruit when they did this. That is, they did not live in the way they used to live. They helped others to believe in Jesus and did the things that honored Jesus.

See: Fruit (Metaphor); Metaphor

#### How did someone bear fruit?

[4:20]

See: Fruit (Metaphor)

## 4:21-29

#### Why did Jesus use a metaphor about light?

[4:21]

A lamp lights the entire room. It allows everything to be seen. God is light, and the word of God is light (see: Psalm 119:105; 1 John 1:5). Light made things known that were not known before. Jesus used a metaphor about the light.

Some scholars think Jesus spoke about the kingdom of God. He wanted people to know they could now know about the kingdom of God.

Other scholars think Jesus spoke about himself. When people believe in Jesus, they should want to tell other people about him and the gospel.

See: Light and Darkness (Metaphor); Kingdom of God; Metaphor;Gospel

#### Why did Jesus say, “he who has ears to hear, let him hear”?

[4:23]

When someone said “he who has ears to hear, let him hear,” they wanted someone to listen to what they said. This is why Jesus said it.

#### Why did Jesus say, “for the measure you use will be measured to you, and more will be added”?

[4:24]

Jesus said, “for the measure you use will be measured to you, and more will be added.” He wanted to say that if the disciples listened to him and obeyed him, they would be rewarded. If they did not do this, they would be disciplined.

See: Disciple; Reward;Discipline (To Disciple)

#### How is the kingdom of God like a man who sows his seed on the ground?

[4:26]

Jesus said that the kingdom of God is like a man who sowed his seed on the ground. This was a metaphor. The seeds were the gospel. Christians sowed the seeds. That is, they spread the gospel by telling it to other people. However, they did not make the seeds grow. God made the seed grow. Jesus wanted to say that Christians could not make other people believe in Jesus.

See: Kingdom of God; Metaphor

## 4:30-34

#### How was the kingdom of God like a mustard seed?

[4:31]

Jesus said the kingdom of God was like a mustard seed. This was a metaphor. The mustard seed was very small seed. It was about 1 millimeter in size. A mustard tree was very large. Jesus wanted to say that the kingdom of God began very small, but became great.

See: Kingdom of God; Metaphor

#### What were the birds of heaven?

[4:32]

The birds of heaven were birds. Heaven was the sky.

See: Heaven

#### What was a parable?

[4:33]

See: Parable

## 4:35-41

#### Why did Jesus tell the wind to stop?

[4:39]

Jesus told the wind to stop. This allowed others to know that he controlled the weather. Only God could do this. In ancient times, people thought the sea could not be controlled. They were afraid of the seas.

#### Why were the disciples afraid?

[4:41]

The disciples believed in Jesus, but they did not understand who Jesus was. They knew he was the messiah, but they did not understand that he is God.

See: Disciple; Messiah (Christ)

#### Mark 4:1

##### the sea

This is the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 4:3

##### A farmer went out to sow his seed

This means that he tossed seeds onto the ground so they could grow.

#### Mark 4:5

##### Other seed fell on the rocky ground, where it did not have much soil

"Other seed fell on shallow soil with underlying rock"

##### it sprang up, because it did not have deep soil

"The seed sprouted quickly because the soil was shallow"

#### Mark 4:6

##### the plants were scorched

"the sun scorched the young plants"

##### because they had no root, they dried up

"because the young plants had no roots, they dried up"

#### Mark 4:7

##### Other seed ... choked it ... it did not produce

"Other seed fell among thorns, which grew up and choked the plants, so that they produced no grain"

#### Mark 4:8

##### yielding thirty, sixty, and even a hundred times

"Some plants produced thirty times as much as the grain the man had planted, some produced sixty times as much grain, and some produced a hundred times as much grain"

#### Mark 4:9

##### Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear

"Whoever is willing to listen, listen" or "Whoever is willing to understand, let him understand and obey"

#### Mark 4:10

##### When Jesus was alone

This does not mean that Jesus was completely alone; rather, it means that the crowds were gone and Jesus was only with the twelve and some of his other close followers.

#### Mark 4:11

##### To you is given

"God has given you" or "I have given you"

##### to those outside

"to those outside our group" or "to those who are not among us." This refers to all the other people who were not among the twelve or Jesus's other close followers.

##### everything is in parables

"I have spoken everything in parables"

#### Mark 4:12

##### when they look ... when they hear

"when they look at what I am doing ... when they hear what I am saying"

##### they look, but do not see

"they look, but they do not understand" Or 2) here the word translated "look" refers to seeing what one is looking at and the word translated "see" refers to understanding what they are seeing.

##### they would turn and God would forgive them

"they would repent and God would forgive them"

#### Mark 4:13

##### He said to them

"Then Jesus said to his disciples"

##### Do you not understand this parable? How then will you understand all the parables?

"If you cannot understand this parable, think about how hard it will be for you to understand all the other parables."

#### Mark 4:14

##### The sower

"The farmer who sows his seed"

##### sows the word

"teaches people God's word" or "teaches God's message"

#### Mark 4:15

##### These are the ones beside the road

"These people are the seeds that fall beside the road" or "These people are like seeds that fall beside a road"

##### When they hear

"When they hear the word"

#### Mark 4:16

##### these are the seed sown on the rocky ground

"These people are the seeds that fall on the rocky ground" or "These people are like seeds that fall on the rocky ground"

#### Mark 4:17

##### they do not have root in themselves

"they are like young plants that have no roots"

##### endure

"continue in their belief"

##### tribulation or persecution arises on account of the word

"tribulation or persecution comes because they believe God's message"

##### they immediately fall away

In this parable, "fall away" means "stop believing God's message"

#### Mark 4:19

##### the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of wealth and the desires for other things come in and choke the word

"the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of wealth and the desires for other things come in and choke God's message in their lives like thorns that choke young plants"

##### the cares of the world

"the worries in this life" or "the concerns about this present life"

##### the deceitfulness of wealth

"the lie that wealth will make them happy" or "the lie that having many possessions will make them happy"

##### it is unproductive

The word being unproductive means that it does not have an effect on the person's life.

#### Mark 4:20

##### and bear fruit, thirty, sixty, or even a hundred times as much

"and produce good results, like plants that bear thirty, sixty, or even a hundred times as much fruit as what was sown"

#### Mark 4:21

##### Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket or under the bed?

"You certainly do not bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under a bed!"

#### Mark 4:22

##### For nothing is hidden that will not be known ... come out into the open

"For everything that is hidden will be made known, and everything that is secret will come out into to open"

#### Mark 4:23

##### If anyone has ears to hear, let him hear

"If anyone is willing to listen, listen" or "If anyone is willing to understand, let him understand and obey"

#### Mark 4:24

##### for the measure you use

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus is talking about a literal measure and giving generously to others or 2) Jesus speaks of "understanding" as if it were "measuring."

##### will be measured to you, and more will be added to you.

"God will measure that amount for you, and he will add it to you"

#### Mark 4:25

##### to him will be given more ... even what he has will be taken

"to him God will give more ... from him God will take away" or "God will give more to him ... God will take away from him"

#### Mark 4:26

##### like a man who sows his seed

"like a farmer who plants his seed" or "like a farmer who scatters his seed"

#### Mark 4:27

##### He sleeps at night and gets up by day

"He sleeps each night and gets up each day" or "He sleeps each night and gets up the next day"

##### gets up by day

"is up during the day" or "is active during the day"

##### though he does not know how

"though the man does not know how the seed sprouts and grows"

#### Mark 4:28

##### the blade

the stalk or sprout

##### the ear

the head on the stalk or the part of the plant that holds the fruit

#### Mark 4:29

##### he immediately sends in the sickle

"he immediately goes into the field with a sickle to harvest the grain" or "he immediately sends people with sickles into the field to harvest the grain"

##### sickle

a curved blade or a sharp hook used to cut grain

##### because the harvest has come

"because it is time for harvesting the grain" or "because the grain is ready to be gathered"

#### Mark 4:30

##### To what can we compare the kingdom of God, or what parable can we use to explain it?

"With this parable I can explain what the kingdom of God is like."

#### Mark 4:31

##### when it is sown

"when someone sows it" or "when someone plants it"

#### Mark 4:33

##### he spoke the word to them

"he taught them the message of God"

##### as much as they were able to understand

"and if they were able to understand some, he kept telling them more"

#### Mark 4:34

##### when he was alone

This means that he was away from the crowds, but his disciples were still with him.

##### he explained everything

"he explained all his parables"

#### Mark 4:35

##### the other side

"the other side of the Sea of Galilee" or "the other side of the sea"

#### Mark 4:37

##### a violent windstorm arose

"a violent windstorm began"

##### the boat was almost full of water

"the boat was in danger of being filled with water"

#### Mark 4:38

##### the stern

The stern is the back part of the boat.

##### do you not care that we are about to die?

"you need to pay attention to what is happening; we are all about to die!"

##### we are about to die

The word "we" includes the disciples and Jesus.

#### Mark 4:39

##### Peace! Be still!

These two phrases are similar and used to emphasize what Jesus wanted the wind and the sea to do.

##### a great calm

"a great stillness over the sea" or "a great calm over the sea"

#### Mark 4:40

##### Why are you afraid? Do you still not have faith?

"You should not be afraid. You need to have more faith."

#### Mark 4:41

##### Who then is this, because even the wind and the sea obey him?

"This man is not like ordinary men; even the wind and the sea obey him!"

Chapter 5

1They came to the other side of the sea, to the region of the Gerasenes.2When Jesus was getting out of the boat, a man with an unclean spirit came up to him out of the tombs. 3The man lived in the tombs. No one could restrain him anymore, not even with a chain.4He had been bound many times with shackles and with chains. He tore the chains apart and his shackles were shattered. No one had the strength to subdue him.5Every night and day in the tombs and in the mountains, he cried out and cut himself with sharp stones.6When he saw Jesus from a distance, he ran to him and bowed down before him.7He cried out with a loud voice, "What do I have to do with you, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? I beg you by God himself, do not torment me."8For he had been saying to him, "Come out of the man, you unclean spirit."

9He asked him, "What is your name?"

He answered him, "My name is Legion, for we are many."10He begged him again and again not to send them out of the region.11Now a great herd of pigs was there feeding on the hill,12and they begged him, saying, "Send us into the pigs; let us enter into them."13So he allowed them; the unclean spirits came out and entered into the pigs, and the herd rushed down the steep hill into the sea, and about two thousand pigs drowned in the sea.14Then those who were feeding the pigs ran away and reported what had happened in the city and in the countryside, and so people went out to see what had happened.15Then they came to Jesus and they saw the demon-possessed man, the one who had been possessed by Legion, sitting there, clothed and in his right mind; and they were afraid.16Those who had seen what happened to the demon-possessed man told them about it in detail, and they also told them about the pigs.17Then they started to beg him to leave their region.

18When he was getting into the boat, the demon-possessed man begged him that he might be with him.19But Jesus did not permit him, but said to him, "Go to your house and to your people and tell them what the Lord has done for you, and how he has shown you mercy."20So he went away and began to proclaim in the Decapolis the great things that Jesus had done for him, and everyone was amazed.

21Now when Jesus had crossed over again to the other side in the boat, a great crowd gathered around him, as he was beside the sea.22Then one of the leaders of the synagogue named Jairus came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet.23He begged again and again, saying, "My little daughter is near death. I beg you, come and lay your hands on her that she may be made well and live."24So he went with him, and a great crowd followed him and pressed close around him.

25Now a woman was there who had a flow of blood for twelve years.26She had suffered much from many doctors and had spent everything that she had, but instead of getting better she grew worse.27When she had heard the reports about Jesus, she came up behind him in the crowd and touched his cloak.28For she said, "If I touch just his clothes, I will be healed."29When she touched him, the bleeding stopped, and she felt in her body that she was healed from her affliction.

30Jesus immediately realized in himself that power had gone out from him. He turned around in the crowd and said, "Who touched my clothes?"

31His disciples said to him, "You see this crowd pressed around you, and you say, 'Who touched me?'"

32But Jesus looked around to see who had done it.33The woman, knowing what had happened to her, feared and trembled. She came and fell down before him and told him the whole truth.34He said to her, "Daughter, your faith has made you well. Go in peace and be healed from your affliction."

35While he was speaking, some people came from the synagogue leader's house, saying, "Your daughter is dead. Why trouble the teacher any longer?"

36But when Jesus overheard the message that was spoken, he said to the leader of the synagogue, "Do not be afraid. Just believe."37He did not permit anyone to accompany him except Peter, James, and John, the brother of James.38They came to the house of the leader of the synagogue and he saw there people making a lot of noise; they were weeping and wailing loudly.39When he entered the house, he said to them, "Why are you upset and why do you weep? The child is not dead but sleeps."40They began to mock him. But he put them all outside and took the father of the child and the mother and those who were with him, and he went in where the child was.41He took the hand of the child and said to her, "Talitha, koum!" which is translated, "Little girl, I say to you, get up."42Immediately the child got up and walked (for she was twelve years of age). They were immediately astonished with overwhelming amazement.43He strictly ordered them that no one should know about this. Then he told them to give her something to eat.

### Mark 5

## 5:1-8

#### Where was Gerasenes?

[5:1]

See Map: Gerasenes

#### How did someone come out of the tombs?

[5:2]

A tomb was a place where dead people were buried. These were caves at the bottom of mountains. At that time, people possessed with demons lived in those tombs. The tombs were unclean.

See: Demon; Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons); Clean and Unclean

#### What was an unclean spirit?

[5:2]

Mark wrote about an unclean spirit. Here, he wrote about many demons who were in this man.

See: Demon; Clean and Unclean;Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons)

#### Why could no one restrain the man?

[5:4]

When someone was restrained, they could not go from one place to another place or doing other things. This man could not be restrained. This is because the unclean spirit was very strong in the man.

See: Demon; Clean and Unclean; Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons)

#### Why did the man cut himself?

[5:5]

The man was in so much pain that he cut himself. He did not want to live anymore. He would rather die than to live with this demon inside of him.

See: Demon;Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons)

#### Why did the man bow down before Jesus?

[5:6]

The unclean spirit knew Jesus is God. He knew Jesus was greater than he was. In ancient times, someone kneeled before someone who was greater. Or perhaps the unclean spirit was worshiping Jesus.

See: Demon; Clean and Unclean; Son of God

#### Why did the man ask Jesus not to torment him?

[5:7]

The man did not want Jesus to torment him. That is, he did not want Jesus to harm him in a severe way. He did not want Jesus to punish him and send him to hell to be punished forever. Some scholars think the man was talking here, not the demon living in the man. Other scholars think the demon was talking.

See: Demon; Hell

## 5:9-20

#### What was this demon’s name?

[5:9]

The demon said his name was Legion. A legion was a Roman military word. It was a group of 6000 soldiers. So the demon said his name was legion because there were many demons in the man. However, it was possible to speak of this as one demon because they were all in one man.

See: Demon

#### Why did the demon want to enter into the pigs?

[5:12]

The demons did not want Jesus to make them leave the area. They wanted Jesus to allow them to go into the group of pigs. Some scholars think they wanted to remain in the same area where they could hurt more people. Other scholars think that they did not want Jesus to punish them and send them to hell.

See: Demon; Hell

#### Why did the pigs run down the cliffs and into the sea?

[5:13]

The pigs ran off the cliffs after the demons entered into them. Some scholars think the demons chose pigs because they were unclean according to the Law of Moses. Other scholars think they wanted to destroy the man, but when they were not able to do this, they wanted to destroy the pigs. Other scholars think the pigs were overwhelmed by the demons and the demons made the pigs run over the cliff and into the sea.

See: Demon; Clean and Unclean; Law of Moses

#### Why were the people afraid of Jesus?

[5:15]

The people in that region were afraid after seeing the things Jesus did.

1. Some scholars think the people were afraid because Jesus controlled the demons.
2. Other scholars think the people were afraid because all of the pigs died. 2000 pigs were worth a lot of money. Perhaps they were afraid that they could lose a lot of money.
3. Other scholars think that Jesus greatly punished evil. They were afraid that they would be punished too.

See: Demon

#### Why did the man want to go with Jesus?

[5:18]

The man wanted to be with Jesus. Some scholars think the man wanted to become a disciple of Jesus. However, Jesus wanted him to stay with the man’s own people. This is because the man was a Gentile and lived in a Gentile area. He wanted this man to tell the Gentiles in Decapolis about Jesus.

See: Disciple; Gentile

See Map: Decapolis

#### Why did Jesus call himself “the Lord”?

[5:19]

See: Lord

## 5:21-43

#### What was a leader of the synagogue?

[5:22]

The leader of the synagogue was someone who helped lead people in worshipping God in the synagogue. He was not necessarily a pharisee or sadducee.

See: Synagogue; Pharisees; Sadducees

#### Why did Jairus fall at Jesus’ feet?

5:22

Jairus fell at Jesus’ feet to ask him for help. He was begging. He was desperate for help. He was not worshipping Jesus.

#### Why did this man want Jesus to lay his hands on his daughter?

[5:23]

This man thought that Jesus could heal his daughter by touching her. He did not know that Jesus could heal her without touching her. He also did not know that he could heal her after she died.

#### What was a flow of blood?

[5:25]

Women bleed for a few days every month if they are not pregnant. However, this woman bled continuously for 12 years. This would have made her unclean.

See: Clean and Unclean

#### How did this woman “suffer much from many doctors”?

[5:26]

Mark wrote that the woman “suffered much from many doctors” because many doctors had tried to help her. However, instead of helping her, they actually harmed her more.

#### Why were the disciples surprised that Jesus asked who touched him?

[5:31]

The disciples were surprised that Jesus asked who touched him. That was because many people were touching him. They did not think he could know when someone specific touched him.

#### Why was this woman healed?

[5:29]

This woman was healed because she believed in Jesus.

#### What did Jesus say to the woman?

[5:34]

Jesus told the woman to go in peace and be healed from her suffering. He wanted her to live in a way that honored God. He also wanted her to know that he completely healed her. She was now clean and did not need to be separated from other people.

See: Clean and Unclean

#### Why were the people at the house crying?

[5:38]

The people at the house were crying because the little girl died.

#### Why did the people laugh at Jesus?

[5:40]

The people laughed at Jesus. The people did not know that Jesus had the power to make someone alive again.

#### Why did Jesus not want them to tell anyone about this?

[5:43]

Jesus did not want this girl’s family to tell other people about Jesus healing her. Her father was a Jewish leader and many Jewish leaders rejected Jesus as the messiah. It was not time for them to fight against Jesus. So he did not want them to know what he was doing. Some scholars also think Jesus did not want people to begin bringing dead people to him to be made alive again.

See: Messiah (Christ); Messianic Secret

#### Why did the girl need to eat?

[5:43]

The girl needed to eat because she was alive again in the same way she was alive before she died. She was not resurrected. When someone is resurrected, they do not need to eat.

See: Resurrect (Resurrection)

#### Mark 5:1

##### They came

The word "They" refers to Jesus and his disciples.

##### the sea

This refers to the Sea of Galilee.

##### Gerasenes

This name refers to the people who live in Gerasa.

#### Mark 5:2

##### with an unclean spirit

"controlled by an unclean spirit" or "that an unclean spirit possessed"

#### Mark 5:4

##### He had been bound many times

"People had bound him many times"

##### his shackles were shattered

"he shattered his shackles"

##### shackles

pieces of metal that people wrap around the arms and legs of prisoners and attach with chains to objects that do not move so the prisoners cannot move

##### No one had the strength to subdue him

"He was so strong that no one was strong enough to control him"

#### Mark 5:5

##### cut himself with sharp stones

Often when a person is possessed by a demon, the demon will cause the person to do self-destructive things, such as cutting himself.

#### Mark 5:6

##### When he saw Jesus from a distance

When the man first saw Jesus, Jesus would have been getting out of the boat.

##### bowed down

This means that he knelt down before Jesus out of reverence and respect, not out of worship.

#### Mark 5:7

##### He cried out

"The unclean spirit cried out"

##### What do I have to do with you, Jesus, Son of the Most High God?

The unclean spirit cried out "Leave me alone, Jesus, Son of the Most High God! There is no reason for you to interfere with me."

##### Jesus ... do not torment me

Jesus has the power to torment unclean spirits.

##### Son of the Most High God

This is an important title for Jesus.

##### I beg you by God himself

"I beg you before God" or "I swear by God himself and beg you"

#### Mark 5:9

##### He asked him

"And Jesus asked the unclean spirit"

##### He answered him, "My name is Legion, for we are many."

"And the spirit said to him, 'Call us an army, for many of us are inside the man.'"

#### Mark 5:10

##### He begged him not to send them

"The unclean spirit begged Jesus not to send him and the other unclean spirits"

#### Mark 5:12

##### they begged him

"the unclean spirits begged Jesus"

#### Mark 5:13

##### he allowed them

"Jesus allowed the unclean spirits to do what they asked permission to do"

##### into the sea, and about two thousand pigs drowned in the sea

You can make the words after the comma a separate sentence: "into the sea. There were about two thousand pigs, and they drowned in the sea"

#### Mark 5:14

##### reported what had happened in the city and in the countryside

"told people in the city and in the countryside what had happened"

#### Mark 5:15

##### Legion

This was the name of the many demons that had been in the man.

##### in his right mind

"of a normal mind" or "thinking clearly"

##### they were afraid

The word "they" refers to the group of people who went out to see what had happened.

#### Mark 5:19

##### But Jesus did not permit him

"But he did not allow the man to come with them"

#### Mark 5:20

##### Decapolis

This is the name of a region that means Ten Cities. It is located to the southeast of the Sea of Galilee.

##### everyone was amazed

"all the people who heard what the man said were amazed"

#### Mark 5:21

##### the other side

This refers to the other side of the Sea of Galilee

##### beside the sea

"on the seashore" or "on the shore"

#### Mark 5:22

##### Jairus

This is the name of a man.

#### Mark 5:23

##### lay your hands

"Laying on hands" refers to a prophet or teacher placing his hand on someone and imparting either healing or a blessing. In this case, Jarius is asking Jesus to heal his daughter.

##### that she may be made well and live

"and heal her and make her live"

#### Mark 5:24

##### So he went with him

"So Jesus and the disciples went with Jairus"

##### pressed close around him

This means they crowded around Jesus and pressed themselves together to be closer to Jesus.

#### Mark 5:25

##### a woman was there who had a flow of blood for twelve years

The woman did not have an open wound; rather, her monthly flow of blood would not stop. Your language may have a polite way to refer to this condition.

#### Mark 5:26

##### she grew worse

"her sickness got worse" or "her bleeding increased"

#### Mark 5:27

##### the reports about Jesus

"that Jesus healed people"

##### cloak

outer garment or coat

#### Mark 5:28

##### I will be healed

"it will heal me" or "his power will heal me"

#### Mark 5:29

##### she was healed from her affliction

"the sickness left her" or "she was no longer sick"

#### Mark 5:30

##### that power had gone out from him

"that his healing power had healed someone"

#### Mark 5:33

##### told him the whole truth

"told him the whole truth about how she had touched him"

#### Mark 5:34

##### Daughter

Jesus called the woman "Daughter." This was a kind way for a teacher to speak to a woman. Jesus showed that he cared about her.

##### your faith

"your faith in me"

#### Mark 5:35

##### While he was speaking

"While Jesus was speaking"

##### the synagogue leader

This refers to Jairus

##### Why trouble the teacher any longer?

"It is useless to bother the teacher any longer" or "There is no need to bother the teacher any longer."

##### the teacher

This refers to Jesus.

#### Mark 5:36

##### the message that was spoken

"the message that they told Jairus"

##### Just believe

"Just believe I can make you daughter live"

#### Mark 5:37

##### He did not permit anyone to accompany him except Peter ... James

"Jesus only permitted Peter ... James to accompany him"

#### Mark 5:38

##### he saw

Jesus saw

#### Mark 5:39

##### he said to them why are you upset and why do you weep?

"Jesus said to the people this is not a time to be upset and crying."

##### The child is not dead but sleeps

Jesus uses the common word for sleep, and so should the translation.

#### Mark 5:40

##### They began to mock him

The people who hear Jesus speak are laughing at him because they truly do know the difference between a dead person and a sleeping person and they think he does not.

##### put them all outside

"sent all the other people outside the house"

##### those who were with him went in where the child was

"Peter, James, and John went into the room where the child was lying"

#### Mark 5:41

##### Talitha, koum

This is an Aramaic sentence that Jesus spoke to the little girl in her language. Write these words as they sound, using your alphabet.

#### Mark 5:43

##### He strictly ordered them that no one should know about this. Then

"He ordered them strictly, 'No one should know about this!' Then" or "He ordered them strictly, 'Do not tell anyone about what I have done!' Then"

##### Then he told them to give her something to eat.

"And he told them, 'Give her something to eat.'"

Chapter 6

1He went out from there and came to his hometown, and his disciples followed him.2When the Sabbath came, he taught in the synagogue. Many people heard him and they were amazed. They said, "Where did he get these teachings?" "What is this wisdom that has been given to him?" "What are these miracles that he does with his hands?"3"Is this not the carpenter, the son of Mary and the brother of James and Joses and Judas and Simon? Are his sisters not here with us?" They were offended by Jesus. [1](#footnote-target-1)

4Then Jesus said to them, "A prophet is not without honor, except in his hometown and among his own relatives and in his own household."5He could not do any mighty work, except to lay his hands on a few sick people and heal them.6He was amazed at their unbelief. Then he went around the villages teaching.

7Then he called the twelve and began to send them out two by two, and he gave them authority over the unclean spirits,8and instructed them to take nothing for their journey, except a staff—no bread, no bag, and no money in their belts—9but to wear sandals, and not to wear two tunics.10He said to them, "Whenever you enter a house, remain until you go away from there.11If any town will not receive you or listen to you, when you leave that place, shake the dust off your feet as a testimony to them."12They went out and proclaimed that people should repent.13They cast out many demons, and anointed many sick people with oil and healed them.

14King Herod heard this, for Jesus' name had become well known. Some were saying, "John the Baptist has been raised from the dead, and that is why these miraculous powers are at work in him."15Some others said, "He is Elijah." Still others said, "He is a prophet, like one of the prophets in ancient times."

16But when Herod heard this, he said, "John, whom I beheaded, has been raised."

17For Herod sent to have John arrested and he had him bound in prison on account of Herodias (his brother Philip's wife), because he had married her.18For John told Herod, "It is not lawful for you to have your brother's wife."19But Herodias held on to anger against him and wanted to kill him, but she could not,20for Herod feared John; he knew that he was a righteous and holy man, and he kept him safe. Listening to him made him greatly perplexed, yet he heard him gladly.

21Then an opportunity came when Herod had his birthday and he made a dinner for his officials and for the commanders and leaders of Galilee.22The daughter of Herodias herself came in and danced for them, and she pleased Herod and his dinner guests. The king said to the girl, "Ask me for anything you want and I will give it to you."23He swore to her saying, "Whatever you ask of me, I will give you, up to half of my kingdom."

24She went out and said to her mother, "What should I ask him for?"

She said, "The head of John the Baptist."

25She immediately hurried back to the king, and she asked, saying, "I want you to give me, right now, the head of John the Baptist on a wooden platter."26Though this deeply grieved the king, he could not refuse her request because of the oath he had made and because of his dinner guests.27So the king sent a soldier from his guard and commanded him to bring him John's head. The guard went and beheaded him in the prison.28He brought his head on a platter and gave it to the girl, and the girl gave it to her mother.29When his disciples heard of this, they came and took his body and placed it in a tomb.

30The apostles came together with Jesus and told him all that they had done and taught.31Then he said to them, "Come away by yourselves into a deserted place and rest a while." For many were coming and going, and they did not even have time to eat.32So they went away in the boat to a deserted place by themselves.33But they saw them leaving and many recognized them, and they ran there together on foot from all the towns, and they arrived there before them.34When they came ashore, he saw a great crowd and he had compassion on them because they were like sheep without a shepherd. So he began to teach them many things.

35When the hour was late, his disciples came to him and said, "This is a deserted place, and the hour is already late.36Send them away so that they may go into the nearby countryside and villages to buy something to eat for themselves."

37But he answered and said to them, "You give them something to eat."

They said to him, "Can we go and buy two hundred denarii worth of bread and give it to them to eat?"

38He said to them, "How many loaves do you have? Go and see."

When they found out, they said, "Five loaves and two fish."39He commanded all the people to sit down in groups upon the green grass.40They sat down in groups of hundreds and fifties.41He took the five loaves and the two fish, and looking up to heaven he blessed and broke the loaves and gave them to the disciples to set before the people. He also divided the two fish among them all.42They all ate until they were satisfied.43They took up broken pieces of bread, twelve baskets full, and also pieces of the fish.44There were five thousand men who ate the loaves.

45Immediately he made his disciples get into the boat and go ahead of him to the other side, to Bethsaida, while he sent the crowd away.46After taking leave of them, he went up the mountain to pray.47Evening came, and the boat was now in the middle of the sea, and he was alone on land.48He saw that they were straining against the oars, for the wind was against them. About the fourth watch of the night, he came to them, walking on the sea, and he wanted to pass by them.49But when they saw him walking on the sea, they thought he was a ghost and cried out,50because they saw him and were troubled. Immediately he spoke to them and said to them, "Be courageous! It is I! Do not be afraid!"51He got into the boat with them, and the wind ceased blowing. They were completely amazed.52For they had not understood what the loaves meant. Instead, their hearts were hardened.

53When they had crossed over, they came to land at Gennesaret and anchored the boat.54When they came out of the boat, the people recognized him immediately,55and they ran throughout the whole region and began to bring the sick on their mats to wherever they heard he was.56Wherever he entered into villages, or cities, or into the country, they would put the sick in the marketplaces. They begged him to let them touch the edge of his garment, and as many as touched him were healed.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The man called Joses here is called Joseph in Matthew 27:56. The name Joseph represents how the name was spelled in Hebrew, and the name Joses represents how his name was spelled in Greek.

### Mark 6

## 6:1-6

#### Where did Jesus live when he was a child?

[6:1]

Jesus’ family lived in Nazareth.

See Map: Nazareth

#### What was the Sabbath?

[6:2]

See: Sabbath

#### Why did the people want to know who taught Jesus?

[6:2]

In ancient Israel, many teachers learned from other teachers. They taught the same things their teachers taught. This is why they wanted to know who taught Jesus. He did not teach the same things any other teacher taught.

#### Why did the people ask questions about how Jesus performed miracles?

[6:2]

The people asked Jesus who gave Jesus the power to do miracles. They did not think God gave Jesus the power to do these miracles. They thought Satan gave him this power (see: Mark 3:22).

See: Miracle; Satan (The Devil)

#### Did Jesus have brothers and sisters?

[6:3]

Some scholars think that Mary and Joseph had other children after Jesus was born. These people were talking about Jesus’ brothers and sisters. Fewer scholars think that Mary and Joseph did not have any more children after Jesus. They think these were Jesus’ cousins.

See: Family of Jesus

#### Why did the people not like what Jesus said?

[6:3]

The people did not like what Jesus said because the people knew Jesus was Mary’s son. They knew his brothers and sisters, they did not believe he was sent from God and was their messiah.

See: Messiah (Christ)

#### What did Jesus mean when he said, “a prophet is not without honor”?

[6:4]

When Jesus said that a prophet was “not without honor,” he wanted to say that people respected or honored a prophet. The only place that a prophet is not honored is in the place where he lived when he was a child. Jesus was a prophet. Perhaps he was also thinking about how Israel would reject him as their messiah.

See: Prophet; Messiah (Christ)

#### Why was Jesus unable to heal people?

[6:5]

Jesus was able to heal anyone in this place. Some scholars think Jesus was not free to heal people when the people did not believe in him. Jesus healed people so they would know that God sent him and that they will believe in him. The people in Nazareth did not believe in Jesus, even when they saw him heal people.

## 6:7-13

#### Who were the twelve?

[6:7]

The twelve were the twelve disciples.

See: Disciple

#### What did Jesus send the disciples to do?

[6:7]

Jesus sent the twelve disciples to tell other people about Jesus and to heal people who have unclean spirits living in them.

See: Disciple; Demon; Clean and Unclean; Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons)

#### Why did Jesus not want the disciples to take anything with them?

[6:8, 6:9]

Jesus did not want the disciples to take anything with them when they traveled. That was because they were to go quickly and to know that God would give them everything they needed. They took only a staff to help them walk.

They were also not to have two tunics. A tunic was the main piece of clothing they wore. They wore a second tunic at night when it was cold. They carried the other tunic during the day. However, God would make sure they were warm at night.

See: Disciple

#### Why were the disciples to remain in one house?

[6:10]

The disciples were told to remain in one house. At this time it was a great honor to have someone stay in your home. Jesus did not want his disciples to dishonor a host by leaving that house.

See: Disciple

#### Why were the disciples to shake the dust off their feet?

[6:11]

If the people in a town rejected the disciples, the disciples were told to shake the dust off their feet when they left the town. According to the Law of Moses, the Jews needed to welcome people who were travelling. If they did not welcome the disciples, they disobeyed God. At this time, certain Jews shook the dust off their feet when leaving a place where Gentiles lived. This is because they thought they were leaving an unclean area.

See: Disciple; Law of Moses; Clean and Unclean;Gentile

#### Why should people repent?

[6:12]

See: Repent (Repentance)

#### Why did someone get anointed with oil?

[6:13]

In ancient Israel, it was common to anoint someone with oil who was sick so that they might be healed. They poured oil on their head or where they were hurt. It was a way of asking God to help this person.

See: Anoint (Anointing)

## 6:14-20

#### Who was King Herod?

[6:14]

See: King Herod

#### Why did people think John the Baptist was made alive again?

[6:14]

Scholars do not know why people thought Jesus was John the Baptist made alive again. These people did not know that these two men lived at the same time. Both Jesus and John were prophets who honored God.

See: Resurrect (Resurrection) ;Prophet

#### Why did people think Jesus was Elijah?

[6:15]

In ancient Israel, people thought Elijah would return to the earth. This is because he never died. Instead, he went straight to heaven. The prophet Malachi wrote about Elijah returning (see: Malachi 4:5).

See: Prophet; Heaven

#### What was a prophet?

[6:15]

See: Prophet

#### Why did Herod arrest John the Baptist?

[6:17]

John the Baptist spoke against King Herod. He said the things King Herod did were evil. He said it was wrong for Herod to marry Herodias because his brother Philip was still alive. This made Herod angry. Herod wanted to kill John. However, Herod worried about what people would do if he killed John. Therefore, he put him into prison.

See: Leviticus 20:21

#### Who was Herodias?

[6:17]

Herodias was the wife of King Herod. Before Herod married her, Herodias was married to Herod’s brother Philip.

#### Why was it difficult for Herod to kill John the Baptist?

[6:20]

The people of Israel thought John the Baptist was a prophet. Therefore they thought it was very wrong to harm John. Herod feared what people would do if he killed a prophet. Some scholars also think he feared John because John was a man who honored God while Herod did not honor God.

See: Prophet

## 6:21-29

#### What day was this dinner?

[6:21]

In this passage, it was Herod’s birthday. Many different leaders who served him went to the dinner feast he made for his birthday.

**Advice to translators**: A birthday is a celebration of the day someone was born. Every year on the same day someone was born people celebrate that person.

#### Who was the girl?

[6:22]

Herodias sent her daughter to dance for Herod. She danced in a way that made men have sexual thoughts about her. She was the daughter of Herodias and Philip. She was Herod’s niece and step-daughter.

#### What was an oath?

[6:22]

See: Swear (Oath)

#### Why did this make Herod sad?

[6:26]

Herod did not want to kill John the Baptist. He knew John was a man who honored God. However, he did not want people to see him break his oath. Therefore, he had John killed. This made Herod very sad.

See: Swear (Oath)

#### Why did the disciples place John’s body in a tomb?

[6:29]

According to the Law of Moses, a person needed to be buried before the end of the day. Therefore, the disciples buried John’s body to obey the Law of Moses.

See: Disciple; Law of Moses

## 6:30-44

#### Who went away in the boat?

[6:32]

The apostles and Jesus went away in the boat.

See: Apostle

#### What happened in verse 33?

[6:33]

The people saw Jesus and the apostles leaving. Many of the people knew who were Jesus and the apostles. The people ran there together on foot from all the towns. Many of them arrived there before Jesus and the apostles did.

See: Apostle

#### How were the people like sheep without a shepherd?

[6:34]

Jesus said that the people were like sheep without a shepherd. This was a metaphor. This meant the people did not have a leader to follow.

See: Metaphor

#### What did Mark mean when he wrote the “hour was late”?

[6:35]

Mark wrote that it was late in the day and they needed to eat and find a place to sleep.

#### What was a loaf?

[6:38]

Bread is made in a loaf. In ancient times, a person needed at least one loaf a day to live. For a meal, five loaves and two fish fed 2 or 3 small families.

#### Why did Jesus “bless” the bread?

[6:41]

When Jesus blessed the bread, he thanked God for giving them the bread.

#### How many people ate the bread and fish?

[6:44]

Mark wrote that 5000 men ate the bread and fish. There were also women and children who ate of the bread and fish. Therefore, more than 5000 people ate.

## 6:45-56

#### Where was Bethsaida?

[6:45]

See Map: Bethsaida

#### How were the disciples “straining against the oars”?

[6:48]

Mark wrote that the disciples were “straining against the oars, for the wind was against them.” That is, they were working hard to row to keep their boat from sinking because of the bad weather.

See: Disciple

#### When was the fourth watch of the night?

[6:48]

The fourth watch of the night was a time after midnight.

#### What was a ghost?

[6:49]

A ghost is the spirit of a dead person trapped on earth. Ghosts are not real because people must either go to heaven or hell after they die. Spirits do not get trapped on earth when a person dies.

See: Spirit (Spiritual); Heaven; Hell

#### What did the loaves mean?

[6:52]

Mark wrote about what the loaves meant. Mark wrote about Jesus walking on the water and feeding 5000 men. These were both miracles. He wanted people to know that Jesus could do miracles because he is God.

See: Miracle

#### Where was Gennesaret?

[6:53]

See Map: Gennesaret

#### Mark 6:1

##### his hometown

This refers to the town of Nazareth, where Jesus grew up and where his family lived. This does not mean that he owned land there.

#### Mark 6:2

##### that he does with his hands

"that he himself works"

#### Mark 6:3

##### Is this not the carpenter, the son of Mary and the brother of James and Joses and Judas and Simon? Are his sisters not here with us?

"He is just an ordinary carpenter! We know him and his family. We know Mary his mother. We know his younger brothers James, Joses, Judas and Simon. And his younger sisters also live here with us."

#### Mark 6:4

##### A prophet is not without honor, except

"A prophet is always honored, except" or "People always honor prophets, except those"

#### Mark 6:5

##### to lay his hands on a few sick people

Prophets and teachers would put their hands on people in order to heal them or bless them. In this case, Jesus was healing people.

#### Mark 6:7

##### he called the twelve

Here the word "called" means that he summoned the twelve to come to him.

#### Mark 6:8

##### to take nothing for their journey, except a staff

"to take only a staff for their journey"

##### no bread

"no food"

#### Mark 6:10

##### remain until you go away from there

"eat and sleep in that house until you leave that area"

#### Mark 6:11

##### as a testimony to them

"as a testimony that they did not welcome you" or "to show them that they did wrong when they did not welcome you"

#### Mark 6:12

##### They went out

"They went out to various towns"

##### repent

"stop sinning"

#### Mark 6:14

##### King Herod heard this

The word "this" refers to everything that Jesus and his disciples had been doing in various towns, including casting out demons and healing people.

##### Some were saying, "John the Baptist has been raised from the dead

"Some people were saying, 'He is John the Baptist, who God has raised from the dead" or "John the Baptist who God has made alive again"

#### Mark 6:15

##### Some others said, "He is Elijah."

"Some others said, 'He is Elijah, whom God promised to send back again.'"

#### Mark 6:16

##### whom I beheaded

"whom I commanded my soldier to behead"

##### has been raised

"has risen" or "has become alive again"

#### Mark 6:17

##### Herod sent to have John arrested and he had him bound in prison

"Herod sent his soldiers to arrest John and to bind him in prison"

##### on account of Herodias

"because of Herodias"

##### his brother Philip's wife

"the wife of his brother Philip." Herod's brother Philip is not the same Philip who was an evangelist in the book of Acts or the Philip who was one of Jesus's twelve disciples.

##### because he had married her

"because Herod had married her"

#### Mark 6:19

##### Herodias held on to anger against him and wanted to kill him

"Herodias continued to be angry at John and she wanted someone to kill him"

##### but she could not

"but she could not kill him" or "but she could not have him killed"

#### Mark 6:20

##### for Herod feared John; he knew that he was a righteous

"for Herod feared John because he knew that John was a righteous"

#### Mark 6:21

##### an opportunity came

"a convenient day" or "there was an opportune time."

##### he made a dinner for his officials ... of Galilee

"he had a banquet for his officials ... of Galilee" or "he invited his officials ... of Galilee to eat and celebrate with him"

#### Mark 6:22

##### Herodias herself

It was Herodias's own daughter who danced at the dinner.

#### Mark 6:23

##### Whatever you ask ... my kingdom

"I will give you whatever you ask me to give to you, even half of what I own and rule, if you ask for that"

#### Mark 6:25

##### on a wooden platter

"on a board" or "on a large wooden dish"

#### Mark 6:26

##### because of the oath he had made

"because of what he had sworn to the girl" or "because he had sworn to give the girl whatever she asked for"

##### and because of his dinner guests

"and because his dinner guests had heard his oath"

#### Mark 6:29

##### When his disciples

"When John's disciples"

#### Mark 6:31

##### a deserted place

a place where there are no people

##### many were coming and going

This means that people were continually coming to the apostles and then going away from them.

##### they did not even

The word "they" refers to the apostles.

#### Mark 6:33

##### on foot

The people are going on foot by land, which contrasts with how the disciples went by boat.

#### Mark 6:34

##### they were like sheep without a shepherd

Jesus compares the people to sheep who are confused when they do not have their shepherd to lead them.

#### Mark 6:35

##### When the hour was late

"When it was getting late" or "Late in the afternoon"

#### Mark 6:37

##### But he answered and said to them

"But Jesus answered and said to his disciples"

##### Can we go and buy two hundred denarii worth of bread and give it to them to eat?

"We could not buy enough bread to feed this crowd, even if we had two hundred denarii!"

##### two hundred denarii

"200 denarii." The singular form of the word "denarii" is "denarius." A denarius was a Roman silver coin worth one day's wages.

#### Mark 6:38

##### loaves

lumps of bread dough that have been shaped and baked

#### Mark 6:39

##### green grass

Describe the grass with the color word used in your language for healthy grass, which may or may not be the color green.

#### Mark 6:40

##### in groups of hundreds and fifties

"with about fifty people in some groups and about a hundred people in other groups"

#### Mark 6:41

##### looking up to heaven

This means that he looked up toward the sky, which is associated with the place where God lives.

##### He also divided the two fish among them all

"he divided the two fish so that everyone could have some"

#### Mark 6:43

##### They took up

Possible meaning are 1) "The disciples took up" or 2) "The people took up."

#### Mark 6:44

##### There were five thousand men who ate the loaves

"So many people ate the loaves of bread; the number of just the men was five thousand"

#### Mark 6:45

##### to the other side

"to the other side of the Sea of Galilee"

##### Bethsaida

This is a town on the northern shore of the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 6:46

##### After taking leave of them

"After saying goodbye to them" or "After they had left." Use the common words your language uses for a time when friends leave each other and expect to see each other after a few hours or days.

#### Mark 6:48

##### fourth watch

This is the time between 3 a.m. and sunrise.

#### Mark 6:49

##### a ghost

the spirit of a dead person or some other kind of spirit

#### Mark 6:51

##### They were completely amazed

"They were completely amazed at what he had done"

#### Mark 6:52

##### their hearts were hardened

"they were too stubborn to understand"

#### Mark 6:53

##### Gennesaret

This is the name of the region to the northwest of the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 6:55

##### they ran throughout the whole region

"they ran throughout the whole district in order to tell others that Jesus was there"

#### Mark 6:56

##### Wherever he entered

"Wherever Jesus entered"

##### the sick

"the sick people"

##### They begged him

Possible meanings are 1) "The sick begged him" or 2) "The people begged him."

##### the edge of his garment

"the hem of his robe" or "the edge of his clothes"

Chapter 7

1The Pharisees and some of the scribes who had come from Jerusalem gathered around him.2They saw that some of his disciples ate bread with hands that were unclean, that is, unwashed.3(For the Pharisees and all the Jews do not eat unless they wash their hands carefully, because they hold to the tradition of the elders.4When the Pharisees come from the marketplace, they do not eat unless they bathe themselves, and they hold to many other things they have received, such as the washing of cups, pots, copper vessels, and the couches upon which they eat.)5The Pharisees and the scribes asked Jesus, "Why do your disciples not walk according to the tradition of the elders, but eat their bread with unclean hands?"

6But he said to them, "Isaiah prophesied well about you hypocrites. As it is written,'This people honors me with their lips,but their heart is far from me.7In vain they worship me,teaching the commands of men as their doctrines.'8You abandon the commandment of God and hold on to the tradition of men."9He also said to them, "How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!10For Moses said, 'Honor your father and your mother,' and, 'He who speaks evil of his father or mother will surely be put to death.'11But you say, 'If a man says to his father or mother, "Whatever help you would have received from me is Corban"' (that is to say, 'a Gift'),12then you no longer permit him to do anything for his father or his mother.13You are making the word of God void by your tradition which you have handed down. And many similar things you do."14He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand.15There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him."16[1](#footnote-target-1)17Now when Jesus left the crowd and entered the house, his disciples asked him about the parable.18Jesus said, "Are you also still without understanding? Do you not know that whatever enters into a person from outside cannot defile him,19because it cannot go into his heart, but it goes into his stomach and then passes out into the latrine?" With this statement Jesus declared all foods clean.20He said, "It is that which comes out of the person that defiles him.21For from within a person, out of the heart, proceed evil thoughts, sexual immorality, theft, murder,22adultery, coveting, wickedness, deceit, sensuality, envy, slander, pride, folly.23All these evils come from within, and they are what defile a person."

24He got up from there and went away to the region of Tyre and Sidon. There he went into a house, and he wanted no one to know where he was, yet he could not be hidden.25But immediately [2](#footnote-target-2) a woman whose little daughter had an unclean spirit heard about him and came and fell down at his feet.26Now the woman was a Greek, a Syrophoenician by descent. She begged him to cast out the demon from her daughter.27He said to her, "Let the children first be fed. For it is not proper to take the children's bread and throw it to the dogs."

28But she answered and said to him, "Yes, Lord, even the dogs under the table eat the children's crumbs."

29He said to her, "Because of what you have said, you are free to go. The demon has gone out of your daughter."30She went back to her house and found the child lying on the bed, and the demon was gone.

31Then he went out again from the region of Tyre, and went through Sidon to the Sea of Galilee up into the region of the Decapolis.32They brought to him someone who was deaf and had difficulty speaking, and they begged him to lay his hand on him.33Then taking him aside away from the crowd privately, he put his fingers into his ears, and then he spit and touched his tongue.34Then he looked up to heaven, sighed, and said to him, "Ephphatha," that is to say, "Open!"35At once his ears were opened, the bond of his tongue was released, and he began to speak plainly.

36Jesus ordered them to tell no one. But the more he ordered them, the more abundantly they proclaimed it.37They were extremely astonished, saying, "He has done all things well. He even makes the deaf hear and the mute speak."

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient copies do not have verse 16. If any man has ears to hear, let him hear . [2](#footnote-caller-2)Some ancient copies do not have the words, But immediately .

### Mark 7

## 7:1-23

#### Why did the Pharisees and scribes come from the region of Galilee to Jerusalem?

[7:1]

The Pharisees and scribes came from Jerusalem to see what Jesus and the disciples were doing. Scholars think the Pharisees and Scribes were searching for ways to accuse Jesus of not following the Law of Moses.

See: Pharisees;Scribe; Disciple;Law of Moses

See Map: Galilee

#### Why did people not eat without washing their hands?

[7:2]

In ancient Israel, the Jews did not eat unless they washed their hands in a certain way. The Jews washed their hands in the way the religious leaders taught. Mark called the rules made by the religious leaders the “traditions of the elders.” They taught that Jews needed to wash their hands after they went to the marketplace. They needed to wash because they were around Gentiles. Gentiles were unclean. These rules were not in the Law of Moses.

**Advice to Translators**: A marketplace is a place where people go to get food, clothing, and other things they need to live.

See: Law of Moses; Clean and Unclean; Gentile

#### Why did the Pharisees bathe themselves?

[7:4]

The Pharisees bathed themselves after they went to the marketplace. The religious teachers taught that people needed to wash their hands after they went to the marketplace. However, the Pharisees washed their whole body. They did this because they were near Gentiles and Gentiles were unclean. None of this was in the Law of Moses.

**Advice to Translators**: A marketplace is a place where people go to get food, clothing, and other things they need to live.

See: Pharisees; Gentile; Law of Moses; Clean and Unclean

#### Why did the Pharisees wash everything?

[7:4]

The Law of Moses taught that certain things were unclean and needed to be washed. The religious teachers and the Pharisees thought that even more things needed to be washed then what the Law of Moses said to wash. Mark wanted to write that the Pharisees and other religious teachers taught certain things were sins. However, those things were not taught in the Law of Moses. These were rules made by men, not God.

See: Law of Moses; Pharisees; Clean and Unclean; Sin

#### What did Jesus say to the Pharisees?

[7:6, 7:7]

Jesus said that the Pharisees were hypocrites. The Pharisees said they were honoring God. They did things so that other people would think they were honoring God. However, they really did not want to honor God. Instead, they only wanted people to think they honored God.

The Pharisees were like the people Isaiah prophesied about. They obeyed men and the rules made by men. However, they did not obey God and the rules he made.

See: Pharisees; Prophecy (Prophesy) ; Hypocrisy (Hypocirte)

#### What did Mark say about honoring your father and mother?

[7:10, 7:11, 7:12]

In the Law of Moses, children were to honor their father and mother. However, the religious teachers in Israel taught something different. Children could promise something to God that normally would be given to their parents. If they did this, they did not need to give it to help their parents. Neither did they need to use it in a certain way or to give it to a priest. Jesus said this did not obey the Law of Moses about honoring your father and mother.

See: Law of Moses; Sin

#### What defiled someone?

[7:15]

Jesus said that things going into a person did not make them unclean. Instead, it was things that came out of people that made them unclean. That is, the wrong things a person thought and did made them unclean.

See: Clean and Unclean

**Advice to translators**: Something that is defiled has been made unclean.

#### Why do some translations not have verse 16?

[7:16]

Most of the ancient copies of the New Testament in Greek do not have the words in verse 16. Therefore, scholars think Mark did not write these words. However, the person who made separated the passages into verses did this with a copy of the New Testament in Greek that had those words.

See: Differences in the Ancient Copies of the Bible)

#### Which parable did the disciples ask Jesus about?

[7:17]

The disciples asked about a parable. The parable was about what Jesus said in verse 15.

See: Disciple; Parable

#### What did Jesus want to teach when he used this parable?

[7:18, 7:19, 7:20, 7:21, 7:22, 7:23]

The disciples did not understand what Jesus wanted to teach them when Jesus used this parable. He wanted them to know that God cared more about what people did than what people ate.

Some scholars think Jesus changed the Law of Moses. He could do this because he made the Law of Moses. Christians were now able to eat any food. Food was no longer clean or unclean. Other scholars do not think Jesus changed the Law of Moses. Instead, Jesus wanted people to know that the Law of Moses was going to be fulfilled in Jesus. Believing in Jesus would now be how Christians could now follow the Law of Moses.

See: Matthew 5:21-48; Acts 10; Acts 15

See: Disciple; Parable;Clean and Unclean; Law of Moses

## 7:24-36

#### Where were Tyre and Sidon?

[7:24]

Tyre and Sidon were cities outside of Israel.

See Map: Tyre and Sidon

#### Why did Jesus not want people to know where he was?

[7:24]

Scholars think Jesus was searching for a place to rest. He wanted to have time alone with his disciples.

See: Disciple

#### What was an unclean spirit?

[7:25]

See: Demon; Clean and Unclean; Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons)

#### Why did the woman fall down at Jesus’ feet?

[7:25]

The women begged Jesus to do something when she fell down at his feet. She did not do this to worship him.

#### Where was Syrophoenicia?

[7:26]

See Map: Syrophoenicia

#### Why did Jesus talk about dogs?

[7:27]

Jesus talked about a dog who ate food that fell off the table. This was a metaphor.

Some scholars think he talked about the disciples when he talked about the children. He talked about the Gentiles when he talked about the dogs. He talked about something he gave them when he talked about the bread. He wanted to say that he needed to teach the disciples before he taught her.

Other scholars think that he talked about Israel when he talked about the children. He was talking about the Gentiles when he talked about the dogs. He talked about the gospel message and the blessings of Jesus’ miracles when he talked about bread. He wanted to say that he taught the gospel to the Jews before he taught the gospel to the Gentiles.

See: Metaphor; Disciple; Gentile; Gospel;Miracle

#### Why did Jesus heal this woman’s daughter?

[7:29]

The woman made it known that she believed in Jesus by her reply to Jesus. Jesus healed her daughter because the woman believed in Jesus.

#### Where was the Sea of Galilee?

[7:31]

See Map: Sea of Galilee

#### Where was Decapolis?

[7:31]

See Map: Decapolis

#### What was the laying on of hands?

[7:32]

See: Laying on of Hands

#### Why did Jesus spit and touch the man’s tongue?

[7:33]

Jesus spit and touched the man’s tongue. This was a symbol. However, he did not say what was the meaning of the symbol.

Some scholars think Jesus spat onto the ground.

Other scholars think Jesus spat into his hand and then touched the man’s tongue.

See: Symbol

#### What did Mark mean when he said the man’s “tongue was released”?

[7:35]

Jesus healed a man that was not able to hear or speak. Mark said that the man’s “tongue was released.” That is, the man was now able to speak. The man was healed instantly.

#### Why did Jesus not want them to tell anyone?

[7:36]

See: Messianic Secret

#### Mark 7:2

##### that is, unwashed

"that is, with hands that they had not washed" or "that is, they had not washed their hands"

#### Mark 7:3

##### unless they wash their hands carefully

"unless they make their hands ceremonially clean"

##### elders

Jewish elders were leaders in their communities and were also judges for the people.

#### Mark 7:4

##### they hold to many other things they have received

"they follow many other traditions" or "they do many other things that they were taught to do"

##### copper vessels

"copper kettles" or "metal containers"

##### the couches upon which they eat

"benches" or "beds." At that time, the Jews would recline when eating.

#### Mark 7:5

##### Why do your disciples not walk according to the tradition of the elders, but eat their bread with unclean hands?

"Your disciples should not disobey the traditions of our elders by eating their bread with unclean hands."

##### bread

"food"

#### Mark 7:6

##### with their lips

"by what they say"

##### but their heart is far from me

"but they do not really love me"

#### Mark 7:8

##### You abandon the commandment of God

"You refuse to obey the commandment of God"

##### hold on to

"strictly obey"

#### Mark 7:9

##### How well you reject the commandment ... keep your tradition

"You think you have done well in how you have rejected the commandment of God so you may keep your own traditions, but what you have done is not good at all"

#### Mark 7:10

##### He who speaks evil of his father or mother will surely be put to death

"The authorities must execute a person who curses his father or mother"

#### Mark 7:11

##### is Corban

"is a gift to God" or "belongs to God"

##### Whatever help you would have received from me is Corban

"I will not help you, because whatever help you would have received from me is Corban"

#### Mark 7:12

##### then you no longer permit him to do anything for his father or his mother

"then you no longer permit him to give anything to his father or his mother" or "then you permit him to give nothing to his father or his mother"

#### Mark 7:13

##### the word of God

"God's command"

##### void

canceled or done away with

##### many similar things you do

"you are doing many other things similar to this"

#### Mark 7:14

##### He called

"Jesus called"

##### understand

"try to understand what I am about to tell you"

#### Mark 7:15

##### nothing from outside of a person

"nothing from outside a person that he can eat"

##### It is what comes out of the person

"It is what comes out of a person that he says or does"

#### Mark 7:18

##### Are you also still without understanding?

"After all I have said and done, I would expect you to understand."

#### Mark 7:19

##### because ... latrine?

"You should already understand that whatever enters into a person from outside cannot defile him, because it cannot go into his heart, but it goes into his stomach and then passes out into the latrine."

##### it cannot go into his heart

"it cannot go into his inner being" or "it cannot go into his mind"

##### all foods clean

"all foods clean, meaning that people can eat any food without God considering the eater defiled"

#### Mark 7:20

##### It is that which comes out of the person that defiles him

"What defiles a person is what comes out of him"

#### Mark 7:21

##### out of the heart, proceed evil thoughts

"out of the inner being, come evil thoughts" or "out of the mind, come evil thoughts"

#### Mark 7:22

##### sensuality

not controlling one's lustful desires

##### slander

or blasphemy

#### Mark 7:23

##### come from within

"come from within a person's heart" or "come from within a person's thoughts"

#### Mark 7:25

##### had an unclean spirit

"was possessed by an unclean spirit"

##### fell down

"knelt." This is an act of honor and submission.

#### Mark 7:26

##### Syrophoenician

This is the name of the woman's nationality. She was born in the Phoenician region in Syria.

#### Mark 7:27

##### Let the children first be fed. For it is not proper ... throw it to the dogs

"Let the children of Israel first be fed. For it is not right to take the children's bread and throw it to the Gentiles, who are like dogs"

##### Let the children first be fed

"We must first feed the children of Israel"

##### proper

morally right

##### dogs

This refers to small dogs kept as pets.

#### Mark 7:29

##### you are free to go

"you may go now" or "you may go home in peace"

##### The demon has gone out of your daughter

"I have caused the evil spirit to leave your daughter"

#### Mark 7:31

##### went out again from the region of Tyre

"left the region of Tyre"

##### up into the region

"through the region"

##### Decapolis

This is the name of a region that means Ten Cities. It is located to the southeast of the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 7:32

##### They brought

"And people brought"

##### who was deaf

"who was not able to hear"

##### they begged him to lay his hand on him

"they begged Jesus to put his hand on the man to heal him"

#### Mark 7:33

##### Then taking him ... privately, he

"Then Jesus took the man ... privately, and he"

##### he put his fingers into his ears

Jesus is putting his own fingers in the man's ears.

##### then he spit and touched his tongue

"then he spit on his fingers and touched the man's tongue with them"

#### Mark 7:34

##### looked up to heaven

This means that he looked up toward the sky, which is associated with the place where God lives.

##### sighed

This means that Jesus groaned or that he let out a long deep breath that could be heard.

##### said to him

"said to the man"

##### Ephphatha

This is an Aramaic word. It should be copied into your language using your alphabet.

#### Mark 7:35

##### his ears were opened

"his ears were opened and he was able to hear" or "he was able to hear"

##### the bond of his tongue was released

"Jesus released the bond of his tongue" or "Jesus set his tongue free" or "Jesus enabled the man to speak"

#### Mark 7:36

##### But the more he ordered them, the more abundantly they proclaimed it

"But though he continually ordered them not to tell anyone, they continually proclaimed it"

##### the more abundantly

"the more widely" or "the more"

#### Mark 7:37

##### the deaf hear and the mute speak

"the deaf people hear and the mute people speak" or "people who cannot hear, hear, and people who cannot speak, speak"

Chapter 8

1In those days, there was again a great crowd, and they had nothing to eat. Jesus called his disciples and said to them,2"I have compassion on the crowd because they continue to be with me already for three days and have nothing to eat.3If I send them away to their home without eating, they may faint on the way. Some of them have come a long way."

4His disciples answered him, "Where can we get enough loaves of bread in such a deserted place to satisfy these people?"

5He asked them, "How many loaves do you have?"

They said, "Seven."6He commanded the crowd to sit down on the ground. He took the seven loaves, gave thanks, and broke them. He gave them to his disciples to set before them, and they set them before the crowd.7They also had a few small fish, and after he gave thanks for them, he commanded the disciples to serve these as well.8They ate and were satisfied, and they picked up the remaining broken pieces, seven large baskets.9There were about four thousand people. Then he sent them away.10Immediately he got into the boat with his disciples, and they went into the region of Dalmanutha.

11Then the Pharisees came out and began to argue with him. They sought from him a sign from heaven, to test him.12He sighed deeply in his spirit and said, "Why does this generation seek for a sign? Truly I say to you, no sign will be given to this generation."13Then he left them, got into a boat again, and went away to the other side.

14Now the disciples had forgotten to take bread with them. They had no more than one loaf of bread in the boat.15He instructed them, saying, "Keep watch and be on guard against the yeast of the Pharisees and the yeast of Herod."

16The disciples were arguing with one another about having no bread.

17When he understood this, he asked them, "Why are you arguing about having no bread? Do you still not see or understand? Do you have hardened hearts?18You have eyes; do you not see? You have ears; do you not hear? Do you not remember?19When I broke the five loaves among the five thousand, how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you take up?"

They said to him, "Twelve."

20"When I broke the seven loaves among the four thousand, how many basketfuls of broken pieces of bread did you take up?"

They said to him, "Seven."

21He said, "Do you not yet understand?"

22They came to Bethsaida. The people there brought to him a blind man and begged Jesus to touch him.23Jesus took hold of the blind man by the hand and led him out of the village. When he had spit on his eyes and laid his hands on him, he asked him, "Do you see anything?"

24He looked up, and said, "I see men who look like walking trees."

25Then he again laid his hands upon his eyes, and the man opened his eyes, his sight was restored, and he saw all things clearly.26Jesus sent him away to his home and said, "Do not enter the village."

27Jesus went out with his disciples into the villages of Caesarea Philippi. On the way he asked his disciples, "Who do the people say that I am?"

28They answered him and said, "John the Baptist. Others say, 'Elijah,' and others, 'One of the prophets.'"

29He asked them, "But who do you say that I am?"

Peter said to him, "You are the Christ."30Jesus warned them not to tell anyone about him.

31He began to teach them that the Son of Man must suffer many things, and would be rejected by the elders and the chief priests and the scribes, and would be killed, and after three days rise up.32He spoke that message openly. Then Peter took him aside and began to rebuke him.33But Jesus turned and looked at his disciples and then he rebuked Peter and said, "Get behind me, Satan! You are not setting your mind on the things of God, but on the things of people."34Then he called the crowd and his disciples together, and he said to them, "If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.35For whoever wants to save his life will lose it, and whoever loses his life for my sake and for the gospel will save it.36What does it profit a person to gain the whole world and then forfeit his life?37What can a person give in exchange for his life?38Whoever is ashamed of me and my words in this adulterous and sinful generation, the Son of Man will be ashamed of him when he comes in the glory of his Father with the holy angels."

### Mark 8

## 8:1-21

#### What were “those days”?

[8:1]

Mark wrote about the time when Jesus was in Decapolis when he wrote about “those days.”

See Map: Decapolis

#### Why did the people not have anything to eat?

[8:2]

Mark does not write why the people did not have anything to eat.

#### How were they in a deserted place?

[8:4]

The disciples spoke about being in a deserted place. That is they were in a place were they could not get any food. Perhaps they were in the wilderness or desert.

See: Disciple

#### Why did Jesus give thanks?

[8:6]

Jesus gave thanks to God before they ate. He thanked God for giving them their food. This was common in ancient Israel.

#### Why did Mark write about how much fish and bread remained uneaten?

[8:8]

Mark wrote there were 7 large baskets of uneaten food after everyone ate. There was more food that remained then the food with which they started. This was a miracle.

See: Miracle

#### Where was Dalmanutha?

[8:10]

See Map: Dalmanutha

#### Why did the Pharisees want a sign from heaven?

[8:11]

The Pharisees wanted Jesus to give them a sign from heaven. They wanted Jesus to prove that God gave Jesus the power and permission to do these miracles. They thought that Satan gave Jesus the power and permission to do these things (see: Mark 3:22)

See: Pharisees; Sign; Heaven; Miracle; Satan (The Devil)

#### Why did Jesus talk about yeast?

[8:15]

Jesus used the metaphor of yeast. He did this to talk about people doing evil things. In the same way a small amount of yeast goes through the whole lump of dough, so evil things would make other people want to do more evil things.

See: Yeast (Leaven); Metaphor

#### Why did Jesus ask the disciples many questions?

[8:17, 8:18, 8:19, 8:20, 8:21]

Jesus asked his disciples many different questions. They did not understand what Jesus was saying about who he is and why he did these things. They knew Jesus fed 5000 people through a miracle. They forgot he could do this. They worried that the people would not have food to eat (see: Mark 8:4).

Some scholars think Jesus rebuked them. That is, he spoke to them in a way that they would know they did something wrong.

Other scholars think Jesus was trying to help them understand (see: Matthew 16:11-12).

See: Disciple; Miracle

## 8:22-38

#### Where was Bethsaida?

[8:22]

See Map: Bethsaida

#### Why did the people want Jesus to touch the blind man?

[8:22]

The people wanted Jesus to touch the blind man because they believed that this would heal the man.

#### Why did Jesus take the man outside of the village?

[8:23]

Jesus took the man outside of the village because he did not want other people to see what he was doing.

See: Messianic Secret

#### Why did Jesus spit on the man’s eyes?

[8:23]

It was a symbol when Jesus spat on the man’s eyes. However, Mark does not write about what was this symbol. Perhaps Jesus spat on the man’s eyes because then the man could feel what Jesus was doing.

See: Symbol

#### Why did the man see men who looked like walking trees?

[8:24]

The man saw people and said they looked like walking trees. This is because his eyes were not yet completely healed. Jesus tried to teach the disciples something by not healing the man completely the first time. This was because seeing was a metaphor. People often spoke about understanding something as if they were seeing it. In the same way the man saw more clearly after Jesus touched his eyes again, so the disciples understood Jesus more clearly when he explained the things he taught.

See: Disciple; Metaphor

#### Why did Jesus not want this man to enter into the village?

[8:26]

Jesus told this man not to enter into the village. He did this because he did not want the man to tell other people about what Jesus did.

See: Messianic Secret

#### Where was Caesarea Philippi?

[8:27]

See Map: Caesarea Philippi

#### Why did Jesus ask, “who do people say that I am”?

[8:27]

Jesus asked, “who do people say that I am.” Scholars think Jesus wanted his disciples to be prepared for the next question he asked. That is, he asked them “but who do you say that I am”?

See: Disciple

#### Why did Jesus not want the disciples to tell people that he is the messiah?

[8:30]

See: Messianic Secret; Disciple; Messiah (Christ)

#### What is the Son of Man?

[8:31]

Jesus spoke about himself when he spoke about the Son of Man. He prophesied about things that would happen to him.

See: Son of Man; Prophecy (Prophesy)

#### Who were the elders, chief priests, and scribes?

[8:31]

Mark wrote about older men in Israel who lead the people in some way when he wrote about elders. Together the scribes, the chief priests, and the elders helped to lead Israel to worship and obey God.

See: Chief Priest; Scribe

#### How would Jesus rise up after three days?

[8:31]

Jesus said he would rise up after three days. That is he would be made alive again through his resurrection.

See: Resurrect (Resurrection)

#### Why did Peter rebuke Jesus?

[8:32]

Peter rebuked Jesus. He said that what Jesus said must be wrong. Peter thought that the messiah would not suffer and die in the way Jesus said. However, Jesus rebuked Peter. He said Peter spoke wrongly. The things he said were the things that Satan wanted Peter to say. Peter did not yet understand the things Jesus was supposed to do on earth.

See: Satan (The Devil);Messiah (Christ)

#### What did it mean for people to “take up their cross”?

[8:34]

The words “take up your cross” were a metaphor. Jesus died on a cross. He obeyed God even though he suffered for obeying God. He wanted people to do the same thing. He wanted them to obey God even if they suffered because they obeyed God.

See: Metaphor; Cross

#### How does someone save their life?

[8:35]

Jesus talked about “life” in two ways in this passage. He spoke about the life a person has before they die and the life they have after they die. He said people needed to obey God before they die if they want to live with God forever. In the same way, people who die on Earth because they obeyed God will still live with God forever after they die.

See: Heaven; Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)

#### How was this generation sinful and adulterous?

[8:38]

Jesus called the people living in Israel sinful and adulterous. This was a metaphor. Jesus meant the people were not faithful to God because they did not believe in Jesus.

Sin; Adultery

#### How will Jesus be ashamed of people when he comes with the glory of his father?

[8:38]

Jesus talked about people being ashamed of him. That is, he talked about the people who rejected him. They did not believe in him. Jesus will reject everyone who rejected him when he returns. They will live in hell forever.

See: Matthew 24:30; Mark 13:26

See: Jesus' Return to Earth; Hell; Glory (Glorify); Angel

#### Mark 8:2

##### they continue to be with me already for three days and have nothing to eat

"this is this third day these people have been with me, and they have nothing to eat"

#### Mark 8:3

##### they may faint

Possible meanings are "they may lose consciousness temporarily" or "they may become weak."

#### Mark 8:4

##### Where can we get enough loaves of bread in such a deserted place to satisfy these people?

"This place is so deserted that there is no place here for us to get enough loaves of bread to satisfy these people!"

##### loaves of bread

Loaves of bread are lumps of dough that have been shaped and baked.

#### Mark 8:6

##### He commanded the crowd to sit down on the ground.

"Jesus commanded the crowd, 'Sit down on the ground.'"

#### Mark 8:7

##### he gave thanks for them

"Jesus gave thanks for the fish"

#### Mark 8:8

##### They ate

"The people ate"

##### they picked up

"the disciples picked up"

##### the remaining broken pieces, seven large baskets

"the remaining broken pieces of bread and fish, which filled seven large baskets"

#### Mark 8:9

##### Then he sent them away

"After they ate, Jesus sent them away"

#### Mark 8:10

##### they went into the region of Dalmanutha

"they sailed around the Sea of Galilee to the region of Dalmanutha" which is the name of a place on the northwestern shore of the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 8:11

##### a sign from heaven

"a sign from God" or 2) the word "heaven" refers to the sky. Alternate translation: "a sign from the sky"

##### to test him

"to prove that God had sent him"

#### Mark 8:12

##### in his spirit

"in himself"

##### Why does this generation seek for a sign?

"This generation should not seek a sign."

##### this generation

"you and the people of this generation"

##### no sign will be given

"I will not give a sign"

#### Mark 8:13

##### he left them, got into a boat again

"he left them, got into a boat again with his disciples"

##### to the other side

"to the other side of the Sea of Galilee"

#### Mark 8:14

##### no more than one loaf

"only one loaf"

#### Mark 8:15

##### Keep watch and be on guard

"Keep watch"

##### the yeast of the Pharisees and the yeast of Herod

Jesus is comparing the Pharisees' and Herod's teachings to yeast, but you should not explain this when you translate it because the disciples themselves did not understand it.

#### Mark 8:16

##### no bread

"very little bread"

#### Mark 8:17

##### Why are you arguing about having no bread?

"You should not be thinking that I am talking about actual bread."

##### Do you still not see or understand?

"Do you not yet understand?" or "You should perceive and understand by now the things I say and do."

##### Do you have hardened hearts?

"You are so slow to understand what I mean!" or "You are unwilling to understand what I mean!"

#### Mark 8:18

##### You have eyes; do you not see? You have ears; do you not hear? Do you not remember?

"You have eyes, but you do not understand what you see. You have ears, but you do not understand what you hear. You should remember."

#### Mark 8:19

##### how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you take up

"how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you collect after everyone finished eating"

#### Mark 8:20

##### how many basketfuls of broken pieces of bread did you take up

"how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you collect after everyone finished eating"

#### Mark 8:21

##### Do you not yet understand?

"You should understand by now the things I say and do."

#### Mark 8:22

##### Bethsaida

This is a town on the northern shore of the Sea of Galilee.

##### to touch him

"to touch him in order to heal him"

#### Mark 8:23

##### When he had spit on his eyes ... he asked him

"When Jesus had spit on the man's eyes ... Jesus asked the man"

#### Mark 8:24

##### He looked up

"The man looked up"

##### I see men who look like walking trees

"Yes, I see people! They are walking around, but I cannot see them clearly. They look like trees"

#### Mark 8:25

##### Then he again

"Then Jesus again"

##### and the man opened his eyes, his sight was restored

"restoring the man's sight, and then the man opened his eyes"

#### Mark 8:28

##### They answered him and said

"They answered him, saying,"

##### John the Baptist

"Some people say that you are John the Baptist"

##### Others say ... others

"Other people say you are ... other people say you are"

#### Mark 8:29

##### He asked them

"Jesus asked his disciples"

#### Mark 8:30

##### Jesus warned them not to tell anyone about him.

"Jesus warned them not to tell anyone that he is the Christ." or "Jesus warned them, 'Do not tell anyone that I am the Christ.'"

#### Mark 8:31

##### Son of Man

This is an important title for Jesus.

##### would be rejected by the elders and the chief priests and the scribes, and would be killed, and after three days rise up

"that the elders and the chief priests and the scribes would reject him, and that men would kill him, and that after three days he would rise up"

#### Mark 8:32

##### He spoke that message openly

Possible meanings are 1) "He said this so that people could hear him" or 2) "He said this in a way that was easy to understand."

##### began to rebuke him

"began to rebuke him for saying these things"

#### Mark 8:33

##### Get behind me, Satan

"Get Get away from me, because you are acting like Satan"

#### Mark 8:34

##### follow me

"be my disciple" or "be one of my disciples"

##### must deny himself

"must not give in to his own desires" or "must forsake his own desires"

##### take up his cross, and follow me

"must obey me even to the point of suffering and dying"

##### follow me

"obey me"

#### Mark 8:35

##### For whoever wants

"For anyone who wants"

##### life

This refers to both physical life and spiritual life.

##### for my sake and for the gospel

"because he follows me and tells others the gospel"

#### Mark 8:36

##### What does it profit a person to gain the whole world and then forfeit his life?

"Even if a person gains the whole world, it will not benefit him if he forfeits his life."

##### to gain the whole world and then forfeit his life

"if he gains the whole world and then forfeits his life"

##### to gain the whole world

"to gain everything he ever wanted"

##### forfeit

To forfeit something is to lose it or to have another person take it away.

#### Mark 8:37

##### What can a person give in exchange for his life?

"There is nothing a person can give in exchange for his life." or "No one can give anything in exchange for his life."

##### What can a person give

"What can a person give to God"

#### Mark 8:38

##### ashamed of me and my words

"ashamed of me and my message"

##### in this adulterous and sinful generation

"in this generation of people who have committed adultery against God and are very sinful" or "in this generation of people who are unfaithful to God and are very sinful"

##### the Son of Man will be ashamed

"I, the Son of Man, will be ashamed"

##### when he comes

"when he comes back"

##### in the glory of his Father

When Jesus returns he will have the same glory as his Father.

##### with the holy angels

"accompanied by the holy angels"

Chapter 9

1He said to them, "Truly I say to you, there are some of you who are standing here who will not taste death before they see the kingdom of God come with power."

2Six days later, Jesus took Peter and James and John with him up a high mountain, alone by themselves. Then he was transfigured before them.3His garments became radiantly brilliant, extremely white, whiter than any bleacher on earth could bleach them.4Then Elijah with Moses appeared to them, and they were talking with Jesus.5Peter answered and said to Jesus, "Rabbi, it is good for us to be here, and so let us make three shelters, one for you, one for Moses, and one for Elijah."6(For he did not know what to say, for they were terrified.)

7A cloud came and overshadowed them. Then a voice came out of the cloud, "This is my beloved Son. Listen to him."8Suddenly, when they looked around, they no longer saw anyone with them, but only Jesus.

9As they were coming down the mountain, he commanded them to tell no one what they had seen until the Son of Man had risen from the dead.10So they kept the matter to themselves, but they discussed among themselves what "rising from the dead" could mean.11They asked him, "Why do the scribes say that Elijah must come first?"

12He said to them, "Elijah does come first to restore all things. Why then is it written that the Son of Man must suffer many things and be despised?13But I say to you that Elijah has come, and they did whatever they wanted to him, just as it is written about him."

14When they came to the disciples, they saw a great crowd around them, and scribes were arguing with them.15As soon as they saw Jesus, the whole crowd was amazed, and as they ran up to him, they greeted him.16He asked his disciples, "What are you arguing with them about?"

17Someone in the crowd answered him, "Teacher, I brought my son to you. He has a spirit that makes him unable to speak.18It seizes him and it throws him down, and he foams at the mouth, grinds his teeth, and becomes rigid. I asked your disciples to drive it out of him, but they could not."

19He answered them, "Unbelieving generation, how long will I have to stay with you? How long will I bear with you? Bring him to me."20They brought the boy to him. When the spirit saw Jesus, it immediately threw him into a convulsion. The boy fell on the ground and foamed at the mouth.21Jesus asked his father, "For how much time has he been like this?"

The father said, "Since childhood.22It has often thrown him into the fire or into the waters and tried to destroy him. If you are able to do anything, have pity on us and help us."

23Jesus said to him, "'If you are able'? All things are possible for the one who believes."

24Immediately the father of the child cried out and said, "I believe! Help my unbelief!"

25When Jesus saw the crowd running to them, he rebuked the unclean spirit and said, "You mute and deaf spirit, I command you, come out of him, and never enter into him again."

26It cried out and convulsed the boy greatly and then came out. The boy looked like one who was dead, so that many said, "He is dead."27But Jesus took him by the hand and lifted him up, and the boy stood up.

28When Jesus came into the house, his disciples asked him privately, "Why could we not cast it out?"

29He said to them, "This kind cannot be cast out except by prayer."

30They went out from there and passed through Galilee. He did not want anyone to know where they were,31for he was teaching his disciples. He said to them, "The Son of Man will be given over into the hands of men, and they will put him to death. When he has been put to death, after three days he will rise again."32But they did not understand this statement, and they were afraid to ask him.

33Then they came to Capernaum. After he entered the house he asked them, "What were you discussing on the way?"34But they were silent. For they had been arguing with one another on the way about who was the greatest.35Sitting down, he called the twelve together and he said to them, "If anyone wants to be first, he must be last of all and servant of all."36He took a little child and placed him in their midst. He took him in his arms and said to them,37"Whoever receives such a child in my name receives me; whoever receives me does not receive me but the one who sent me."

38John said to him, "Teacher, we saw someone driving out demons in your name and we stopped him, because he does not follow us."

39But Jesus said, "Do not stop him, for there is no one who will do a mighty work in my name and can soon afterwards say anything bad about me.40Whoever is not against us is for us.41Whoever gives you a cup of water to drink in my name because you belong to Christ, truly I say to you, he will not lose his reward.42Whoever causes one of these little ones who believes in me to stumble, it would be better for him to have a large millstone tied around his neck and be thrown into the sea.43If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter into life maimed than to have two hands and to go into hell, into the unquenchable fire.44[1](#footnote-target-1)45If your foot causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter into life lame than to have your two feet and be thrown into hell.46[2](#footnote-target-2)47If your eye causes you to stumble, tear it out. It is better for you to enter into the kingdom of God with one eye than to have two eyes and to be thrown into hell,48where their worm does not die, and the fire is not put out.49For everyone will be salted with fire.50Salt is good, but if the salt has lost its saltiness, how can you make it salty again? Have salt among yourselves, and be at peace with one another."

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient copies do not have this phrase, and verse 44 is not included in the ULB, where their worm does not die, and the fire is not put out. This phrase does appear in verse 48. [2](#footnote-caller-2)The best ancient copies do not have this phrase, and verse 46 is not included in the ULB, where their worm does not die, and the fire is not put out. This phrase does appear in verse 48.

### Mark 9

## 9:1-13

#### Did Jesus say that certain people would still be alive when the kingdom of God came?

[9:1]

Jesus said that certain people would not “taste death before they see the kingdom of God come with power.” That is, they will not die before they saw this. However, scholars disagree about what they would see.

1. Some scholars think Jesus spoke about what was about to happen. That is, Jesus would be transfigured. Perhaps Mark wanted to write that Jesus himself was the kingdom of God. Or perhaps the things the disciples saw were similar to how Jesus would appear when he begins to rule on the earth.
2. Some scholars think Jesus spoke about something the Holy Spirit would do. He would begin to live in Christians forever (see: Acts 2).
3. Some scholars think Jesus spoke about dying and being resurrected.

See: Kingdom of God; Disciple; Resurrect (Resurrection) ; Indwelling of the Holy Spirit; Transfigure (Transfiguration)

#### How was Jesus transfigured?

[9:2]

Mark wrote that Jesus was transfigured. That is, Jesus was changed in some way. The disciples did not see Jesus as he was, they saw him as he will be when he returns to the earth.

See: Transfigure (Transfiguration); Disciple; Jesus' Return to Earth

#### Why did Peter, James, and John see Elijah and Moses?

[9:4]

Peter, James, and John saw Elijah and Moses. Elijah and Moses were in heaven. Scholars think this was a symbol. It symbolized that Jesus was the messiah for whom people were waiting.

See: Heaven; Symbol; Messiah (Christ)

#### Why did Peter call Jesus “rabbi”?

[9:5]

Peter called Jesus “rabbi.” Rabbi was the Hebrew word for teacher. Peter did not understand what was happening. If he did, then he would have called Jesus the messiah, not simply a teacher.

See: Messiah (Christ)

#### Why did Peter want to make three shelters?

[9:5]

Peter wanted to make three shelters. One for Jesus, one for Elijah, and one for Moses. Scholars disagree about why he did this.

1. Some scholars think Peter wanted to build three tents of meeting. That is, he wanted to build a place where God could talk to men once again. He did not know that God was already talking to people through Jesus. They did not need to meet in a tent to learn what God said to them.
2. Some scholars think Peter wanted to build three shelters (see: Leviticus 23:34-44). Perhaps he thought this was for the Feast of Shelters when the messiah came to rule over the world (see: Zechariah 14:16)

See: Tent of Meeting; Festival of Shelters; Messiah (Christ)

#### Why was Peter terrified?

[9:6]

Peter was terrified because he thought the time was coming for God to judge the world. He did not understand that this was not what was happening. Some scholars think Peter, James, and John did not have fear, but had great awe in seeing Jesus, Elijah, and Moses together on the mountain.

See: Awe (Awesome)

#### Who spoke from the cloud?

[9:7]

God the Father spoke from the cloud. In the Bible, heaven is often spoken about as if it is in the clouds.

See: Heaven

#### Why did Jesus tell the disciples not to say anything until the Son of man had “risen from the dead”?

[9:9]

Jesus spoke about the Son of Man rising from the dead. He spoke about himself. He would be resurrected. However, the disciples did not understand that Jesus would be resurrected. Some scholars think Jesus knew the disciples would understand after he was resurrected. Certain Jewish teachers even taught that no one would be made alive again after they died. This was why they talked about what Jesus said among themselves.

See: Son of Man; Resurrect (Resurrection) ; Disciple

#### What did the scribes teach about Elijah?

[9:11]

The scribes taught that Elijah must return to the earth before the messiah came. He would tell Israel to repent and be ready for the messiah. It is not known whether they taught that Elijah would come back to the earth or that there would be a prophet who was like Elijah.

See: Scribe;Messiah (Christ); Repent (Repentance); Prophet

#### Who was Jesus talking about when he said that Elijah has come?

[9:13]

Jesus told them that the scribes were right about Elijah. A prophet like Elijah did help Israel to be ready for the messiah. Jesus spoke about John the Baptist when he spoke about Elijah.

See: Malachi 3:1; 4:5

See: Scribe; Prophet; Messiah (Christ); Repent (Repentance); Sin

## 9:14-29

#### Why were the scribes arguing with the disciples?

[9:14]

The scribes were arguing with the disciples. However, Mark did not write what they were arguing about. Some scholars think the scribes were arguing with the disciples because the disciples could not make the demon leave the boy.

See: Scribe; Disciple; Demon

#### Why were the disciples not able to make the demon leave the boy?

[9:18]

Scholars think the disciples were not able to make the demon leave the boy because they forgot to ask God for help. That is, they forgot to pray. They were not able to make the demon leave without God.

Some ancient copies of the Greek New Testament say that these demons could only come out through “prayer and fasting.” However, scholars think Mark did not write “and fasting.”

See: Disciple; Demon; Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons); Pray (Prayer);Fasting

#### Why did Jesus rebuke the “unbelieving generation”?

[9:19]

Jesus rebuked the “unbelieving generation.” That is, he said that the people of Israel were evil for not believing in him. He did not speak about everyone in Israel. Some people believed in him. Jesus spoke about the people of Israel in general. Perhaps Jesus said this because he wanted the disciples to know that they did the same things that people who did not believe in him did.

#### What did the spirit do when it saw Jesus?

[9:20]

The demon made the boy shake violently when it saw Jesus. Mark did not write why the demon did this.

See: Demon

#### Why did Jesus say, “all things are possible for the one who believes”?

[9:23]

Jesus said, “all things are possible for the one who believes.” He did not say that people who believe in him can do anything they wanted to do. Instead, he said that when someone obeys God, they can do things they did not think possible to do. God can make anything happen. He can use people to make anything happen that he wants to happen.

## 9:30-37

#### Where was Galilee?

[9:30]

See Map: Galilee

#### Why did Jesus not want people to know where they were?

[9:30]

Jesus did not want people to know where they were because he was teaching the disciples. He did not want people to interrupt them.

See: Disciple

#### What did Jesus teach the disciples about the Son of Man?

[9:31]

Jesus taught the disciples about what must happen to the Son of Man. The Son of Man must die and be resurrected. The disciples did not understand that Jesus is the Son of Man. They did not want other people to know they did not understand this, so they did not say anything.

See: Disciple; Son of Man; Resurrect (Resurrection)

#### Where was Capernaum?

[9:33]

See Map: Capernaum

#### Why were the disciples silent when Jesus asked them a question?

[9:34]

The disciples were silent when Jesus asked them a question because they were ashamed of the things the spoke about to one another.

See: Disciple

#### What did Jesus teach his disciples?

[9:35, 9:36, 9:37]

Jesus said, “if anyone wants to be first, he must be last of all and “servant of all.” He wanted to say that the person who was the greatest was the one who obeyed God. A person who obeyed God served other people in the same way Jesus served other people. This person also did not think he was greater than he was really. He knew God gave him everything that he had.

Jesus helped the disciples to understand what he said by talking about a child. At this time, people did not think they should spend their time teaching and helping children. He wanted the disciples to help people who wanted to believe in Jesus and follow Jesus, even if they did not think they were significant enough to teach. They served Jesus by serving these people. They also honored God, who sent Jesus to the Earth.

See: Disciple; Serve

## 9:38-50

#### Why did John call Jesus “teacher”?

[9:38]

In ancient Israel, people often followed someone who taught them. They called them “rabbi” or “teacher.” When he said this, it did not mean that John did not think Jesus was the messiah.

See: Messiah (Christ)

#### How was someone driving out demons in Jesus name?

[9:38]

John said that someone was driving out demons in Jesus’ name. The disciples made this man stop because he was not one of Jesus’ followers. Some scholars think this man was not currently following Jesus, but they think he might have been one of the 70 people he sent out to preach the gospel (see: Luke:10:1). Jesus told the disciples that they did the wrong thing. This was because the man was honoring Jesus. Because Jesus knows everything, he also knew what the man was doing and gave him permission to do this. This man followed Jesus even though he was not with Jesus and the disciples.

See: Matthew 12:30

See: Demon; Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons); Preach (Preacher); Gospel; Disciple

#### Who will be rewarded?

[9:41]

Jesus said that anyone who does something to honor Jesus will be rewarded. However, anyone who does something that caused someone to sin will be punished. That is, if they cause someone to want to do something that dishonored God or stops them from doing something that honored God, then they will be punished. In ancient times, people were punished by having a very large stone tied around their necks. They were thrown into the water which caused them to drown. He wanted to say that it was better to be punished while on earth than to lose your reward in heaven or to go to hell.

See: Reward; Sin; Heaven;Hell

#### Should people harm themselves?

[9:42, 9:43, 9:45]

Jesus said that it would be better for people to harm themselves than to go to hell. Jesus did not want people to harm themselves. However, he wanted them to know that it would be much better to suffer on the earth than to be punished forever in hell.

See: Hell;Fire; Kingdom of God

#### Did Mark write the words in verse 44?

[9:44]

Some ancient copies of the Greek New Testament have the words in verse 44. However, more of the ancient Greek copies do not have the words from verse 44. Mark probably did not write the words that are in verse 44.

See: Differences in the Ancient Copies of the Bible

#### Did Mark write the words in verse 46?

[9:46]

Some ancient copies of the Greek New Testament have the words in verse 46. However, more of the ancient Greek copies do not have the words from verse 46. Mark probably did not write the words that are in verse 46.

See: Differences in the Ancient Copies of the Bible

#### How was someone salted with fire?

[9:49]

Scholars do not know why Jesus said that someone was “salted with fire.” Perhaps he wanted to say that some people will be punished by going to hell, being burned with fire forever. Other people would be made clean by fire. This is a metaphor. They will be made clean so they can be with God forever.

See: Leviticus 2:13

See: Hell; Fire;Metaphor; Clean and Unclean

#### Why did Jesus speak about salt?

[9:50]

Jesus spoke about salt as a metaphor. In the ancient world, salt was used to keep food from going bad. At this time, the salt could spoil or go bad. It was useless after this happened. Jesus wanted to say that the disciples needed to do things differently than other people. Then people would want to believe in Jesus and follow Jesus if they did this. However, if they do the same things that other people do, then people will not want to follow Jesus.

See: Disciple

#### Mark 9:1

##### He said to them

"Jesus said to his disciples"

##### the kingdom of God come with power

"God show himself with great power as king"

#### Mark 9:2

##### he was transfigured

"his appearance had changed" or "he appeared very different"

##### before them

"in front of them"

#### Mark 9:3

##### radiantly brilliant

"shining" or "glowing."

##### whiter than any bleacher on earth could bleach them

"whiter than any person on earth could whiten them"

#### Mark 9:4

##### Elijah with Moses appeared

"two prophets who had lived long ago, Elijah and Moses, appeared"

##### they were talking

The word "they" refers to Elijah and Moses.

#### Mark 9:5

##### Peter answered and said to Jesus

"Peter said to Jesus."

##### it is good for us to be here

It is not clear whether "us" refers only to Peter, James, and John, or if it refers to everyone there, including Jesus, Elijah, and Moses. If you can translate so that both options are possible, do so.

##### shelters

simple, temporary places in which to sit or sleep

#### Mark 9:6

##### they were terrified

"they were very frightened" or "they were very afraid"

#### Mark 9:7

##### came and overshadowed

"appeared and covered"

##### Then a voice came out of the cloud

"Then someone spoke from the cloud" or "Then God spoke from the cloud"

##### beloved Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

#### Mark 9:8

##### when they looked

Here "they" refers to Peter, James, and John.

#### Mark 9:9

##### he commanded them to tell no one ... until the Son of Man had risen

This implies that he was permitting them to tell people about what they had seen after he rose from being dead.

##### risen from the dead

"risen from death"

#### Mark 9:10

##### So they kept the matter to themselves

"So they did not tell anyone about what they had seen"

#### Mark 9:11

##### They asked him

The word "they" refers to Peter, James, and John.

##### Why do the scribes say that Elijah must come first?

"Why do the scribes say that Elijah must come before the Messiah comes?"

#### Mark 9:12

##### Elijah does come first to restore all things

By saying this, Jesus affirms that Elijah would come first.

##### Why then is it written ... be despised?

"But I also want you to consider what is written about the Son of Man. The scriptures say that he must suffer many things and people would hate him."

#### Mark 9:13

##### they did whatever they wanted to him

"our leaders treated him very badly, just as they wanted to do"

#### Mark 9:14

##### Connecting Statement:

When Peter, James, John, and Jesus came down from the mountain, they found the scribes arguing with the other disciples.

##### When they came to the disciples

Jesus, Peter, James, and John returned to the other disciples who had not gone with them up the mountain.

##### they saw a great crowd around them

"Jesus and those three disciples saw a great crowd around the other disciples"

##### scribes were arguing with them

The scribes were arguing with the disciples who had not gone with Jesus.

#### Mark 9:15

##### was amazed

"was amazed that Jesus had come"

#### Mark 9:17

##### He has a spirit

"He has an unclean spirit" or "He is possessed by an unclean spirit"

#### Mark 9:18

##### down, and he foams at the mouth, grinds his teeth, and becomes rigid

"down, and bubbles come out of his mouth, and he grinds his teeth and becomes stiff or rigid."

##### they could not

"they could not drive it out of him"

#### Mark 9:19

##### He answered them

"Jesus responded to the crowd"

##### Unbelieving generation

Jesus calls the crowd an unbelieving generation as he begins to respond to them.

##### how long will I have to stay with you? How long will I bear with you?

"Your unbelief tires me! I wonder how long I must bear with you."

##### bear with you

"endure you" or "put up with you"

##### Bring him to me

"Bring the boy to me"

#### Mark 9:20

##### convulsion

This is the violent shaking of a person's body that can occur when that person has no control over his body.

#### Mark 9:21

##### For how much time

"How long"

##### Since childhood

"He has been like this since he was a small child"

#### Mark 9:22

##### have pity

"have compassion"

#### Mark 9:23

##### 'If you are able'?

"You should not say to me, 'If you are able.'" or "You ask me if I am able. Of course I am able."

##### All things are possible for the one who believes

"God can do anything for people who believe in n God"

#### Mark 9:24

##### Help my unbelief

"Help me when I do not believe" or "Help me have more faith"

#### Mark 9:25

##### the crowd running to them

This means that more people were running toward where Jesus was and that the crowd there was growing larger.

##### You mute and deaf spirit

"You unclean spirit, you who are causing the boy to be unable to speak and unable to hear"

#### Mark 9:26

##### It cried out

"The unclean spirit cried out"

##### convulsed the boy greatly

"shook the boy violently"

##### came out

"came out of the boy"

##### The boy looked like one who was dead

"The boy appeared dead" or "The boy looked like a dead person"

#### Mark 9:27

##### took him by the hand and lifted him up

"grasped the boy by the hand and helped him get up"

#### Mark 9:28

##### cast it out

"cast the unclean spirit out of the boy"

#### Mark 9:29

##### This kind cannot be cast out except by prayer

"This kind of unclean spirit can be cast out only by prayer"

#### Mark 9:30

##### They went out from there

"Jesus and his disciples left that region"

#### Mark 9:31

##### for he was teaching his disciples

"for he was teaching his disciples privately"

##### The Son of Man will be given over

"Someone will give the Son of Man over"

##### into the hands of men

"into the control of men" or "so that men will be able to control him"

##### When he has been put to death, after three days he

"After they have put him to death and three days have passed, he"

#### Mark 9:32

##### they were afraid to ask him

"they were afraid to ask him what it meant"

#### Mark 9:33

##### they came to

"they arrived at."

##### were you discussing

"were you discussing with one another"

#### Mark 9:34

##### they were silent

"they were silent because they were ashamed"

##### who was the greatest

"who was the greatest among them"

#### Mark 9:35

##### If anyone wants to be first, he must be last of all

"If anyone wants God to consider him to be the most important person of all, he must consider himself to be the least important of all people"

#### Mark 9:36

##### He took him in his arms

This means that he hugged the child or picked him up and placed him on his lap.

#### Mark 9:37

##### such a child

"a child like this"

##### in my name

"because he loves me" or "for my sake"

##### the one who sent me

"God, who has sent me"

#### Mark 9:38

##### John said to him

"John said to Jesus"

##### driving out demons

"driving demons out of people"

##### in your name

"by the authority of your name" or "by the power of your name"

##### he does not follow us

"he is not one of us" or "he does not walk with us"

#### Mark 9:40

##### is not against us

"is not opposing us"

##### is for us

"is trying to achieve the same goals that we are"

#### Mark 9:41

##### gives you a cup of water to drink in my name because you belong to Christ

Jesus speaks about giving someone a cup of water as an example of how one person may help another.

##### not lose

"definitely receive"

#### Mark 9:42

##### millstone

a millstone is a large, round stone used for grinding grain into flour

#### Mark 9:43

##### If your hand causes you to stumble

"If you want to do something sinful with one of your hands"

##### to enter into life maimed

"to be maimed and then to enter into life" or "to be maimed before entering into life"

##### to enter into life

"to enter into eternal life" or "to die and begin to live forever"

##### maimed

"without a hand" or "missing a hand"

##### into the unquenchable fire

"where the fire cannot be put out"

#### Mark 9:45

##### If your foot causes you to stumble

"If you want to do something sinful with one of your feet"

##### to enter into life lame

"to be lame and then to enter into life" or "to be lame before entering into life"

##### to enter into life

"to enter into eternal life" or "to die and begin to live forever"

##### lame

"without a foot" or "missing a foot"

##### be thrown into hell

"for God to throw you into hell"

#### Mark 9:47

##### If your eye causes you to stumble, tear it out

"If you want to do something sinful because of what you look at, tear your eye out"

##### to enter into the kingdom of God with one eye than to have two eyes

"to enter into the kingdom of God after having lived on earth with only one eye than to have lived on earth with two eyes"

##### to be thrown into hell

"for God to throw you into hell"

#### Mark 9:48

##### where their worm does not die

"where worms that eat people there do not die"

#### Mark 9:49

##### everyone will be salted with fire

"God will salt everyone with fire" or "Just as salt purifies a sacrifice, God will purify everyone by allowing them to suffer"

#### Mark 9:50

##### its saltiness

"its salty taste"

##### how can you make it salty again?

"you cannot make it salty again."

##### Have salt among yourselves

"Do good to each other, like salt adds flavor to food"

Chapter 10

1Jesus left that place and went to the region of Judea and to the area beyond the Jordan River, and the crowds came to him again. He was teaching them again, as he was accustomed to do.2Then Pharisees came to him to test him and asked, "Is it lawful for a husband to divorce his wife?"

3He answered, "What did Moses command you?"

4They said, "Moses allowed a man to write a certificate of divorce and then to send her away."

5"It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law," Jesus said to them.6"But from the beginning of creation, 'God made them male and female.'7'For this reasona man will leave his father and motherand be united to his wife,8and the two will become one flesh.' So they are no longer two, but one flesh.9Therefore what God has joined together, let no man tear apart."

10When they were in the house, the disciples asked him again about this.11He said to them, "Whoever divorces his wife and marries another woman commits adultery against her.12If she divorces her husband and marries another man, she commits adultery."

13Then they brought their little children to him so that he might touch them, but the disciples rebuked them.14But when Jesus noticed it, he was angry and said to them, "Permit the little children to come to me, and do not forbid them, for the kingdom of God belongs to those who are like them.15Truly I say to you, whoever will not receive the kingdom of God as a little child will definitely not enter it."16Then he took the children into his arms and blessed them as he placed his hands on them.

17When he began his journey, a man ran up to him and knelt before him and asked, "Good Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?"

18Jesus said, "Why do you call me good? No one is good except God alone.19You know the commandments: 'Do not murder, do not commit adultery, do not steal, do not testify falsely, do not defraud, honor your father and mother.'"

20The man said, "Teacher, all these things I have obeyed from the time I was a youth."

21Jesus looked at him and loved him. He said to him, "One thing you lack. You must sell all that you have and give it to the poor, and you will have treasure in heaven. Then come, follow me."22But because of this statement he looked very sad and he went away sorrowful, because he had many possessions.

23Jesus looked around and said to his disciples, "How difficult it is for those who are rich to enter the kingdom of God!"24The disciples were astonished at his words. But Jesus said to them again, "Children, how hard it is to enter into the kingdom of God!25It is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich person to enter the kingdom of God."

26They were greatly astonished and said to each other, "Then who can be saved?"

27Jesus looked at them and said, "With people it is impossible, but not with God. For all things are possible with God."

28Peter began to speak to him: "Look, we have left everything and have followed you."

29Jesus said, "Truly I say to you, there is no one who has left house or brothers or sisters or mother or father or children or lands for my sake and for the gospel30who will not receive a hundred times as much now in this age: houses and brothers and sisters and mothers and children and lands, with persecutions, and in the world to come, eternal life.31But many who are first will be last, and the last first."

32They were on the road going up to Jerusalem, and Jesus was going ahead of them. The disciples were amazed, and those who were following behind were afraid. Then Jesus took the twelve aside again and began to tell them what would soon happen to him.33"See, we are going up to Jerusalem, and the Son of Man will be given over to the chief priests and the scribes. They will condemn him to death and give him over to the Gentiles.34They will mock him, spit on him, whip him, and put him to death. But after three days he will rise."

35James and John, the sons of Zebedee, came up to him and said, "Teacher, we want you to do for us whatever we ask you."

36He said to them, "What do you want me to do for you?"

37They said, "Allow us to sit with you in your glory, one at your right hand and the other at your left."

38But Jesus replied to them, "You do not know what you are asking. Are you able to drink the cup which I will drink or be baptized with the baptism with which I will be baptized?"

39They said to him, "We are able."

Jesus said to them, "The cup that I will drink, you will drink, and with the baptism with which I am baptized, you also will be baptized.40But who is to sit at my right hand or at my left hand is not mine to give, but it is for those for whom it has been prepared."41When the other ten disciples heard about this, they began to be very angry with James and John.42Jesus called them to himself and said, "You know those who are considered rulers of the Gentiles dominate them, and their high officials exercise authority over them.43But it is not this way among you. Whoever wishes to become great among you must be your servant,44and whoever wishes to be first among you must be the slave of all.45For the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give his life as a ransom for many."

46They came to Jericho. As he left Jericho with his disciples and a great crowd, the son of Timaeus, Bartimaeus, a blind beggar, sat by the road.47When he heard that it was Jesus the Nazarene, he began to shout and to say, "Jesus, Son of David, have mercy on me!"

48Many rebuked the blind man, telling him to be quiet. But he cried out all the more, "Son of David, have mercy on me!"

49Jesus stopped and commanded him to be called. They called the blind man, saying, "Be brave! Get up! He is calling for you."50He threw aside his coat, sprang up, and came to Jesus.

51Jesus answered him and said, "What do you want me to do for you?"

The blind man said, "Rabboni, I want to receive my sight."

52Then Jesus said to him, "Go. Your faith has healed you." Immediately he could see again, and he followed him on the road.

### Mark 10

## 10:1-12

#### Where was the area beyond the Jordan River?

[10:1]

Jesus left Capernaum to go to Judea. This was a place past the Jordan River. Judea was on the west side of the Jordan River. This was an area where Jews lived. Mark wrote about the area east of the Jordan river when he wrote about beyond the Jordan River. This was a place where Gentiles lived.

See: Gentile

See Map: Capernaum; Jordan River; Judea

#### How did the Pharisees test Jesus?

[10:2]

Mark wrote that the Pharisees tested Jesus. That is, they wanted to get him to say something that made people angry. It would make certain people angry if he said people could not get divorced. It would make certain other people angry if he said that people could get divorced.

See: Pharisees; Test; Divorce

#### What did Moses teach about divorce?

[10:3, 10:4]

Moses taught about divorce in the Law of Moses. The Pharisees thought that Moses said a man could divorce his wife. However, they did not think that a woman could divorce her husband. Some Pharisees taught that a man could only divorce his wife if she committed adultery or did evil things. Other Pharisees taught that any man could divorce his wife if he wanted to, even if she did not do anything wrong.

When a man wrote his wife a “certificate of divorce,” he divorced her and gave her something written that said she did not commit adultery. This would help her to marry another man.

See: Deuteronomy 24:1-4

See: Divorce; Pharisees; Law of Moses; Adultery

#### What did Jesus teach about divorce?

[10:5, 10:6, 10:7, 10:8, 10:9]

Jesus told the Pharisees what the Law of Moses actually said. Moses did not want people to get divorced because God did not want people to get divorced. Instead, Moses knew that some people had hard hearts. That is, they did not want to listen to God’s will about divorce. Moses allowed people to be divorced because of this. However, a certificate of divorce must be written.

Jesus told them about the marriage between Adam and Eve (see: Genesis 1:27; 2:24). A husband and wife became one flesh. That is, it was as if they shared one body. This could not be separated without hurting both the husband and the wife. Therefore, marriage was not simply a contract between two people. It was the joining together of two bodies.

**Advice to translators**: A contract is a written agreement between two people. They promised something to each other. If they did not do what they promised, they would promise to be punished in a certain way. When marriage is spoken about as a contract, it is written agreement they give to the government. They can easily end this agreement by giving the government another written agreement, that is, a divorce.

See: Divorce; Pharisees; Law of Moses; Sin; Will of God

## 10:13-16

#### Why did people want their children to have Jesus touch them?

[10:13]

The people brought their children to have Jesus touch them. They thought that if they did this, Jesus would bless the children. He did this by putting his hands on them and saying a blessing.

See: Bless (Blessing)

#### Why were the disciples angry with the people bringing their children to have Jesus touch them?

[10:13]

The disciples were angry with the people bringing their children to have Jesus touch them. Scholars think the disciples thought Jesus needed to be doing other things. Perhaps they thought that Jesus should be teaching adults instead.

See: Disciple

#### What did Jesus teach the disciples about the kingdom of God?

[10:14, 10:15]

Jesus told the disciples they were wrong for being angry with these people. Jesus wanted to have the little children come to him. This was because many adults rejected Jesus. They thought they knew more about the messiah than they did. However, the children were willing to learn and did not reject Jesus.

After this, Jesus taught the disciples about the kingdom of God. If people wanted to have the kingdom of God, they needed to believe in Jesus the same way children believed in Jesus. That was because children often trusted someone completely, but adults often only trusted someone who has earned it.

See: Disciple; Messiah (Christ); Kingdom of God

## 10:17-31

#### What was inheriting eternal life?

[10:17]

This man spoke about having peace with God and living with him forever when he spoke about inheriting eternal life.

See: Inherit (Inheritance, Heir); Heaven

#### How was someone good?

[10:17, 10:18]

Jesus spoke about someone who always did the right thing when he talked about someone who was “good.” Some scholars think because only God is good, that Jesus said that he is God also. The man did not understand what it meant to be “good” and to obey God perfectly.

#### What were these commandments?

[10:20]

Jesus talked about some of the 10 commandments in the Law of Moses.

See: Exodus 20; Deuteronomy 5

See: Ten Commandments; Law of Moses

#### Why did Jesus want this man to sell everything he had?

[10:21]

The man called Jesus teacher. He thought that Jesus was just a teacher. He did not believe that Jesus was the messiah or that he was God. Jesus knew that the man wanted money more than anything else. He did not trust in God. He trusted in the things he had. Because of this, he rejected Jesus.

All people do not need to sell everything they have to be Chrsitians. This was not a command for all people to follow. Jesus knew the man’s money kept him from believing in Jesus.

See: Messiah (Christ)

#### What was treasure in heaven?

[10:21]

Jeus spoke about some rewards people will get after they die when he spoke about treasure in heaven.

See: Reward; Heaven

#### Can the rich enter the kingdom of God?

[10:23]

In ancient Israel, people thought that God blessed people who obeyed him. Therefore, God also blessed rich people. This was not what Jesus said. When people put their trust in themselves and their money they will not be able to enter into God’s kingdom. Jesus used the metaphor of a camel. A camel would never fit through the eye of a needle, which is less than one millimeter. This made other people know how difficult it was for people to trust in Jesus when they had great riches and trusted in those riches instead of God.

See: Bless (Blessing); Kingdom of God; Metaphor

**Advice to translators**: Someone who has a lot of money is rich. They have riches.

#### What did Jesus want to teach the disciples?

[10:23, 10:24, 10:25, 10:27]

Here, Jesus wanted to teach his disciples that there was only one way to have peace with God and to enter into his kingdom. That was to trust in Jesus. People should not trust in anything or anyone else.

See: Disciple; Kingdom of God

#### How will people be given “a hundred times” as much as they left behind?

[10:30]

Some scholars think Jesus spoke about the many homes that would be opened for the servants of God. The brothers and sisters were those who believed in Jesus and became brothers and sisters in Christ. Other scholars think Jesus spoke about spiritual blessings that replaced the homes and families that were left behind. The blessings might be considered “a hundred times” better than what they left behind.

See: Family of God; Children of God; Spirit (Spiritual); Bless (Blessing)

## 10:32-45

#### Why were the disciples amazed and the people afraid?

[10:32]

Jesus went to Jerusalem knowing that he would die in Jerusalem. He taught this to people. The people were afraid that what he said was true and that he would be killed in Jerusalem. So they were amazed that he still wanted to go to Jerusalem if he was going to die.

See: Disciple

See Map: Jerusalem

#### What did Jesus tell the disciples would soon happen?

[10:33]

Jesus told the disciples that he was going to die and would be made alive again. That is, he will be resurrected.

See: Disciple; Resurrect (Resurrection)

#### Who is the Son of Man?

[10;33]

See: Son of Man

#### Why will the chief priests and scribes give Jesus over to the Gentiles?

[10:33]

At this time, the Jews were not able to kill a criminal. Only their Roman leaders could do this. They were Gentiles. Jesus wanted to say that the Jewish leaders would get the Gentile leaders to kill Jesus.

See: Chief Priest; Scribe; Gentile

#### Why did James and John want to sit at Jesus’ right and left hand?

[10:37]

James and John wanted to sit at Jesus’ right and left hand. That is, they wanted to sit next to him in heaven. To be seated at the right and left hand of the throne were places of honor. They wanted to be honored.

See: Heaven; Throne

#### What will happen to Jesus?

[10:38]

Jesus spoke about drinking the cup he was about to drink and enduring the baptism he was about to endure. These were metaphors. He was asking them if they would suffer and die to obey him. If they did this, it would be a type of offering to God. Eventually, James would be killed for believing in Jesus (see: Acts 12:2).

See: Baptize (Baptism); Metaphor; Offer (Offering)

#### Who will sit at Jesus’ right and left side in heaven?

[10:40]

Jesus will sit at God the Father’s right hand in heaven. Therefore, God is at Jesus’ left hand side in heaven. However, God the Father is the one who decides who will sit at the right hand of Jesus (see: Matthew 20:23).

See: God the Father; Heaven

#### Why were the disciples angry with James and John?

[10:41]

Some scholars think the other disciples were angry with James and John because they asked Jesus to honor them in a special way. Other scholars think the other disciples were jealous or afraid James and John might be honored over them.

See: Disciple

#### Who will be honored in heaven?

[10:43]

Jesus taught the disciples that certain people will be honored in heaven. Just as Jesus came to serve, so Christians who serve other people will be honored in heaven.

See: Disciple; Heaven

#### How did Jesus give his life as a ransom for many?

[10:45]

Jesus gave his life as a ransom for many. That is, he died so that people would be at peace with God. Mark spoke about Jesus dying as a price to be paid for their sin. By dying, Jesus set them free from being slaves to their own sinful desires.

See: Atone (Atonement); Sin

## 10:46-52

#### Where is Jericho?

[10:46]

See Map: Jericho

#### Who was Jesus the Nazarene?

[10:47]

Jesus was Jesus the Nazarene. He was Jesus from Nazareth.

See Map: Nazareth

#### How was Jesus the Son of David?

[10:47]

The blind man called Jesus the “Son of David.” David was one of Jesus’ ancestors. He called him this because the messiah was to be one of David’s descendants. He was to fulfill the covenant God made with David.

See: Son of David; Messiah (Christ); Covenant with David

#### Why did the people rebuke the blind man?

[10:48]

People told the blind man that he was wrong. Some scholars think the people wanted to get to Jerusalem quickly, so they did not want Jesus to stop when the blind man cried out. Other scholars think the people were not ready to hear that Jesus is the Son of David, that is, the Messiah.

See: Messiah (Christ)

#### Why did the man call Jesus rabbi?

[10:51]

In ancient Israel, people called certain teachers “rabbi.” People followed the teacher, obeyed the things he taught, and called him rabbi. The Greek word can also be used to call someone “master.”

#### Why was this man healed?

[10:52]

Jesus healed this man because he believed in Jesus.

#### Mark 10:1

##### Jesus left that place

"Jesus and his disciples left Capernaum"

##### He was teaching them again

The word "them" refers to the crowds.

##### he was accustomed to do

"was his custom" or "he usually did"

#### Mark 10:3

##### What did Moses command you

"What did Moses command your ancestors about this"

#### Mark 10:4

##### a certificate of divorce

This was a paper saying that the woman was no longer his wife.

#### Mark 10:5

##### "It was because ... this law," Jesus said to them.

"Jesus said to them, 'It was because ... this law."

##### because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law

"because your ancestors had hard hearts like yours that he wrote this law"

##### your hard hearts

"your stubbornness"

#### Mark 10:7

##### For this reason

"Because of this"

##### be united to his wife

"join with his wife"

#### Mark 10:8

##### they are no longer two, but one flesh

"the two people are like one person" or "they are no longer two, but together they are one body"

#### Mark 10:9

##### Therefore what God has joined together, let no man tear apart

"Therefore since God has joined together husband and wife, let no one tear them apart"

#### Mark 10:10

##### When they were

"When Jesus and his disciples were"

##### When they were in the house

"When Jesus and his disciples were alone in the house"

##### asked him again about this

The word "this" refers to the conversation that Jesus had just had with the Pharisees about divorce.

#### Mark 10:11

##### Whoever

"Anyone who"

##### commits adultery against her

Here "her" refers to the first woman he was married to.

#### Mark 10:12

##### she commits adultery

"she commits adultery against him" or "she commits adultery against the first man"

#### Mark 10:13

##### he might touch them

"he might touch them with his hands and bless them" or "he might lay his hands on them and bless them"

##### rebuked them

"rebuked the people"

#### Mark 10:14

##### Jesus noticed it

The word "it" refers to the disciples rebuking the people who were bringing the children to Jesus.

##### was angry

Jesus was angry with the disciples.

##### Permit the little children to come to me, and do not forbid them

"Be sure to allow the little children to come to me"

##### for the kingdom of God belongs to those who are like them

"the kingdom of God includes people who are like them" or "because only people like them are members of the kingdom of God"

#### Mark 10:15

##### as a little child

"in the same manner as a little child would"

##### will not receive the kingdom of God

"will not accept God as their king"

##### definitely not enter it

The word "it" refers to the kingdom of God.

#### Mark 10:16

##### he took the children into his arms

"he hugged the children"

#### Mark 10:17

##### to inherit eternal life

to receive eternal life

#### Mark 10:18

##### Why do you call me good?

"You do not understand what you are saying when you call me good."

##### No one is good except God alone

"The only one who is good is God"

#### Mark 10:19

##### do not testify falsely

"do not lie about someone in court"

#### Mark 10:21

##### One thing you lack

"One thing you need to do" or "There is one thing you have not yet done"

##### give it to the poor

"give the money to the poor people"

##### treasure

wealth, valuable things

#### Mark 10:22

##### had many possessions

"owned many things"

#### Mark 10:23

##### How difficult it is

"It is very difficult"

#### Mark 10:24

##### Jesus said to them again

"Jesus said to his disciples again"

##### Children, how

"My friends, how"

#### Mark 10:25

##### It is easier for a camel

"It would be easier for a camel"

##### the eye of a needle

"the hole of a needle"

#### Mark 10:26

##### They were

"The disciples were"

##### Then who can be saved?

"If that is so, then no one will be saved!"

#### Mark 10:27

##### With people it is impossible, but not with God

"It is impossible for people to save themselves, but God can save them"

#### Mark 10:28

##### Look, we have left everything and have followed you

"We have left everything behind and have followed you"

#### Mark 10:29

##### Truly I say to you, there is no one

"Truly I say to you, everyone"

##### or lands

"or plots of ground" or "or the land that he owns"

##### for my sake

"for my cause" or "for me"

##### for the gospel

"to proclaim the gospel"

#### Mark 10:30

##### this age

"the world as you know it" or "this present age"

##### with persecutions, and in the world to come, eternal life

"and even though people persecute them, in the future, they will receive eternal life"

#### Mark 10:31

##### are first will be last, and the last first

"are important will be unimportant, and those who are unimportant will be important"

##### the last first

"those who are last will be first"

#### Mark 10:33

##### the Son of Man will be given over to

"someone will hand the Son of Man to" or "they will hand the Son of Man over to"

##### They will condemn

The word "They" refers to the chief priests and the scribes.

##### give him over to the Gentiles

"betray him to the Gentiles" or "put him under the control of the Gentiles"

#### Mark 10:34

##### They will mock

"People will mock"

##### put him to death

"kill him"

##### he will rise

"he will rise from being dead"

#### Mark 10:35

##### we ... us

These words refer only to James and John.

#### Mark 10:37

##### in your glory

"when you rule in your kingdom"

#### Mark 10:38

##### You do not know

"You do not understand"

##### drink the cup which I will drink

"drink the cup of suffering that I will drink" or "drink from the cup of suffering that I will drink from"

##### be baptized with the baptism with which I will be baptized

"endure the baptism of suffering which I will suffer"

#### Mark 10:39

##### you will drink

"you will drink as well"

#### Mark 10:40

##### But who is to sit at my right hand or at my left hand is not mine to give

"But I am not the one who allows people to sit at my right hand or my left hand"

##### but it is for those for whom it has been prepared

The word "it" refers to the places to his right hand and to his left hand.

##### it has been prepared

"God has prepared it" or "God has prepared them"

#### Mark 10:41

##### heard about this

The word "this" refers to James and John asking to sit at Jesus's right and left hands.

#### Mark 10:42

##### Jesus called them

"Jesus called his disciples"

##### those who are considered rulers of the Gentiles

"those whom the Gentiles think of as their rulers"

##### dominate

have control or power over

##### exercise authority

"flaunt their authority." This means that they show or use their authority in an overbearing way.

#### Mark 10:43

##### But it is not this way among you

"But do not be like them"

##### become great

"be highly respected"

#### Mark 10:44

##### to be first

"to be the most important"

#### Mark 10:45

##### For the Son of Man did not come to be served but to serve

"For the Son of Man did not come to be served by people, but to serve people"

##### for many

"for many people"

#### Mark 10:46

##### the son of Timaeus, Bartimaeus, a blind beggar

"a blind beggar named Bartimaeus, the son of Timaeus." Bartimaeus is the name of a man. Timaeus is his father's name.

#### Mark 10:47

##### When he heard that it was Jesus

"When he heard people saying that it was Jesus"

##### Son of David

"You who are the Messiah descended from King David"

#### Mark 10:48

##### Many rebuked

"Many people rebuked"

##### all the more

"even more"

#### Mark 10:49

##### commanded him to be called.

"commanded others to call him." or "commanded them, 'Call him to come over here.'"

##### They called

The word "They" refers to the crowd.

##### Be brave

"Have courage" or "Do not be afraid"

##### He is calling for you

"Jesus is calling for you"

#### Mark 10:50

##### sprang up

"jumped up"

#### Mark 10:51

##### answered him

"answered the blind man"

##### to receive my sight

"to be able to see"

#### Mark 10:52

##### Your faith has healed you

"I am healing you because you have believed in me"

##### he followed him

"he followed Jesus"

Chapter 11

1Now as they came to Jerusalem, they were close to Bethphage and Bethany at the Mount of Olives, and Jesus sent out two of his disciples2and said to them, "Go into the village opposite us. As soon as you enter it, you will find a colt that has never been ridden. Untie it and bring it to me.3If anyone says to you, 'Why are you doing this?' you should say, 'The Lord has need of it and will immediately send it back here.'"

4They went away and found a colt tied at a door outside in the street, and they untied it.5Some people were standing there and said to them, "What are you doing, untying that colt?"6They spoke to them as Jesus told them, and the people let them go their way.7They brought the colt to Jesus and threw their cloaks on it, and he sat on it.8Many people spread their garments on the road, and others spread branches they had cut from the fields.9Those who went before him and those who followed shouted,"Hosanna! Blessed is the onewho comes in the name of the Lord.10Blessed is the coming kingdom of our father David!Hosanna in the highest!"

11Then Jesus entered into Jerusalem and went into the temple and looked around at everything. Now the time being late, he went out to Bethany with the twelve.12The next day while they were going out from Bethany, he was hungry.13Seeing from far away a fig tree that had leaves, he went to see if he could find any fruit on it, and when he came to it, he found nothing but leaves, for it was not the season for figs.14He said to it, "No one will ever eat fruit from you again." And his disciples heard it.

15They came to Jerusalem, and he entered the temple and began to cast out the sellers and the buyers in the temple. He turned over the tables of the money changers and the seats of those who sold pigeons.16He did not allow anyone to carry anything through the temple that could be sold.17He taught them and said, "Is it not written,'My house will be calleda house of prayer for all the nations'? But you have made it a den of robbers."

18The chief priests and the scribes heard what he had said, and they looked for a way to destroy him. For they feared him because the entire crowd was amazed at his teaching.19When evening came, they left the city.

20As they walked by in the morning, they saw the fig tree withered away to its roots.21Peter remembered and said, "Rabbi, look! The fig tree you cursed has withered away."

22Jesus answered them, "Have faith in God.23Truly I say to you that if anyone says to this mountain, 'Get up and cast yourself into the sea,' and if he does not doubt in his heart but believes that what he said will happen, that is what God will do.24Therefore I say to you: Everything you pray and ask for, believe that you have received it, and it will be yours.25When you stand and pray, you must forgive whatever you have against anyone, so that your Father who is in heaven will also forgive you your trespasses."26[1](#footnote-target-1)

27They came to Jerusalem again. As Jesus was walking in the temple, the chief priests, the scribes, and the elders came to him.28They said to him, "By what authority do you do these things, and who gave you the authority to do them?"

29Jesus said to them, "I will ask you one question. Tell me and I will tell you by what authority I do these things.30The baptism of John—was it from heaven or from men? Answer me."31They discussed between themselves and argued and said, "If we say, 'From heaven,' he will say, 'Why then did you not believe him?'32But if we say, 'From men,' ... ." They were afraid of the people, for everyone was convinced that John was a prophet.33Then they answered Jesus and said, "We do not know."

Then Jesus said to them, "Neither will I tell you by what authority I do these things."

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient copies of Mark do not have this sentence: But if you do not forgive, neither will your Father who is in heaven forgive your trespasses .

### Mark 11

## 11:1-10

#### Where were Bethany, Bethpage, and the Mount of Olives?

[11:1]

See Map: Bethany; Bethpage; Mount of Olives

#### How did Jesus enter into Jerusalem?

[11:2]

Jesus entered Jerusalem in the same way a king returned home after a great victory in a war. Often, they rode on horses or in a chariot. Jesus entered Jerusalem on a colt because he told people that he was the messiah and the king of the Jews (see: Zechariah 9:9). He also had a great victory. He lived the perfect life and was about to die so that people could have peace with God.

See: Matthew 21:1-11; Luke 19:28-44; John 12:12-19

See: Messiah (Christ); Atone (Atonement); Chariot

#### What was a colt?

[11:2]

A colt was a young donkey. This colt was with its mother, a donkey (see: Matthew 21:2). No one had ever ridden this colt. In the Old Testament, an animal that had never been used had special value for religious purposes (see: Numbers 19:2; Deuteronomy 21:3; 1 Samuel 6:7).

#### Why did Jesus say, “the Lord has need of it”?

[11:3]

Some scholars think that Jesus said, “the Lord has need of it” to say that God needed it for God’s purpose. Other scholars think Jesus said this because he was calling himself Lord. That is, he was calling himself God. Still other scholars think the owner of the colt was traveling with Jesus, and Jesus said the owner had need of the colt.

See: Jesus is God

#### Why did the disciples put their cloaks on the colt?

[11:7]

The disciples put their cloaks on the colt to make it easier for Jesus to ride on it. A cloak was a coat. It was a piece of clothing used to make someone warm. It was put on over other clothes. This coat covered the whole body with a single piece of thick cloth.

See: Disciple

#### Why did the people put things on the road?

[11:8]

The road on which Jesus rode the colt was dirty. The people honored Jesus by putting things on the road so that he would not get dirty. In ancient times, people did this to welcome a new king (see: 2 Kings 9:13).

#### Why did the people shout “hosanna”?

[11:9]

The people shouted “Hosanna” because they wanted God to save them. They said that Jesus came “in the name of the Lord.” That is, God gave Jesus power and permission to serve him. They believed Jesus was the messiah who came to begin the kingdom promised to David.

See: Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins); Heaven; Bless (Blessing); Messiah (Christ); Covenant with David

## 11:11-26

#### Why did Jesus look around the temple?

[11:11]

Jesus went to Jerusalem. He walked around the temple. Scholars think Jesus looked at the things happening in the temple. Many forbidden things were happening. They think Jesus planned what he would do the next day.

See: Temple

See Map: Jerusalem

#### Why did Jesus curse the fig tree?

[11:13, 11:14]

Jesus saw a fig tree. It did not have fruit. He cursed it. He did not do this because he was hungry or angry. It was a metaphor. In the same way a fig tree produced figs, so God wanted Israel to produce fruit. That is, he wanted Israel to serve and obey him. However, they did not do this. Therefore, they made themselves useless to God.

See: Curse; Fruit (Metaphor); Metaphor

#### Why did Jesus make people leave the temple?

[11:15]

Jesus made certain people leave the temple. He made people who sold things in the temple leave. He made people who bought things in the temple leave. He did not want people there to make money. He only wanted people to go to the temple to worship God. People from every nation were to go to the temple to pray (see: Isaiah 56:7). However, the Jews did not want other people to go to the temple to worship God. Instead, they used the area God made for the Gentiles worship God as a market to make money.

Jesus said the temple was made into a “den of robbers.” That is, a place where people who robbed other people lived (see: Jeremiah 7:11). Some scholars think Jesus quoted Jeremiah so everyone would know that the people did not honor the temple.

Before, Jesus also made people leave the temple earlier (see: John 2:13-22).

See: Temple; Gentile

#### Why did the chief priests and scribes want to kill Jesus?

[11:18]

The chief priests and scribes wanted to kill Jesus because of what he did. Some scholars think the chief priests and the scribes made money from the things sold in the temple. Jesus stopped them from making money in the temple. Other scholars think Jesus made others know that he was greater than the high priest and he ruled the temple by doing the things he did there.

See: Temple; High Priest; Chief Priest; Scribe

#### Why did Peter call Jesus “rabbi”?

[11:21]

See: Mark 9:5

#### Why did Jesus speak about a mountain?

[11:23]

Jesus spoke about a mountain to teach his disciples. This was a metaphor. He wanted to say they could do great things if they trusted in God. They were not actually going to move a mountain. This was hyperbole. However, God did many miracles through these disciples after Jesus was made alive again. God would do things that no person could ever do if they asked God for something in prayer that God wanted to happen. Jesus wanted them to trust in God when they prayed.

Jesus also wanted the disciples to forgive other people. God forgave their sins. So they should forgive other people. Some scholars think Jesus told the disciples to forgive others because God heard their prayers. They think there is a kind of separation between God and the person praying when they do not forgive other people.

See: Disciple; Metaphor; Miracle; Hyperbole; Will of God; Sin

#### Did Mark write the words in 11:26?

[11:26]

Some ancient copies of the Greek New Testament do not have the words in 11:26. Fewer ancient copies of the Greek New Testament have the words in 11:26. Some English Bibles were translated from a copy of the Greek New Testament that had 11:26. However, scholars think Mark did not write these words.

## 11:27-33

#### Who were the elders?

[11:27]

The elders were the Jewish leaders who were older men. Why did the leaders want to know who gave Jesus permission to do the things he did?

The Jewish leaders asked Jesus who gave him permission to do the things he did. They did not think God gave him permission to do the things he did. They thought Satan gave him permission to do these things. Some scholars think the leaders really wanted to have Jesus say that God sent him. They thought that the Law of Moses said they could kill him if he did this. However, God sent Jesus.

See: Satan (The Devil); Law of Moses

#### Why did Jesus ask the leaders about the baptism of John?

[11:29, 11:30]

Jesus asked the leaders about who gave John the Baptist permission to do the things he did. The people in Israel loved John the Baptist. They thought God sent him. John the Baptist said that Jesus was the messiah. The leaders were afraid of saying that God sent John because they would also have to say that God sent Jesus.However, the people would be angry with these leaders and reject them if they said that God did not send John.

See: Baptize (Baptism); Messiah (Christ)

#### Mark 11:1

##### Bethphage

This is the name of a village.

#### Mark 11:2

##### opposite us

"ahead of us"

##### a colt

This refers to a young donkey that is large enough to carry a man.

#### Mark 11:3

##### Why are you doing this

"Why are you untying and taking the colt"

##### will immediately send it back here

"will immediately send it back when he no longer needs it"

#### Mark 11:6

##### let them go their way

"let them take the donkey with them"

#### Mark 11:7

##### They brought the colt to Jesus

The word "They" refers to the two disciples.

##### cloaks

"coats" or "robes"

#### Mark 11:8

##### Many people spread their garments on the road

"Many people spread their garments on the road to honor him"

#### Mark 11:9

##### Hosanna

"Praise God"

##### Blessed is the one

"Blessed are you, the one"

##### in the name of the Lord

"with the authority of the Lord"

##### Blessed is

"May God bless"

#### Mark 11:10

##### Blessed is the coming kingdom of our father David

"Blessed be the coming of your kingdom" or "May God bless you as you rule your coming kingdom"

##### of our father David

"of the greatest descendant of our father David" or "that David's greatest descendant will rule"

##### Hosanna in the highest

Possible meanings are 1) "Praise God who is in heaven" or 2) "Let those who are in heaven shout 'Hosanna'."

##### the highest

"the highest heaven" or "heaven"

#### Mark 11:11

##### the time being late

"because it was late in the day"

##### he went out to Bethany with the twelve

"he and his twelve disciples left Jerusalem and went to Bethany"

#### Mark 11:12

##### he was hungry

"Jesus was hungry"

#### Mark 11:13

##### he found nothing but leaves

"he found only leaves and no figs on the tree"

##### the season

"the time of year"

#### Mark 11:14

##### He said to it

"He said to the tree"

##### his disciples heard it

The word "it" refers to what Jesus said.

#### Mark 11:15

##### They came

"Jesus and his disciples came"

##### the sellers and the buyers

"the people who were buying and selling"

#### Mark 11:17

##### Is it not written, 'My house will be called ... the nations'?

"It is written in the scriptures that God said, 'I want my house to be called a house where people from all nations may pray.'"

##### But you have made it a den of robbers

"But you are like robbers who have made my house into a cave where robbers hide"

#### Mark 11:18

##### to destroy him

"to kill him"

#### Mark 11:20

##### walked by

"were walking along the road"

##### they saw the fig tree withered away to its roots

"they saw that the fig tree had withered away down to its roots and died"

#### Mark 11:21

##### Peter remembered

"Peter remembered what Jesus had said to the fig tree"

#### Mark 11:23

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth."

##### if he does not doubt in his heart but believes

"if he truly believes in his heart" or "if he does not doubt but believes"

##### God will do

"God will make happen"

#### Mark 11:24

##### Therefore I say to you

"So I tell you"

##### it will be yours

"God will give it to you"

#### Mark 11:25

##### When you stand and pray

"When you pray"

##### whatever you have against anyone

"whatever grudge you have against anyone."

#### Mark 11:27

##### They came to

"Jesus and his disciples came to"

#### Mark 11:28

##### They said to him

The word "They" refers to the chief priests, the scribes, and the elders.

##### By what authority do you do these things, and who gave you the authority to do them?

"Who gave you authority to do these things?" 2) They are two separate questions, the first asking about the nature of the authority and the second about who gave it to him.

##### you do these things

"things like those you did here yesterday"

#### Mark 11:30

##### The baptism of John

"The baptism that John performed"

##### was it from heaven or from men

"was it authorized by heaven or by men"

##### from heaven

"from God"

##### from men

"from people"

#### Mark 11:31

##### From heaven

"From God"

##### not believe him

The word "him" refers to John the Baptist.

#### Mark 11:32

##### But if we say, 'From men,'

"But if we say, 'The baptism of John was from men,'" or "But if we say, 'From men,' that would not be good." or "But we do not want to say that it was from men."

##### From men

"It came from a person"

##### They were afraid of the people

"They did not want to say that John's baptism was from men because they were afraid of the people"

#### Mark 11:33

##### We do not know

"We do not know where the baptism of John came from"

Chapter 12

1Then Jesus began to teach them in parables. He said, "A man planted a vineyard, put a hedge around it, and dug a pit for a winepress. He built a watchtower and then leased the vineyard to vine growers. Then he went away on a journey.2At the right time, he sent a servant to the vine growers to receive from them some of the fruit of the vineyard.3But they took him, beat him, and sent him away empty-handed.4Again he sent to them another servant, and they wounded him in the head and treated him shamefully.5He sent yet another, and this one they killed. They treated many others in the same way, beating some and killing others.6He had still one more person to send, a beloved son. He was the last one he sent to them. He said, 'They will respect my son.'

7"But the vine growers said to one another, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him, and the inheritance will be ours.'8They seized him, killed him, and threw him out of the vineyard.9Therefore, what will the owner of the vineyard do? He will come and destroy the vine growers and will give the vineyard to others.10Have you not read this scripture?'The stone which the builders rejectedhas been made the cornerstone.11This was from the Lord,and it is marvelous in our eyes.'"

12After this the Jewish leaders sought a way to arrest Jesus because they understood that he spoke the parable against them. But they were afraid of the crowd. So they left him and went away.

13Then they sent some of the Pharisees and the Herodians to him to trap him with words.14When they came, they said to him, "Teacher, what people think is not a concern to you because you do not show partiality to anyone. You truly teach the way of God. Is it lawful to pay taxes to Caesar or not? Should we pay or not?"

15But Jesus knew their hypocrisy and said to them, "Why do you test me? Bring me a denarius so I can look at it."16They brought one to Jesus. He said to them, "Whose likeness and inscription is this?"

They said, "Caesar's."

17Jesus said, "Give to Caesar the things that are Caesar's, and to God the things that are God's." They marveled at him.

18Then Sadducees, who say there is no resurrection, came to him. They asked him, saying,19"Teacher, Moses wrote for us, 'If a man's brother dies and leaves a wife behind him, but had no child, the man should take the brother's wife, and raise up children for his brother.'20There were seven brothers; the first took a wife and then died, having no children.21Then the second took her and died, leaving no child, and the third in the same way.22The seven left no children. Last of all, the woman also died.23In the resurrection, when they rise again, whose wife will she be? For all seven brothers had her as their wife."

24Jesus said, "Is this not the reason you are mistaken, because you do not know the scriptures nor the power of God?25For when they rise from the dead, they neither marry nor are given in marriage, but they are like angels in heaven.26But concerning the dead that are raised, have you not read in the book of Moses, in the account about the bush, how God spoke to him and said, 'I am the God of Abraham and the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob'?27He is not the God of the dead, but of the living. You are quite mistaken."

28One of the scribes came and heard their discussion; he saw that Jesus answered them well. He asked him, "What commandment is the most important of all?"

29Jesus answered, "The most important is, 'Hear, Israel, the Lord our God, the Lord is one.30You must love the Lord your God with all your heart, with all your soul, with all your mind, and with all your strength.'31The second commandment is this, 'You must love your neighbor as yourself.' There is no other greater commandment than these."

32The scribe said, "Good, Teacher! You have truly said that God is one, and that there is no other besides him.33To love him with all the heart and with all the understanding and with all the strength, and to love one's neighbor as oneself is even more than all burnt offerings and sacrifices."

34When Jesus saw that he had given a wise answer, he said to him, "You are not far from the kingdom of God." After that, no one dared to ask Jesus any more questions.

35While Jesus was teaching in the temple courts, he said, "How is it that the scribes say the Christ is the son of David?36David himself, in the Holy Spirit, said,'The Lord said to my Lord,"Sit at my right handuntil I put your enemies under your feet."'37David himself calls him 'Lord,' so how can the Christ be David's son?" The large crowd gladly listened to him.

38In his teaching Jesus said, "Beware of the scribes, who like to walk in long robes and be greeted in the marketplaces,39and have the most important seats in the synagogues and the places of honor at feasts.40They also devour widows' houses, and they pray long prayers for people to see. These men will receive greater condemnation."

41Then Jesus sat down across from an offering box in the temple area; he was watching people as they dropped their money into the box. Many rich people put in large amounts of money.42Then a poor widow came and put in two mites, worth about a penny.43He called his disciples and said to them, "Truly I say to you, this poor widow has put in more than all of them who contributed to the offering box.44For all of them gave out of their abundance. But this widow, out of her poverty, put in all of the money which she had to live on."

### Mark 12

## 12:1-6

#### What was a parable?

[12:1]

Jesus used a parable about a vineyard. He did this to talk about Israel. In the same way a farmer makes and protects a vineyard, so God made and protects the nation of Israel. God gave certain leaders permission to care for Israel. He sent prophets to Israel to help the Israelites obey God. However, they did not do what these prophets said to do. Finally, God sent Jesus. That is, he sent his son. Then the Jewish leaders had him killed.

See: Parable; Prophet; Son of God

#### What was a vineyard?

[12:1]

A vineyard was a place where people grew grapes. The man put up plants around the field to protect it from animals. He also built a watchtower. This is a tall tower were people could see far away.

At this time, scholars think the vineyard was owned by a Gentile who did not live in this area. Instead, he had made people pay him money to use his land.

See: Wine (Winepress); Gentile

See: Isaiah 5:1-2

#### Why did the owner of the vineyard send servants?

[12:2]

The owner of the vineyard sent his servants to get what they promised to the owner for using his land. They promised him a certain part of what they grew.

#### Why did the men beat the servants?

[12:3]

These men did not want to give the servant what they promised to give to the owner of the land. Therefore, they beat the servants. They wanted the owner to know they were not going to give him anything and that he should not send any more servants.

## 12:7-12

#### What was an inheritance?

[12:7]

See: Inherit (Inheritance, Heir)

#### What scripture said these words?

[12:10]

See: Psalm 118:22-23

#### Why did the Jewish leaders want to arrest Jesus?

[12:12]

The Jewish leaders wanted to arrest Jesus after they heard what he said. That is, they wanted to catch him so they could kill him. This is because they knew he was speaking about them. Jesus knew the Jewish leaders wanted to kill him.

#### Why were the Jewish leaders afraid of the crowd?

[12:12]

Mark wrote that the Jewish leaders did not try to arrest Jesus. They feared all the people there. Many people thought Jesus was a great man. However, Mark wanted people to know that the Jewish leaders feared the people more than they feared God. They thought they were obeying God by killing Jesus. However, they were not obeying God.

## 12:13-17

#### What was a pharisee?

[12:13]

See: Pharisees

#### What was a Herodian?

[12:13]

A Herodian was someone who served King Herod. He was the leader of the Jews and served the Romans.

#### How did the Jewish leaders try to trap Jesus?

[12:13]

The Jewish leaders tried to trap Jesus. That is, they tried to get Jesus to say something that would cause someone to be angry with him. They wanted Jesus to speak against the leader of the Roman Empire. Or they wanted Jesus to say something that made the Jew.

The Jewish leaders said several things to Jesus.

1. The Jewish leaders did not believe the things Jesus said. However, they said he spoke truth when they really thought he lied.
2. The Jewish leaders said Jesus did not care what anyone thinks. That is, Jesus will say true things. He will not stop saying these things because someone does not want him to say these things. He did not say things so that people would like him.
3. Jesus does not show partiality. That is, Jesus did not favor one person over another.
4. Jesus taught the way of God. That is, he taught them about hte way God wanted them to live. The Jewish leaders did not believe this. They would have obeyed Jesus if they had believed this.

Because of this, Jesus said the Jewish leaders were hypocrites. That is, they said one thing, but they did not believe it. Or they said something and did not do it.

The Jewish leaders asked Jesus about paying taxes. The Romans made the Jews pay taxes to them every year. The Jews had to pay the Romans to rule them. The Jews did not like having to pay this tax. The Jews would have been angry if Jesus said that the Jews should pay this tax to the Romans. The Romans would be angry if Jesus said that the Jews should not pay this tax to the Romans.

#### What did Jesus say to the Jewish leaders?

[12:15]

Jesus told the Jewish leaders to give him a Roman coin. This coin had the face of the Roman emperor on it. This man was called Caesar. The coin also had certain words on it. These words said that Caesar was God.

Jesus said that the Jews needed to obey Caesar, but they also needed to obey God more. Jesus wanted people to know that Caesar was not God and that God gave permission to Caesar to rule. He also wanted people to know that he did not think that Caesar was God.

See: Romans 13:1-7

#### What was a denarius?

[12:15]

See: Denarius

## 12:18-27

#### What did the Sadducees think happened when people died?

[12:18]

The Sadducees did not think that people would be resurrected. That is, they did not think people would go to heaven or hell when they died. They did not believe in many things taught in the Bible.

See: Sadducees; Resurrect (Resurrection) ; Heaven; Hell

#### Why did the Sadducees ask Jesus this question?

[12:19, 12:20, 12:21, 12:22, 12:23]

The Law of Moses taught the people of Israel how to care for a woman whose husband died. In ancient Israel, a woman became very poor when her husband died and she had no children. Therefore, the Law of Moses said that the husband’s brother would marry her. He would care for her. They had children who would inherit the dead husband’s land.

The Sadducees tried to trap Jesus by asking this question. They wanted Jesus to say something that would make people angry. They thought their question proved that no one would be resurrected.

See: Law of Moses; Sadducees; Inherit (Inheritance, Heir); Resurrect (Resurrection)

#### How did Jesus answer the Sadducees?

[12:24, 12:25]

Jesus told the Sadducees that they thought the wrong things. They did not know the Scriptures because they only believed God gave Israel the first five books of the Old Testament. They did not understand many things about God. Jesus told them that people were married on the earth. God wanted them to do this. They had children and helped each other. However, in heaven, people will worship God. They do not need to be married. Therefore, people will be like the angels who do not get married.

See: Sadducees; Heaven; Worship; Angel

#### Why did Jesus speak about Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob?

[12:26]

The Sadducees believed that God only gave Israel the first five books of the Old Testament. Here, Jesus said the same thing God said to Moses. When God said these words, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob were dead. However, God spoke about them in the same way he would speak about someone who is alive. The Sadducees did not understand the parts of the Bible in which they believed.

See: Exodus 3:6

## 12:28-34

#### Why did the scribe ask Jesus about the greatest commandment?

[12:28]

The scribe heard what Jesus said to the Sadducees. Therefore, he wanted to know how Jesus would answer his question. At this time, scholars asked each other about which of the commandments was the greatest. However, they did not agree which was the greatest.

See: Scribe; Command (Commandment); Sadducees

#### Why did Jesus say that these two commandments were the greatest?

[12:29, 12:30]

Jesus told the scribes that the two greatest commandments were to love God and to love other people. A person will be doing all of the other things God commands people to do if they do these two things.

See: Scribe; Command (Commandment)

#### Why did the Scribes call Jesus teacher?

[12:32]

In ancient Israel, many people called Jesus “teacher.” They believed that he was a teacher. However, they would know that Jesus was much more than a teacher if they believed in him.

#### How is God one?

[12:32]

God is one because there is only one God. There is nothing or no one else like him.

See: Trinity

#### What were burnt offerings and sacrifices?

[12:33]

See: Burnt Offering; Sacrifice

#### Why did Jesus say that the Scribe was “not far from the kingdom of God”?

[12:34]

Jesus said this man “was not far from the kingdom of God.” That is, he was close to believing in Jesus and becoming part of God’s kingdom.

See: Scribe; Kingdom of God

#### Why did people stop asking Jesus questions?

[12:34]

Mark wrote that people stopped asking Jesus questions. People tried to trap Jesus by asking him questions. They wanted Jesus to say something that made people angry. However, they knew they could not trap Jesus by asking him questions because of the way Jesus answered them.

## 12:35-44

#### What was a temple court?

[12:35]

See: Temple Courts

#### Why did Jesus ask this question?

[12:35]

Jesus asked people about something the scribes said while he was in the temple. The messiah was the “son of David.” That is, he would be a descendant of King David (see: 2 Samuel 7). However, David said that the messiah was his master (see: Psalm 110). He knew people would not know how this would happen.

See: Temple; Scribe; Messiah (Christ); Covenant with David

#### What did David say?

[12:36]

David said, “the Lord said to my lord.” That is, God said to the one who ruled David. He will sit at God’s right hand. That is, God will honor him. God will also make the messiah’s enemies his footstool. That is, one day God will defeat all of the messiah’s enemies.

See: Messiah (Christ); Trinity

#### Why did Jesus warn people about the Scribes?

[12:38]

Jesus warned people about the scribes. They only did things so that people honored them. However, they did not honor God. God gave them permission to care for the Jewish people. However, they did not do this. Therefore, God will punish them more severely than those people who are not leaders.

See: Scribe

#### What was an offering box?

[12:41]

An offering box was a place in the temple where people put money. The people serving in the temple used this money. People worshipped God by giving money in this way.

See: Offer (Offering); Temple; Worship

#### Why was the woman’s offering better than the offering of rich people?

[12:43, 12:44]

Giving money to the temple was an offering to God. Jesus told them that God did not care who gave the most money. The woman gave more to God because she gave everything she had to God. The rich people only gave a part of what they had to God. They kept most of what they had for themselves. However, the woman gave all she had for her to live.

See: Temple; Offer (Offering)

#### Mark 12:1

##### Then Jesus began to teach them

The word "them" here refers to the chief priests, the scribes, and the elders to whom Jesus had been talking in the previous chapter.

##### put a hedge around it

He put a barrier around the vineyard. It could have been a row of shrubs, a fence, or a stone wall.

##### dug a pit for a winepress

"carved a pit into rock for the winepress" or "he made a vat to collect the juice from the winepress"

##### leased the vineyard to vine growers

The owner still owned the vineyard, but he allowed the vine growers to take care of it. When the grapes became ripe, they were to give some of them to the owner and keep the rest.

#### Mark 12:2

##### At the right time

"When the time came to harvest the grapes"

#### Mark 12:3

##### But they took him

"But the vine growers took the servant"

##### empty-handed

"without any grapes"

#### Mark 12:4

##### he sent to them

"the owner of the vineyard sent to the vine growers"

##### they wounded him in the head

"they beat that one on the head, and they hurt him"

#### Mark 12:5

##### yet another ... many others

"yet another servant ... many other servants"

##### They treated many others in the same way

"They also mistreated many other servants whom he sent"

#### Mark 12:6

##### a beloved son

"his beloved son"

#### Mark 12:7

##### the heir

"the owner's heir"

##### the inheritance

"this vineyard"

#### Mark 12:8

##### They seized him

"The vine growers seized the son"

#### Mark 12:9

##### Therefore, what will the owner of the vineyard do?

"So I will tell you what the owner of the vineyard will do."

##### destroy

kill

##### will give the vineyard to others

"he will give the vineyard to vine growers to care for it"

#### Mark 12:10

##### Have you not read this scripture?

"Surely you have read this scripture." or "You should remember this scripture."

##### has been made the cornerstone

"the Lord made into the cornerstone"

#### Mark 12:11

##### This was from the Lord

"The Lord has done this"

##### it is marvelous in our eyes

"we have seen it and think that it is marvelous" or "we think that it is wonderful"

#### Mark 12:12

##### sought a way

"wanted to find a way"

##### they were afraid of the crowd

"but they feared what the crowd would do if they arrested him"

##### against them

"to accuse them"

#### Mark 12:13

##### Then they sent

"Then the Jewish leaders sent"

##### the Herodians

This was the name of an informal political party that supported Herod Antipas.

##### to trap him

"to trick him"

#### Mark 12:14

##### what people think is not a concern to you

"you are not concerned about what people think of you" or "you do not try to win people's favor"

##### you do not show partiality to anyone

"you do not judge people by how they look" or "you judge people by what is in their hearts"

#### Mark 12:15

##### Jesus knew their hypocrisy

"Jesus knew that they did not really want to know what God wanted them to do"

##### Why do you test me?

"I know you are trying to make me say something wrong so you can accuse me."

##### denarius

This coin was worth a day's wages.

#### Mark 12:16

##### likeness and inscription

"picture and name"

##### They said, "Caesar's

"They said, 'They are Caesar's likeness and inscription"

#### Mark 12:17

##### Give to Caesar the things that are Caesar's

"Give to the Roman government the things that belong to the Roman government"

##### and to God

"and give to God"

##### They marveled at him

"They marveled at him and at what he had said"

#### Mark 12:18

##### who say there is no resurrection

"who say there is no resurrection from the dead"

#### Mark 12:19

##### wrote for us

"wrote for us Jews."

##### the man should take the brother's wife

"the man should marry his brother's wife"

##### raise up children for his brother

"have a son who will be considered to be the dead brother's son"

#### Mark 12:20

##### There were seven brothers

"Suppose there were seven brothers"

##### the first

the first brother

##### the first took a wife

"the first brother married a woman."

#### Mark 12:21

##### the second took her

"the second married her."

##### the third in the same way

"the third brother married her as his other bothers had done, and he also died leaving no children"

#### Mark 12:22

##### The seven

"The seven brothers"

##### The seven left no children

"Eventually all seven brothers married that woman one by one, but none of them had any children with her, and one by one they died"

#### Mark 12:23

##### In the resurrection, when they rise again, whose wife will she be?

"Now tell us whose wife she will be in the resurrection, when they all rise again."

#### Mark 12:24

##### you do not know the scriptures

This means that they do not understand what is written in the Old Testament scriptures.

##### the power of God

"how powerful God is"

#### Mark 12:25

##### For when they rise

Here the word "they" refers to the brothers and the woman from the example.

##### rise

Waking and getting up from sleep is a metaphor for becoming alive after having been dead.

##### nor are given in marriage

"and no one gives them in marriage"

##### heaven

This refers to the place where God lives.

#### Mark 12:26

##### the book of Moses

"the book that Moses wrote"

##### the account about the bush

"the passage about the burning bush" or "the words about the fiery bush"

##### the bush

This refers to a shrub, a woody plant that is smaller than a tree.

##### how God spoke to him

"about when God spoke to Moses"

##### I am the God of Abraham ... Isaac ... Jacob

This means that Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob worship God. These men have died physically, but they are still alive spiritually and still worship God.

#### Mark 12:27

##### not the God of the dead, but of the living

"not the God of dead people, but the God of living people who are alive physically and spiritually"

##### You are quite mistaken

"When you say that dead people do not rise again, you are completely mistaken"

#### Mark 12:28

##### He asked him

"The scribe asked Jesus"

#### Mark 12:29

##### The most important is

"The most important commandment is"

#### Mark 12:31

##### love your neighbor as yourself

"love your neighbor as much as you love yourself"

##### than these

Here the word "these" refers to the two commandments that Jesus had just told the people.

#### Mark 12:32

##### Good, Teacher

"Good answer, Teacher" or "Well said, Teacher"

##### God is one

"there is only one God"

##### that there is no other

"that there is no other God"

#### Mark 12:33

##### with all the heart ... all the understanding ... all the strength

These three phrases are used together to mean "completely" or "earnestly."

##### to love one's neighbor as oneself

"to love your neighbor as much as you love yourself"

##### is even more than

"is even more important than" or "is even more pleasing to God than"

#### Mark 12:34

##### You are not far from the kingdom of God

"You are close to submitting to God as king"

##### no one dared

"everyone was afraid"

#### Mark 12:35

##### While Jesus was teaching in the temple courts, he said

"Later, while Jesus was teaching in the temple area, he said to the people"

##### How is it that the scribes say the Christ is the son of David?

"Consider why the scribes say the Christ is the son of David."

##### the son of David

"a descendant of David"

#### Mark 12:36

##### David himself

"It was David who"

##### in the Holy Spirit

"inspired by the Holy Spirit"

##### said, 'The Lord said to my Lord

"said about the Christ, 'The Lord God said to my Lord"

##### Sit at my right hand

"Sit in the place of honor beside me"

##### until I put your enemies under your feet

"until I completely defeat your enemies"

#### Mark 12:37

##### calls him 'Lord,'

Here the word "him" refers to the Christ.

##### so how can the Christ be David's son?

"so consider how the Christ can be a descendant of David"

#### Mark 12:38

##### be greeted in the marketplaces

"to have people greet them respectfully in the marketplaces"

#### Mark 12:39

##### the most important seats ... the places of honor

"to sit in the most important seats ... to have people seat them in the places of honor"

#### Mark 12:40

##### They also devour widows' houses

"They also cheat widows in order to steal their houses from them"

##### widows' houses

"everything from helpless people"

##### These men will receive greater condemnation

"God will certainly punish them with greater condemnation" or "God will certainly punish them severely"

##### will receive greater condemnation

"will receive greater condemnation than other people"

#### Mark 12:41

##### an offering box

This box, which everyone could use, held temple offerings.

#### Mark 12:42

##### two mites

"two small copper coins." These were the least valuable coins available.

##### worth about a penny

Translate "penny" with the name of the smallest coin in your language if you have one that is worth very little.

#### Mark 12:43

##### He called

"Jesus called"

##### all of them who contributed to

"all the other people who put money into"

#### Mark 12:44

##### abundance

much wealth, many valuable things

##### her poverty

"lack" or "the little she had"

##### to live on

"to survive on"

Chapter 13

1As Jesus was walking away from the temple, one of his disciples said to him, "Teacher, look at the wonderful stones and wonderful buildings!"

2Jesus said to him, "Do you see these great buildings? Not one stone will be left on another which will not be torn down."

3As he sat on the Mount of Olives opposite the temple, Peter, James, John, and Andrew asked him privately,4"Tell us, when will these things happen? What will be the sign when all these things are about to happen?"

5Jesus began to say to them, "Be careful that no one leads you astray.6Many will come in my name and say, 'I am he,' and they will lead many astray.7When you hear of wars and rumors of wars, do not be frightened; these things must happen, but the end is not yet.8For nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom. There will be earthquakes in many places, and famines. These are the beginnings of birth pains.

9"Be on your guard. They will give you over to councils, and you will be beaten in synagogues. You will stand before both governors and kings for my sake, as a testimony to them.10But the gospel must first be proclaimed to all the nations.11When they arrest you and hand you over, do not worry about what you should say. For in that hour, what you should say will be given to you; it will not be you who speak, but the Holy Spirit.12Brother will deliver up brother to death, and a father his child. Children will rise up against their parents and cause them to be put to death.13You will be hated by everyone because of my name. But whoever endures to the end, that person will be saved.

14"When you see the abomination of desolation standing where it should not be standing" (let the reader understand), "let those who are in Judea flee to the mountains,15let him who is on the housetop not go down into the house or take anything out of it,16and let him who is in the field not return to take his cloak.17But woe to those who are pregnant and to those who are nursing infants in those days!18Pray that it might not occur in the winter.19For those will be days of great tribulation, such as has not been from the beginning of creation, which God created, until now, no, nor ever will be again.20Unless the Lord had shortened the days, no flesh would be saved. But for the sake of the elect, those whom he chose, he cut short the days.21Then if anyone says to you, 'Look, here is the Christ!' or 'Look, there he is!' do not believe it.22For false Christs and false prophets will appear and will give signs and wonders so as to deceive, if possible, even the elect.23Be on guard! I have told you all these things ahead of time.

24"But after the tribulation of those days,'the sun will be darkened,the moon will not give its light,25the stars will fall from the sky,and the powers that are in the heavenswill be shaken.'26Then they will see the Son of Man coming in the clouds with great power and glory.27Then he will send his angels and he will gather together his elect from the four winds, from the ends of the earth to the ends of the sky.

28"Learn a lesson from the fig tree. As soon as the branch becomes tender and puts out its leaves, you know that summer is near.29So also, when you see these things happening, recognize that he is near, close to the gates.30Truly I say to you, this generation will not pass away until all of these things occur.31Heaven and earth will pass away, but my words will never pass away.32But concerning that day or that hour, no one knows, not even the angels in heaven, nor the Son, but the Father.

33"Be alert! Watch, because you do not know what time it is. [1](#footnote-target-1)34It is like a man who goes on a journey—he leaves his house and puts his servants in charge of the house, each one with his work, and he commands the doorkeeper to stay alert.35Therefore stay alert because you do not know when the master of the house will come home; it could be in the evening, at midnight, when the rooster crows, or in the morning.36If he comes suddenly, do not let him find you sleeping.37What I say to you I say to everyone: Watch!"

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some ancient copies of the Greek text read: Be alert! Watch and pray .

### Mark 13

## 13:1-13

#### Why did the disciples talk about the buildings with Jesus?

[13:1]

The disciples were amazed by the buildings that made the temple in Jerusalem. Jesus saw that the people used the temple to make money. He also saw that the Jewish leaders rejected Jesus. Therefore, he prophesied about the temple being destroyed. The destruction of the temple happened about 40 years after Jesus returned to heaven. However, it was not completely destroyed. There is one wall that still remains from the temple in Jerusalem.

See: Disciple; Temple; Prophecy (Prophesy) ; Heaven

See Map: Jerusalem; Mount of Olives

#### What was a sign?

[13:4]

See: Sign

#### What did Jesus teach about his return to earth?

[13:5, 13:6, 13:7, 13:8]

Jesus told his disciples about things that would happen when he returned to the earth. However, the disciples did not know that he would die. They did not know it would be a long period of time before these things happened. Therefore, Jesus warned them. Many people will say that they are Jesus. Many people will believe these people who say that they are Jesus. However, Jesus talked about certain things that must happen before he returns to the earth.

1. There will be wars and rumors of wars. That is, people will worry about wars and there will be many wars.
2. There will be many earthquakes and famines. Jesus said these are “birth pains.” This was a metaphor to say that difficult things will happen before he returns to earth. People and the whole world will be judged and punished before the earth is made new again.
3. People who worship Jesus will be persecuted.
4. The gospel will be told to all nations. Some scholars think this means that every person will hear the gospel. Other scholars think this means that someone from every nation will hear the gospel.
5. People will have their children, brothers, sisters, and parents killed because their family are Christians.

See: Disciple; Jesus' Return to Earth; Messiah (Christ); Metaphor; Persecute (Persecution); Gospel

#### What will happen when Christians are persecuted?

[13:9]

Jesus warned the disciples that Chrsitians will be persecuted before he returns to the earth. The Holy Spirit will help Christians when they are persecuted. He will tell them what to say to leaders and those who persecute them.

See: Disciple; Persecute (Persecution) ; Jesus' Return to Earth; Holy Spirit

#### How will the person who is persecuted be saved?

[13:13]

Jesus said that the person who endures to the end when persecuted will be saved. Scholars think Jesus was talking about different things when he said these words.

Some Christians reject Jesus when they are persecuted. Some scholars think when they do this, they are no longer at peace with God and will not live with him forever. Some Christians reject Jesus when they are persecuted. Other scholars think when they do this, God will save them. That is, God will rescue them from persecution and they will go to be with God. Some people say they are Chrsitians, but they reject Jesus when persecuted. Other scholars think when they do this, they prove they were never truly Christians.

See: Persecute (Persecution); Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins); Heaven

## 13:14-23

#### What is the abomination of desolation?

[13:14]

Jesus talked about an “abomination of desolation.” This was when someone who rejected God did something that greatly dishonored God. Daniel also wrote about this (see: Daniel 7:27; 11:31; 12:11). Some scholars think Daniel wrote about a Gentile leader who sacrificed an unclean animal on the altar in the temple. Some scholars think Jesus talked about a time when the antichrist would sacrifice something in the temple or claim to be God in the temple. Other scholars think Jesus spoke about a time when people would no longer go to the temple. Other scholars think it is some type of idolatry.

Some scholars think Jesus spoke about a time 40 years after he returned to heaven. Other scholars think Jesus spoke about a time near to his return to the earth (see: Revelation 4-19).

See: Gentile; Sacrifice; Clean and Unclean; Altar; Temple; Antichrist; Idolatry (Idol); Heaven

#### What did Jesus want people to do when they saw the abomination of desolation?

[13:14, 13:15, 13:16]

Jesus wanted people to flee and go away from Jerusalem when people saw the abomination of desolation. Jesus warned them. He wanted them to know that he will judge people at this time. He warned people by telling them that they will not want to be alive when these things happen.

See: Woe; Tribulation

#### Who will Jesus save?

[13:20]

Jesus warned people about a time of great tribulation. That is a time when there will be great trouble because God will judge people. At this time, if God did not stop punishing people, no one would be saved. That is, everyone would die. When he said this, he was not talking about being separated from God forever. He was talking about someone dying on the earth, both Christians and non-Christians.

See: Elect (Election); Tribulation

#### Why should people not believe that Jesus returned?

[13:21]

Jesus warned about a time when many people would say they are the messiah or that they are Jesus who returned to earth. However, everyone will know that Jesus has returned to earth when he returns (see: Matthew 24:23-27). Therefore, people should not believe other people who say this even if they do miracles and signs. However, many Christians will believe these false messiahs and false prophets.

See: Messiah (Christ); Jesus' Return to Earth; Prophet; Sign; Miracle

## 13:24-37

#### When are the days of tribulation?

[13:24]

Jesus spoke about certain days of tribulation or trouble. Some scholars think he spoke about the difficult times that happened soon after he returned to earth. Other scholars think he spoke about the time near his return to the earth.

See: Tribulation; Jesus' Return to Earth

#### Why did Jesus talk about things that happen in the sky?

[13:24, 13:25]

Jesus spoke about certain things people could see in the sky. Some scholars think these things will actually happen just before Jesus returns to the earth. Other scholars think this was a metaphor. Just as the stars will fall from the sky, so the rulers of the world will be destroyed. Jesus said these things to warn people.

See: Joel 2:10; 3:15; Ezekiel 32:7-8)

See: Metaphor

#### What will people see?

[13:26]

The people will see the Son of Man coming to the earth with glory. Jesus would return to the earth and everyone would know that he is God.

See: Son of Man; Glory (Glorify); Jesus is God; Jesus' Return to Earth

#### What will Jesus do when he returns to the earth?

[13:27]

When Jesus returns to the earth, he will bring angels who serve him. He will gather all Christians from all over the world and bring them to himself.

See: Jesus' Return to Earth; Angel

#### Why did Jesus talk about a fig tree?

[13:28]

Jesus talked about a fig tree to help people understand the things he said. This was a metaphor. When a fig tree does certain things, people know that the seasons are changing. He wanted people to know that he was going to return to the earth soon when the things he spoke about happened.

See: Metaphor; Hebrew Calendar (Seasons in Israel)

#### When did these things happen?

[13:30]

Jesus prophesied that these things happened before the people listening to him died. Some scholars think that these things happened 40 years after he said these things. Other scholars think Jesus spoke about people in the future who lived when they saw the things he spoke about in this passage. Once these things happened, Jesus would return to the earth in a few years.

Jesus said that heaven and earth will end, but his words will not change. The apostle spoke about heaven and earth ending (see: Revelation 21). However, these things must happen.

Jesus said that he did not know when these things would happen. Only God the Father knew these things will happen.

See: Prophecy (Prophesy) ; Jesus' Return to Earth; Heaven; God the Father; Apostle

#### What did Jesus tell people to do?

[13:33]

In some ancient copies of the Greek New Testament, Jesus told people to “watch.” In fewer ancient copies of the Greek New Testament, Jesus told people to “watch and pray.”

#### Why did Jesus talk about a man going on a journey?

[13:34]

Jesus spoke about a man going on a journey. This was a metaphor. He wanted people to be ready for him to return to the earth. When he returns, Jesus’ followers will need to tell Jesus about the things they did while they were waiting for him to return. Jesus wanted Christians to serve him. He wanted them to tell other people about Jesus and the gospel. He wanted Christians to do things that honor God.

See: Jesus' Return to Earth; Metaphor; Gospel

#### Mark 13:1

##### the wonderful stones and wonderful buildings

"the wonderful buildings and the wonderful stones that they are made of"

#### Mark 13:2

##### Do you see these great buildings? Not one stone

"Look at these great buildings! Not one stone" or "You see these great buildings now, but not one stone"

##### Not one stone will be left on another which will not be torn down

"Not one stone will remain on top of another, for enemy soldiers will come and destroy these buildings"

#### Mark 13:3

##### As he sat on the Mount of Olives opposite the temple, Peter

"After arriving at the Mount of Olives, which is opposite the temple, Jesus sat down. Then Peter"

##### privately

when they were alone

#### Mark 13:4

##### these things happen ... are about to happen

"these things happen to the buildings of the temple ... are about to happen to the temple buildings"

#### Mark 13:5

##### to them

"to his disciples"

##### leads you astray

"deceives you"

#### Mark 13:6

##### lead many astray

"deceive many people"

##### in my name

"claiming my authority" or 2) Alternate translation: "claiming that God sent them."

##### I am he

"I am the Christ"

#### Mark 13:7

##### hear of wars and rumors of wars

Possible meanings are 1) "hear the sounds of wars close by and news of wars far away" or 2) "hear of wars that have started and reports about wars that are about to start"

##### but the end is not yet

"but it is not yet the end of the world" or "but the end of the world will not happen until later" or "but the end of the world will be later"

#### Mark 13:8

##### kingdom against kingdom

"kingdom will rise against kingdom" or "the people of one kingdom will fight against the people of another kingdom"

##### These are the beginnings of birth pains

"These events will be like the first pains a woman suffers when she is about to bear a child"

#### Mark 13:9

##### Be on your guard

"Be ready for what people will do to you"

##### will give you over to councils

"take you and put you under the control of councils"

##### you will be beaten

"people will beat you"

##### You will stand before

"You will be put on trial before" or "You will be brought to trial and judged by"

##### for my sake

"because of me" or "on account of me"

##### as a testimony to them

"and testify to them about me" or "and you will tell them about me"

#### Mark 13:10

##### But the gospel must first be proclaimed to all the nations

"But the gospel must first be proclaimed to all the nations before the end will come"

#### Mark 13:11

##### hand you over

"give you over to the authorities"

##### but the Holy Spirit

"but the Holy Spirit, who will speak through you"

#### Mark 13:12

##### Brother will deliver up brother to death

"One brother will put another brother under the control of people who will kill him" or "Brothers will put their brothers under the control of people who will kill them."

##### Brother ... brother

This refers to both brothers and sisters.

##### a father his child

"fathers will deliver up their children to death" or "fathers will betray their children, handing them over to be killed"

##### Children will rise up against their parents

"Children will oppose their parents"

##### cause them to be put to death

"cause the authorities to sentence the parents to die" or "the authorities will kill the parents"

#### Mark 13:13

##### You will be hated by everyone

"Everyone will hate you"

##### because of my name

"because of me" or "because you believe in me"

##### whoever endures to the end, that person will be saved

"whoever stays faithful to God to the end, God will save that person" or "God will save whoever stays faithful to God to the end"

##### to the end

Possible meanings are 1) "to the end of his life" or 2) "to the end of that time of trouble"

#### Mark 13:14

##### the abomination of desolation

"the shameful thing that defiles the things of God"

##### standing where it should not be standing

"standing in the temple, where it should not be standing"

##### let the reader understand

"may everyone who reads this understand what it means"

#### Mark 13:16

##### not return

"not return to his house"

#### Mark 13:17

##### those who are nursing infants

women who give babies breast milk

#### Mark 13:18

##### the winter

"the cold season" or "the cold, rainy season."

#### Mark 13:19

##### such as has not been from the beginning

There has never been a tribulation as terrible as this one will be.

##### no, nor ever will be again

"and greater than there will ever be again" or "and after that tribulation, there will never again be a tribulation like it"

#### Mark 13:20

##### Unless the Lord had shortened the days

"If the Lord had not decided that he would shorten those days"

##### had shortened the days

"had reduced the days of suffering" or "had shortened the time of suffering"

##### no flesh would be saved

"no one would be saved" or "everyone would die"

##### for the sake of the elect

"in order to help the the elect, those whom he chose"

#### Mark 13:22

##### false Christs

"people who claim they are Christ"

##### so as to deceive, if possible, even the elect

"in order to deceive people, and even deceive the elect, if that is possible"

#### Mark 13:23

##### Be on guard

"Be watchful" or "Be alert"

##### I have told you all these things ahead of time

"I have told you all these things ahead of time to warn you"

#### Mark 13:24

##### the sun will be darkened

"the sun will become dark"

##### the moon will not give its light

"the moon will not shine" or "the moon will be dark"

#### Mark 13:25

##### the stars will fall from the sky

"the stars will fall from their places in the sky"

##### the powers that are in the heavens will be shaken

"the powers in the heavens will shake" or "God will shake the powers that are in the sky"

##### the powers that are in the heavens

These words could refer to 1) the sun, moon, and stars or 2) powerful spiritual beings

#### Mark 13:27

##### he will gather

"they will gather" or "his angels will gather"

##### the four winds

"the north, south, east, and west" or "all parts of the earth"

##### from the ends of the earth to the ends of the sky

"from every place on earth"

#### Mark 13:28

##### the branch becomes tender and puts out its leaves

"its branches become tender and their leaves begin to sprout"

##### tender

"green and soft"

##### summer

the warm part of the year or the growing season

#### Mark 13:29

##### these things

"these things I have just described"

##### he is near

"the Son of Man is near"

##### close to the gates

"and is almost here"

#### Mark 13:30

##### will not pass away

"will not die" or "will not end"

##### until all of these things

The phrase "these things" refers to the days of tribulation.

#### Mark 13:31

##### Heaven and earth

"The sky, the earth, and everything in them"

##### will pass away

"will cease to exist."

##### my words will never pass away

"my words will never lose their power"

#### Mark 13:32

##### that day or that hour

"that day or that hour that the Son of Man will return" or "the day or the hour that I will return"

##### no one knows, not even the angels in heaven, nor the Son, but the Father

"no one knows—neither the angels in heaven nor the Son know—but the Father" or "neither the angels in heaven nor the Son know; no one knows but the Father"

##### the angels in heaven

Here "heaven" refers to the place where God lives.

##### but the Father

"but only the Father knows"

#### Mark 13:33

##### what time it is

"when all these events will happen"

#### Mark 13:34

##### each one with his work

"telling each one what work he should do"

#### Mark 13:35

##### it could be in the evening

"he could return in the evening"

##### rooster crows

The rooster is a bird that "crows" very early in the morning by making a loud call.

#### Mark 13:36

##### find you sleeping

"find you not ready for his return"

Chapter 14

1It was now two days before the Passover and the Festival of Unleavened Bread. The chief priests and the scribes were seeking ways to stealthily arrest Jesus and then kill him.2For they were saying, "Not during the festival, so that a riot does not arise among the people."

3While Jesus was in Bethany in the house of Simon the leper, as he was reclining at the table, a woman came to him having an alabaster jar of very expensive perfume, which was pure nard. She broke the jar and poured the nard on his head.4But there were some who were angry. They spoke among themselves and said, "What is the reason for the waste of this perfume?5This perfume could have been sold for more than three hundred denarii, and given to the poor." Then they scolded her.

6But Jesus said, "Leave her alone. Why are you troubling her? She has done a beautiful thing for me.7You always have the poor with you, and whenever you desire you can do good to them, but you will not always have me.8She has done what she could. She has anointed my body for burial.9Truly I say to you, wherever the gospel is preached in the whole world, what this woman has done will be spoken of, in memory of her."

10Then Judas Iscariot, one of the twelve, went away to the chief priests so that he might give him over to them.11When the chief priests heard it, they were glad and promised to give him money. He began looking for an opportunity to give him over to them.

12On the first day of unleavened bread, when they sacrificed the Passover lamb, his disciples said to him, "Where do you want us to go to prepare, so you may eat the Passover meal?"

13He sent two of his disciples and said to them, "Go into the city, and a man bearing a pitcher of water will meet you. Follow him.14Where he enters a house, follow him in and say to the owner of that house, 'The Teacher says, "Where is my guest room where I will eat the Passover with my disciples?"'15He will show you a large furnished upper room that is ready. Make the preparations for us there."16The disciples left and went to the city. They found everything as he had said to them, and they prepared the Passover meal.

17When it was evening, he came with the twelve.18As they were lying down at the table and eating, Jesus said, "Truly I say to you, one of you eating with me will betray me."

19They were all very sorrowful, and one by one they said to him, "Surely not I?"

20Jesus answered and said to them, "It is one of the twelve, the one now dipping bread with me in the bowl.21For the Son of Man will go as it is written about him. But woe to that man through whom the Son of Man is betrayed! It would have been better for him if he had not been born."

22As they were eating, Jesus took bread, blessed it, and broke it. He gave it to them and said, "Take this. This is my body."23He took a cup, gave thanks, and gave it to them, and they all drank from it.24He said to them, "This is my blood of the covenant, the blood that is poured out for many.25Truly I say to you, I will not drink again of this fruit of the vine until that day when I drink it new in the kingdom of God."

26When they had sung a hymn, they went out to the Mount of Olives.27Jesus said to them, "All of you will fall away, for it is written,'I will strike the shepherdand the sheep will be scattered.'28But after I am raised up, I will go ahead of you into Galilee."

29Peter said to him, "Even if all fall away, I will not."

30Jesus said to him, "Truly I say to you, today—yes, this very night—before the rooster crows twice you will deny me three times."

31But Peter said emphatically, "If I must die with you, I will not deny you." They all made the same promise.

32They came to the place called Gethsemane, and Jesus said to his disciples, "Sit here while I pray."33He took Peter, James, and John with him and began to be distressed and deeply troubled.34He said to them, "My soul is deeply grieved, even to the point of death. Remain here and watch."35Going a little farther, Jesus fell to the ground and prayed that if it were possible the hour might pass from him.36He said, "Abba, Father, all things are possible with you. Remove this cup from me. But not my will, but yours."37He came back and found them sleeping, and he said to Peter, "Simon, are you asleep? Could you not watch for one hour?38Watch and pray that you do not enter into temptation. The spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak."39Again he went away and prayed, and he used the same words.40When he came back again, he found them sleeping, for their eyes were heavy. They did not know what to say to him.41He came the third time and said to them, "Are you still sleeping and taking your rest? Enough! The hour has come. Look! The Son of Man is being betrayed into the hands of sinners.42Get up; let us go. Look, the one who is betraying me is near."

43While he was still speaking, Judas, one of the twelve, arrived, and a large crowd was with him with swords and clubs, from the chief priests, the scribes, and the elders.44Now his betrayer had given them a sign, saying, "The one I kiss is the man. Seize him and lead him away under guard."45When Judas arrived, immediately he came up to Jesus and said, "Rabbi," and he kissed him.46Then they laid hands on him and seized him.47But one of them who stood by drew his sword and struck the servant of the high priest and cut off his ear.

48Jesus said to them, "Do you come out as against a robber, with swords and clubs, to arrest me?49When I was daily with you and I was teaching in the temple, you did not arrest me. But this was done that the scriptures might be fulfilled."50All those with Jesus left him and ran away.

51A young man, wearing only a linen garment that was wrapped around him, was following Jesus. When the men seized him,52he left the linen garment and ran away naked.

53They led Jesus to the high priest. There were gathered with him all the chief priests, the elders, and the scribes.54Now Peter followed him from a distance, as far as the courtyard of the high priest. He sat among the officers, warming himself near the fire.55Now the chief priests and the entire Jewish council were seeking testimony against Jesus so they might put him to death. But they did not find any.56For many brought false testimony against him, but even their testimony did not agree.57Some stood up and brought false testimony against him; they said,58"We heard him say, 'I will destroy this temple made with hands, and in three days I will build another made without hands.'"59Yet even their testimony did not agree.

60The high priest stood up among them and asked Jesus, "Have you no answer? What is it these men testify against you?"61But he was silent and answered nothing. Again the high priest questioned him and said, "Are you the Christ, the Son of the Blessed One?"

62Jesus said, "I am;and you will see the Son of Manwhen he sits at the right hand of powerand comes with the clouds of heaven."

63The high priest tore his garments and said, "Do we still need witnesses?64You have heard the blasphemy. What is your decision?" They all condemned him as one who deserved death.

65Some began to spit on him and to cover his face and strike him with their fists and say to him, "Prophesy!" The officers took him and beat him.

66While Peter was below in the courtyard, one of the servant girls of the high priest came to him.67She saw Peter warming himself, and she looked closely at him and said, "You were also with the Nazarene, Jesus."

68But he denied it, saying, "I neither know nor understand what you are talking about." Then he went out into the gateway. And the rooster crowed. [1](#footnote-target-1)

69But the servant girl saw him and began to say again to those who stood there, "This man is one of them!"

70But he denied it again. After a little while, those who stood there were saying to Peter, "Surely you are one of them, for you also are a Galilean."

71But he began to put himself under curses and to swear, "I do not know this man you are talking about."

72The rooster immediately crowed a second time. Then Peter remembered the words that Jesus had said to him: "Before the rooster crows twice, you will deny me three times," and he broke down and wept.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some ancient copies do not have, And the rooster crowed .

### Mark 14

## 14:1-11

#### What was Passover?

[14:1]

See: Passover

#### What was the Festival of Unleavened Bread?

[14:1]

See: Festival of Unleavened Bread

#### Why did the Jewish leaders want to “stealthily arrest” Jesus?

[14:1]

The chief priests and scribes wanted to “stealthily” arrest Jesus. That is, they wanted to arrest Jesus when no one would know that they were doing it. They did not want to make people angry with them.

See: Chief Priest; Scribe

#### Where was Bethany?

[14:3]

See Map: Bethany

#### What was a leper?

[14:3]

See: Leprosy (Leper)

#### Why was Jesus reclining at the table?

[14:3]

In ancient Israel, people ate by laying down sideways at a table. Jesus did this because he had eaten.

#### What did this woman have?

[14:3]

The woman had a jar with a certain oil that smelled very good. Some people called this perfume. She opened this jar and poured it on Jesus head and feet to honor him. Jesus also said that she anointed him. This prepared his body to be buried. In ancient Israel, people poured these types of oils on a dead person before they buried them.

See: John 12:3

See: Anoint (Anointing)

#### Why did the disciples not want this woman to do this?

[14:4]

The disciples did not want this woman to pour this expensive oil on Jesus. This was because it would only smell good for a short time. However, it could be sold for the same amount of money that someone could make from working for one year. This could be used to help many poor people. Jesus said they were wrong. This was because what she did was a metaphor. That is, she anointed Jesus as a way to prepare him to die for people’s sins so they could be at peace with God. This was greater than helping poor people.

See: Metaphor; Anoint (Anointing)

#### Why did Judas go to the chief priests?

[14:10]

Judas went to the chief priests to help them arrest Jesus. Scholars do not agree why he did this. The priests gave Judas a large amount of money to help them.

See: Matthew 26:15; Exodus 21:32; Zechariah 11:12

See: Chief Priest

## 14:12-21

#### When was the first day of unleavened bread?

[14:12]

The first day of unleavened bread was also the first day of the Festival of Unleavened Bread. This was the day they sacrificed a lamb for the passover.

See: Festival of Unleavened Bread; Sacrifice; Passover

#### Why did the disciples need to prepare for the passover meal?

[14:12]

The disciples needed to prepare for the passover meal. This was because they needed to become clean so they could eat this meal. They also needed to get certain foods ready to eat for this meal.

See: Disciple; Passover; Clean and Unclean

#### Why did Jesus say that one of the disciples would betray him?

[14:18]

After travelling with these twelve disciples for three years, Jesus had one last meal with them. During this meal, he told them that one of the disciples would betray him. This was to fulfill a prophecy spoken about the messiah (see: Psalm 41:9).

The man that betrayed Jesus would be punished for what he did. He would live forever in hell and be punished there forever. That was why Jesus said it would be better for that man to have not been born than to be punished forever in hell.

See: Disciple; Hell; Son of Man; Woe; Prophecy (Prophesy)

## 14:22-31

#### What did Jesus say to the disciples during the passover meal?

[14:22]

Jesus told the disciples about the eating of bread and drinking of wine during this last meal. Some scholars called this the last supper or the Lord’s supper. From that time on, Chrsitians ate bread and drank wine at certain times in order to remember that Jesus died for Christians (see: 1 Corinthians 11:23-25).

See: Disciple; Lord's Supper; Covenant; Kingdom of God; Passover; Atone (Atonement)

#### What was a hymn?

[14:26]

A hymn was a song that was sung to worship God.

#### Where was the Mount of Olives?

[14:26]

See Map: Mount of Olives

#### Why did Jesus say that “all of you will fall away”?

[14:27]

Jesus said that the disciples would “fall away.” That is, they would fall away from Jesus. He said this would fulfill what Zecariah prophesied (see: Zechariah 13:7). This was a metaphor. Jesus was the shepherd and the disciples were the sheep. The disciples would not want people to know they followed Jesus when Jesus died. However, this did not last for very long.

Peter said that he would never do this. However, he said that he did not know Jesus three times that night.

See: Disciple; Fall (Fall Away, Stand); Prophecy (Prophesy) ; Metaphor

## 14:32-42

#### Where was Gethsemane?

[14:32]

See Map: Gethsemane

#### What is a soul?

[14:33]

See: Soul

#### Why was Jesus distressed?

[14:33]

Jesus was distressed when he prayed. That is he had a feeling of great sadness and pain in his soul while he prayed. He knew he was about to die. He was not afraid to die because he knew why he had to die. However, he was distressed because he knew that he was about to be separated from God the Father in some way. He knew separation from God was part of the punishment from God for the sins of all people.

See: Atone (Atonement); Sin; God the Father; Soul

#### Why did Jesus want the hour to pass?

[14:36]

Jesus asked God the Father if it was possible for the hour to pass. That is, he asked God the Father not to make him die. He wanted God to remove the cup. This is a metaphor. He wanted to not have to be punished for all people. However, he was willing to die to obey God.

See: Metaphor; Will of God

#### Why did Jesus want Peter to pray not to enter into temptation?

[14:38]

Jesus wanted Peter to pray. However, Peter could not pray for one hour without falling asleep. Jesus told Peter to pray and ask not to enter into temptation. That is, that he would not be tempted. Peter was about to be tempted to say that he did not know Jesus.

See: Tempt (Temptation)

#### How was the spirit willing but the flesh weak?

[14:38]

Jesus said that the spirit was willing but the flesh was weak. That is, the disciples wanted to stay awake and pray, but their bodies were too tired to remain awake. They could only do these things with the help of the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit wanted to help Peter. Peter just needed to ask for help (see: Psalm 51:12).

See: Holy Spirit; Flesh

#### How has the hour come?

[14:41]

Jesus said the hour has come. That is, the things he talked about things that were about to happen.

#### Who were the sinners?

[14:41]

Jesus said that he was betrayed to sinners. That is, someone would give him to the people who wanted to kill him. These sinners were the Jewish leaders. They were supposed to help people worship God. Instead, they did evil. He knew Judas was about to betray him.

See: Sin

## 14:43-52

#### Who were the chief priests, scribes, and elders?

[143:43]

See: Chief Priest; Scribe; Elder

#### How did Judas kiss Jesus?

[14:44, 14:45]

Judas kissed Jesus on the cheek. In ancient Israel, people often greeted each other in this way.

#### What was a rabbi?

[14:45]

See: Rabbi

#### Why did someone cut off this man’s ear?

[14:47]

Peter tried to stop the Jewish leaders from arresting Jesus (see: John 18:10-11). He did this by cutting off someone’s ear with a sword or knife.

See: High Priest

#### What scriptures does this fulfill?

[14:49]

Jesus said that certain prophecies were fulfilled when the Jewish leaders arrested him. These were prophecies spoken by Isaiah (see: Isaiah 53) and Zechariah (see: Zechariah 13:7).

See: Prophecy (Prophesy) ; Fulfill (Fulfillment)

#### Why did Mark talk about this young man?

[14:51, 14:52]

Scholars think Mark wrote about this young man running away naked because Mark was this young man. He was there when Jesus was arrested. Other scholars think the young man symbolises all people who ran after Jesus’ arrest. This was a fulfillment of prophecy (see: Amos 2:16).

See: Prophecy (Prophesy) ; Symbol; Fulfill (Fulfillment)

## 14:53-65

#### What was the courtyard of the high priest?

[14:54]

The Jewish leaders took Jesus to the high priest. They wanted the high priest to say Jesus had done something wrong so Jesus could be killed. They took him to the courtyard of the high priest. This was outside of where the high priest lived.

See: High Priest

#### What was testimony against Jesus?

[14:55]

The Jewish leaders wanted testimony against Jesus. They wanted people to say Jesus had done something wrong. They wanted them to say that he broke the Law of Moses in a way that he needed to be put to death.

See: Law of Moses; Testify (Testimony)

#### Why did Mark write that the people’s testimony did not agree?

[14:56]

People said that Jesus said things or did things that were wrong in the Law of Moses. However, Mark wrote that what the people said about Jesus did not agree with one another. Mark wrote this because someone could not be punished for something they did wrong unless two people had seen this person doing this wrong thing.

See: Numbers 35:30; Deuteronomy 17:6

See: Law of Moses; Testify (Testimony)

#### What did the high priest do?

[14:60]

The high priest asked Jesus two questions. He asked Jesus if Jesus was going to say anything. The high priest wanted Jesus to say something because he wanted Jesus to say the wrong thing. He also asked Jesus if he was going to say something about what people said about Jesus. The high priest thought Jesus did something written in the Law of Moses that people should not do. However, the high priest did something written in the law of Moses that he should not do. He said that Jesus did something wrong without the testimony of two people agreeing with one another.

See: High Priest; Law of Moses; Testify (Testimony)

#### Why did the high priest ask Jesus if he was the messiah, the son of the blessed one?

[14:61]

The high priest asked Jesus if he was the messiah, the son of the blessed one. He wanted Jesus to say that this was true. The high priest would them say that Jesus blasphemed.

See: High Priest; Messiah (Christ); Blaspheme (Blasphemy)

#### What did Jesus say to the high priest?

[14:62]

Jesus told the high priest, “I am.” He said that he is God when he said this. He then told the high priest that the high priest will see Jesus again when he is next to God in heaven when Jesus returns to the earth to judge the world.

The high priest tore his clothes because he thought Jesus blasphemed God. This was what the high priest did when someone blasphemed. According to the Law of Moses, blasphemy was punished by killing the person who blasphemed.

See: High Priest; Jesus is God; Yahweh (I am); Right Hand; Blaspheme (Blasphemy); Heaven; Law of Moses

#### Why did the people ask Jesus to prophesy?

[14:65]

Many people hit Jesus at the same time. They mocked Jesus. That is, they insulted him. So they asked him to prophesy and tell them which person hit Jesus.

See: Prophecy (Prophesy)

## 14:66-72

#### Why did Peter say that he did not know Jesus?

[14:68]

Peter followed the soldiers who arrested Jesus. However, he did not go near Jesus. He did not want anyone to know he was a disciple of Jesus. He feared being arrested. This is why he said he did not know Jesus.

See: Disciple

#### What did Mark write in 14:68?

[14:68]

Some ancient copies of the Greek New Testament have the words, “then the rooster crowed.” Other, older ancient copies of the Greek New Testament do not have these words. However, Matthew, Luke, and John said that the rooster crowed (see: Matthew 26:74; Luke 22:60; John 18:27). Therefore, the rooster crowed whether or not Mark wrote these words.

See: Differences in the Ancient Copies of the Bible

#### What was a Galillean?

[14:70]

The people in Jerusalem spoke in a different way than the people in Galilee. Because of this, the girl knew Peter lived in Galilee. This was the same place where Jesus and his disciples lived.

See: Disciple

See Map: Galilee

#### Why did Peter begin to curse and swear?

[14:71]

Peter wanted this girl to think he was not a disciple of Jesus. He then swore and cursed himself. That is, he said that God needed to curse him if Peter was lying. He swore to her in the same way someone swears an oath to a judge.

See: Disciple; Swear (Oath); Curse

#### Mark 14:1

##### stealthily

without people noticing

#### Mark 14:2

##### For they were saying

The word "they" refers to the chief priests and the scribes.

##### Not during the festival

"We must not do it during the festival"

#### Mark 14:3

##### he was reclining at the table

In Jesus's culture, when people gathered to eat, they reclined on their sides, propping themselves up on pillows beside a low table.

##### alabaster jar

"beautiful white stone jar"

##### of very expensive perfume, which was pure nard

"that contained expensive, fragrant perfume called nard."

##### on his head

"on Jesus's head"

#### Mark 14:4

##### What is the reason for the waste of this perfume?

"It is terrible that she wasted that perfume!"

#### Mark 14:5

##### This perfume could have been sold

"We could have sold this perfume" or "She could have sold this perfume"

##### three hundred denarii

A denarius is a roman silver coin and it is worth one day's wage.

##### given to the poor

"the money given to poor people"

#### Mark 14:9

##### wherever the gospel is preached

"wherever my followers preach the gospel"

#### Mark 14:10

##### so that he might give him over to them

"in order to arrange with them that he would give Jesus over to them"

##### give him over

"bring him to them so they could capture him" or "put him in their power" or "betray him"

#### Mark 14:11

##### When the chief priests heard it

"When the chief priests heard what he was willing to do for them"

##### give him over to them

"put them in their power" or "betray him to them"

#### Mark 14:12

##### when they sacrificed the Passover lamb

"when it was customary to sacrifice the Passover lamb"

##### eat the Passover

"eat the Passover meal"

#### Mark 14:13

##### bearing a pitcher of water

"carrying a large jar full of water"

#### Mark 14:14

##### The Teacher says, "Where is my guest room ... with my disciples?"

"Our Teacher would like to know where the guest room is where he may eat the Passover with his disciples."

##### guest room

a room for visitors

#### Mark 14:15

##### Make the preparations for us there

"Prepare the meal for us there"

#### Mark 14:16

##### The disciples left

"The two disciples left"

##### as he had said

"as Jesus had said"

#### Mark 14:17

##### he came with the twelve

"he came with the twelve to the house"

#### Mark 14:19

##### one by one

This means that "one at a time" each disciple asked him.

##### Surely not I?

"Surely I am not the one who will betray you!"

#### Mark 14:20

##### dipping bread with me in the bowl

In Jesus's culture, people would often eat bread, dipping it in a shared bowl of sauce or of oil mixed with herbs.

#### Mark 14:21

##### For the Son of Man will go as it is written about him

"For the Son of Man will die in the way that is written in the scriptures"

##### through whom the Son of Man is betrayed

"who betrays the Son of Man"

#### Mark 14:22

##### broke it

"broke it into pieces"

##### Take this. This is my body

"Take this bread. It is my body." Though most understand this to mean that the bread is a symbol of Jesus's body and that it is not actual flesh, it is best to translate this statement literally.

#### Mark 14:23

##### He took a cup

"He took the cup of wine"

#### Mark 14:24

##### This is my blood of the covenant, the blood that is poured out for many

"This is my blood that confirms the covenant, the blood that is poured out so that many may receive the forgiveness of sins"

##### This is my blood

"This wine is my blood." Though most understand this to mean that the wine is a symbol of Jesus's blood and that it is not actual blood, it is best to translate this statement literally.

#### Mark 14:25

##### fruit of the vine

"wine." This is a descriptive way to refer to wine.

##### new

Possible meanings are 1) "again" or 2) "in a new way"

#### Mark 14:26

##### hymn

A hymn is a type of song. It was traditional for them to sing an Old Testament psalm.

#### Mark 14:27

##### will fall away

"will leave me"

##### I will strike

"kill." Here "I" refers to God.

#### Mark 14:28

##### I am raised up

"God raises me from the dead" or "God makes me alive again"

##### I will go ahead of you

"I will go before you"

#### Mark 14:29

##### all fall away

"everyone else falls away" or "everyone else leaves you"

#### Mark 14:30

##### rooster crows

The rooster is a male bird that calls out loudly very early in the morning. When he makes that sound he "crows."

##### twice

two times

##### you will deny me

"you will say that you do not know me"

#### Mark 14:31

##### said emphatically

"said insistently" or "said strongly"

##### If I must die

"Even if I must die"

#### Mark 14:33

##### distressed and deeply troubled

"overwhelmed with sorrow and extremely troubled"

#### Mark 14:34

##### My soul is

"I am"

##### even to the point of death

Jesus feels so much distress and sorrow that he feels like he is about to die, though he knows he will not die until after the sun rises.

#### Mark 14:35

##### if it were possible

"if God would allow it"

##### the hour might pass

"that he would not have to go through this time of suffering"

#### Mark 14:36

##### Abba

a term used by Jewish children to address their father. Since it is followed by "Father," it is best to transliterate this word.

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

##### Remove this cup from me

Jesus speaks of the suffering that he must endure as if it were a cup.

##### But not my will, but yours

"But do not do what I want, do what you want"

#### Mark 14:37

##### found them sleeping

The word "them" refers to Peter, James, and John.

##### Simon, are you asleep? Could you not watch for one hour?

"Simon, you are asleep when I told you to stay awake. You could not even stay awake for one hour."

#### Mark 14:38

##### that you do not enter into temptation

"that you are not tempted"

##### The spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak

"You are willing in your spirit, but you are too weak to do what you want to do" or "You want to do what I say, but you are weak"

##### The spirit ... the flesh

These refer to two different aspects of Peter. "The spirit" is his inmost desires. "The flesh" is his human ability and strength.

#### Mark 14:40

##### for their eyes were heavy

"for they were so sleepy they were having a hard time keeping their eyes open"

#### Mark 14:41

##### He came the third time

"Then he went and prayed again. He returned the third time"

##### Are you still sleeping and taking your rest?

"You are still sleeping and resting!"

##### The hour has come

The time of Jesus's suffering and betrayal is about to begin.

##### The Son of Man is being betrayed

"I, the Son of Man, am being betrayed"

#### Mark 14:44

##### his betrayer

This refers to Judas.

##### The one I kiss is the man

"The man I kiss is the one you want"

#### Mark 14:45

##### he kissed him

"Judas kissed him"

#### Mark 14:46

##### laid hands on him and seized him

"grabbed Jesus and seized him" or "seized him"

#### Mark 14:48

##### Jesus said to them

"Jesus said to the crowd"

##### Do you come out as against a robber, with swords and clubs, to arrest me?

"It is ridiculous that you come here to seize me with swords and clubs, as if I were a robber!"

#### Mark 14:50

##### All those with Jesus

This refers to the disciples.

#### Mark 14:51

##### linen

cloth made from the fibers of a flax plant

##### When the men seized him

"When the men seized that man"

#### Mark 14:52

##### he left the linen garment

Because the man was trying to run away, the others would have grabbed at his clothing, trying to stop him.

#### Mark 14:53

##### There were gathered with him all the chief priests, the elders, and the scribes

"All of the chief priests, the elders, and the scribes had gathered there together"

#### Mark 14:54

##### as far as the courtyard of the high priest

"and he went as far as the courtyard of the high priest"

##### He sat among the officers

"He sat in the courtyard among the officers"

##### the officers

These were probably the servants of the "the chief priests, the elders, and the scribes"

#### Mark 14:55

##### they might put him to death

"they might have Jesus executed" or "they might have someone execute Jesus"

##### But they did not find any

"But they did not find any testimony with which to convict him"

#### Mark 14:56

##### brought false testimony against him

"accused him by speaking false testimony against him"

##### their testimony did not agree

"they contradicted each other"

#### Mark 14:57

##### brought false testimony against him

"accused him by speaking false testimony against him"

#### Mark 14:58

##### We heard him say

"We heard Jesus say." The word "we" refers to the people who brought false testimony against Jesus and does not include the people to whom they are speaking.

##### made with hands ... made without hands

"made by men ... without man's help" or "built by men ... without man's help"

##### in three days

"within three days." This means that the temple would be built within a three-day period.

##### will build another

"will build another temple"

#### Mark 14:60

##### stood up among them

"stood up among the chief priests, scribes, and elders"

##### Have you no answer? What is it these men testify against you?

"Are you not going to reply? What do you say in response to the testimony these men are speaking against you?"

#### Mark 14:61

##### the Son of the Blessed One

"the Son of God"

#### Mark 14:62

##### I am

This likely has a double meaning: 1) to respond to the high priest's question and 2) to call himself "I Am," which is what God called himself in the Old Testament.

##### he sits at the right hand of power

"he sits in the place of honor beside the all-powerful God"

##### comes with the clouds of heaven

"when he comes down through the clouds in the sky"

#### Mark 14:63

##### tore his garments

"tore his garments in outrage"

##### Do we still need witnesses?

"We certainly do not need any more people who will testify against this man!"

#### Mark 14:64

##### You have heard the blasphemy

"You have heard the blasphemy he has spoken"

##### They all

all the people in the room

#### Mark 14:65

##### to cover his face

"to cover his face with a blindfold"

##### Prophesy

"Prophesy who hit you"

##### officers

men who guarded the governor's house

#### Mark 14:66

##### below in the courtyard

"outside in the courtyard"

##### one of the servant girls of the high priest

"one of the servant girls who worked for the high priest"

#### Mark 14:68

##### denied

This means to claim that something is not true. In this case, Peter was saying that what the servant girl said about him was not true.

##### neither know nor understand what you are talking about

"I really do not understand what you are talking about"

#### Mark 14:69

##### one of them

"one of Jesus's disciples" or "one of those who have been with that man they arrested"

#### Mark 14:71

##### to put himself under curses

"to say for God to curse him"

#### Mark 14:72

##### he broke down

"he was overwhelmed with grief" or "he lost control of his emotions"

Chapter 15

1Early in the morning, the chief priests, with the elders and scribes and the entire Jewish council, consulted together. Then they bound Jesus and led him away. They handed him over to Pilate.2Pilate asked him, "Are you the King of the Jews?"

He answered him, "You say so."3The chief priests were accusing him of many things.

4Pilate again asked him, "Do you give no answer? See how many things they are accusing you of!"5But Jesus no longer answered Pilate, and that amazed him.

6Now at the time of the festival, Pilate usually released to them one prisoner, a prisoner they requested.7There was a man called Barabbas in prison with the rebels who had committed murder during the rebellion.8The crowd came to Pilate and began to ask him to do for them as he had done in the past.9Pilate answered them and said, "Do you want me to release to you the King of the Jews?"10For he knew that it was because of envy that the chief priests had handed Jesus over to him.11But the chief priests stirred up the crowd to cry out that Barabbas should be released instead.12Pilate answered them again and said, "What then should I do with the King of the Jews?"

13They shouted again, "Crucify him!"

14Pilate said to them, "What evil has he done?"

But they shouted more and more, "Crucify him."15Pilate wanted to satisfy the crowd, so he released Barabbas to them. He scourged Jesus and then handed him over to be crucified.

16The soldiers led him inside the courtyard (which is the government headquarters), and they called together the whole company of soldiers.17They put a purple robe on Jesus, and they twisted together a crown of thorns and put it on him.18They began to salute him and say, "Hail, King of the Jews!"19They were striking his head with a reed staff and spitting on him. They went to their knees and they bowed down before him.20When they had mocked him, they took off of him the purple robe and put his own garments on him, and then led him out to crucify him.21A certain man, Simon of Cyrene, was coming in from the country (he was the father of Alexander and Rufus), and they forced him to carry his cross.

22The soldiers brought Jesus to the place called Golgotha (which is translated "Place of a Skull").23They offered him wine mixed with myrrh, but he did not drink it.24They crucified him and divided up his garments by casting lots to determine what piece each soldier would take.25It was the third hour when they crucified him.26On a sign they wrote the charge against him, "The king of the Jews."27With him they crucified two robbers, one on the right of him and one on his left.28[1](#footnote-target-1)29Those who passed by insulted him, shaking their heads and saying, "Aha! You who would destroy the temple and rebuild it in three days,30save yourself and come down from the cross!"

31In the same way the chief priests were mocking him with each other, along with the scribes, and said, "He saved others, but he cannot save himself.32Let the Christ, the King of Israel, come down now from the cross, that we may see and believe." Those who were crucified with him also insulted him.

33At the sixth hour, darkness came over the whole land until the ninth hour.34At the ninth hour Jesus cried out with a loud voice, "Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani?" which is interpreted, "My God, my God, why have you abandoned me?"35Some of those standing by heard his words and said, "Look, he is calling for Elijah."

36Someone ran, put sour wine on a sponge, put it on a reed staff, and gave it to him to drink. The man said, "Let us see if Elijah comes to take him down."37Then Jesus cried out with a loud voice and died.

38The curtain of the temple was split in two from the top to the bottom.39When the centurion who stood and faced Jesus saw that he had died in this way, he said, "Truly this man was the Son of God."40There were also women who looked on from a distance. Among them were Mary Magdalene, Mary (the mother of James the younger and of Joses), [2](#footnote-target-2) and Salome.41When he was in Galilee, they followed him and served him. Many other women also came up with him to Jerusalem.

42When evening had come, because it was the Day of Preparation, that is, the day before the Sabbath,43Joseph of Arimathea came there. He was a respected member of the council who was waiting for the kingdom of God. He boldly went in to Pilate and asked for the body of Jesus.44Pilate was amazed that Jesus was already dead; he called the centurion and asked him if Jesus was dead.45When Pilate learned from the centurion that Jesus was dead, he gave the body to Joseph.46Joseph had bought a linen cloth. He took him down from the cross, wrapped him in the linen cloth, and laid him in a tomb that had been cut out of a rock. Then he rolled a stone against the entrance of the tomb.47Mary Magdalene and Mary the mother of Joses saw the place where Jesus was buried.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient copies do not have Mark 15:28, The scripture was fulfilled that says, 'He was counted with the lawless ones.'[2](#footnote-caller-2)The man called Joses here is called Joseph in Mark 6:3. The name Joseph represents how the name was spelled in Hebrew, and the name Joses represents how his name was spelled in Greek.

### Mark 15

## 15:1-15

#### What was the Jewish council?

[15:1]

See: Jewish Council (sanhedrin); Chief Priest; Elder; Scribe

#### Why did the Jewish leaders take Jesus to Pilate?

[15:1]

Pilate was a Roman leader of Jerusalem. At this time, the Jews were not allowed to kill someone if the person was guilty of a crime. Therefore, the Jewish leaders needed permission from Pilate to have Jesus killed.

#### Why did Pilate ask Jesus if Jesus was the king of the Jews?

[15:2]

The Jewish leaders wanted to kill Jesus because they said he spoke blasphemy against God (see: Matthew 27:1-2; Luke 22:66-71). However, the Jewish leaders did not tell Pilate that Jesus was blaspheming God. Instead, they said that Jesus said he was the king of the Jews. Blasphemy of God was not wrong for the Romans. However, they killed people who rebelled against the Romans.

See: Blaspheme (Blasphemy)

#### Why did Jesus not answer Pilate?

[15:5]

Jesus did not answer Pilate because he did not do anything wrong. He also knew he needed to die for people’s sins. This also fulfilled a prophecy of Isaiah (see: Isaiah 53:7). This made Pilate think that Jesus was not guilty of the things the Jewish leaders said he did.

See: Sin; Atone (Atonement); Fulfill (Fulfillment)

#### What was the feast?

[15:6]

Mark wrote about a feast. This was the passover festival.

See: Passover

#### Why did Pilate release a prisoner?

[15:6]

In ancient Israel, the Roman leader released a prisoner during the Jewish passover festival. This helped make peace between the Romans and the Jews.

See: Passover

#### Who did Pilate want the people to release from prison?

[15:9]

Pilate did not think Jesus was guilty. However, he did not want to make the Jewish leaders angry. Therefore, he tried to get the people to free Jesus. However, they did not want Jesus to live. They told Pilate to kill Jesus.

#### How was someone crucified?

[15:13]

See: Crucify (Crucifixion)

#### How was Jesus scourged?

[15:15]

Pilate told soldiers scourge Jesus. That is, they beat him very badly. Some scholars think that scourging a person made them die faster after they were crucified. Other scholars think Pilate had Jesus scourged so the Jewish leaders would have pity for Jesus. He hoped the Jews would not want Jesus crucified after this (see: John 19:1-15).

See: Crucify (Crucifixion)

## 15:16-21

#### Where did the soldiers take Jesus?

[15:16]

The soldiers took Jesus to the courtyard where a Roman leader lived. The courtyard was a large area outside of a home where many people gathered.

#### How many soldiers are a cohort?

[15:16]

There were about 600 soldiers in a cohort.

#### How did the soldiers mock Jesus?

[15:20]

The soldiers placed a purple robe on Jesus. They did this to mock Jesus. In ancient times, kings wore purple clothes. This was because it was very expensive to make purple clothes. They also put a crown on Jesus. They also did this to mock Jesus. Kings wore crowns. However, this crown had large thorns, so it hurt Jesus. The soldiers also mocked Jesus by saluting him in the way they saluted a king. They also hit Jesus with a staff. Kings held a special staff. They also bowed to Jesus in the same way they would have bowed to their king.

#### Where was Cyrene?

[15:21]

See Map: Cyrene

## 15:22-32

#### Where was Golgotha?

[15:22]

Golgotha was a place outside of the wall of the city of Jerusalem. In English, this place is often called “calvary.” It was a hill that looked like a person’s skull.

#### Why did the soldiers give Jesus wine mixed with myrrh?

[15:23]

The soldiers gave Jesus something to drink. People thought that this would stop pain. However, Jesus did not want to drink the mixed wine.

#### What is casting lots?

[15:24]

See: Cast Lots

#### Why did the soldiers make a sign?

[15:26]

The soldiers made a sign. This sign told people that Jesus was killed for saying that he was the king of the Jews.

#### Did Mark write the words found in verse 28?

[15:28]

Some ancient copies of the Greek New Testament have the words found in 15:28. A greater number of older copies of the Greek New Testament do not have these words. Therefore, most translations do not have these words.

#### How did the people insult Jesus?

[15:29]

The people insulted Jesus while he died. They mocked him because they did not know what he said when he said that he would destroy and rebuild the temple. They thought he spoke about the temple building. However, it was a metaphor. He wanted people to know that he would die and be resurrected in three days. They also mocked Jesus and told him to come off the cross if he was God. They spoke against Jesus because they did not believe he was the Son of God.

See: Metaphor; Temple; Resurrect (Resurrection) ; Cross; Son of God

#### How did the Jewish leaders mock Jesus?

[15:31]

The Jewish leaders mocked Jesus in the same way people mocked him. They wanted Jesus to do something so they would know that he was the messiah. However, he did not listen to them. Jesus knew that his death on the cross was part of the work that God the Father sent him to do.

See: Messiah (Christ); Cross; Atone (Atonement)

## 15:33-37

#### When was the sixth hour?

[15:33]

The sixth hour was about 12pm.

#### When was the ninth hour?

The ninth hour was about 3pm.

#### Why did Jesus cry out about God had forsaken him?

[15:34]

As Jesus died, people’s sins were placed on him in some way. He was separated from God in some way for the first time. Jesus fulfilled prophecy with these words. In Psalm 22, David cried out to God. Jesus quoted the beginning of this Psalm so the people would know that he was the fulfillment of this prophecy.

See: Sin; Atone (Atonement); Fulfill (Fulfillment); Prophecy (Prophesy)

#### Why did people think Jesus was calling for Elijah?

[15:35]

When Jesus said, “Eli,” the people thought they heard Jesus calling to Elijah to help him.

## 15:38-47

#### Why did the temple curtain split into two pieces?

[15:38]

In the temple, there was a curtain that separated the most holy place from everything else. It was the place where the high priest went once a year to give a sacrifice to God. God was in this place in a certain way. The curtain was so big and thick that it could not be torn. When Jesus died, it tore. This was a metaphor. It allowed everyone to know that nothing separated people from God anymore after Jesus died.

See: Temple; Most Holy Place (Holy of Holies); High Priest; Sacrifice; Metaphor; Atone (Atonement)

#### Why did the Roman soldier think Jesus was the son of God?

[15:39]

The Roman soldier thought Jesus was the son of God. Some scholars think the soldier believed that Jesus was God. More scholars think that he said that Jesus was a very great man whom God blessed. Mark wanted people to think about how the roman soldier believed the truth about Jesus even though the Jewish leaders did not.

See: Son of God; Jesus is God; Bless (Blessing)

#### Where was Galilee?

[15:41]

See Map: Galilee

#### Why did Jesus need to be buried before the sun went down?

[15:42]

According to the Law of Moses, a dead body needed to be buried before the sun set.

See: Deuteronomy 21:23

See: Law of Moses

#### How was Joseph of Arimathea waiting for the kingdom of God?

[15:43]

Joseph of Arimathea was a pharisee, but he believed in Jesus (see: John 19:38). He believed what Jesus taught about the kingdom of God.

See: Pharisees; Kingdom of God

#### Why was Pilate amazed that Jesus was dead?

[15:44]

Pilate was amazed that Jesus was dead because he died very fast. Jesus was beaten and very weak when he was placed on the cross. When most people were put on a cross it took a long time for them to die, sometimes two or three days.

See: Cross

#### Why did Joseph wrap Jesus’ body in a linen cloth and put it into a tomb?

[15:46]

Joseph of Arimathea wrapped Jesus’ body in linen cloth to prepare him to be buried. At that time, people wrapped a body in linen cloths with strong smelling spices. When Jesus’ body was ready to be buried, it was put into a tomb. This honored the person who had died.

#### Why did Joseph place a large stone in front of the entrance to the tomb?

[15:46]

Joseph placed a very large stone in front of the entrance to the tomb. This kept people and animals out of the tomb.

#### Mark 15:1

##### they bound Jesus and led him away

"they commanded for Jesus to be bound and then he was led away" or "they commanded the guards to bind Jesus and then they led him away"

##### They handed him over to Pilate

They had Jesus led to Pilate and transferred control of Jesus over to him.

#### Mark 15:2

##### You say so

"Yes, as you said, I am" or "Yes. It is as you said"

#### Mark 15:3

##### were accusing him of many things

"were saying that Jesus had done many bad things"

#### Mark 15:4

##### Do you give no answer

"Do you have an answer"

#### Mark 15:5

##### that amazed him

It surprised Pilate that Jesus did not reply and defend himself.

#### Mark 15:8

##### to do for them as he had done in the past

"to release a prisoner to them as he had done in the past"

#### Mark 15:10

##### it was because of envy that the chief priests

"the chief priests were envious of Jesus. This is why they" or "the chief priests were envious of Jesus's popularity among the people. This is why they"

#### Mark 15:11

##### stirred up the crowd

"roused the crowd" or "urged the crowd"

##### released instead

"released instead of Jesus"

#### Mark 15:12

##### What then should I do with the King of the Jews

"If I release Barabbas, what then should I do with the King of the Jews"

#### Mark 15:14

##### Pilate said to them

"Pilate said to the crowd"

#### Mark 15:15

##### to satisfy the crowd

"make the crowd happy by doing what they wanted him to do"

##### He scourged Jesus

Pilate did not actually scourge Jesus but rather his soldiers did.

##### scourged

"flogged." To "scourge" is to beat with an especially painful whip.

##### then handed him over to be crucified

"told his soldiers to take him away and crucify him"

#### Mark 15:16

##### the courtyard (which is the government headquarters)

"the courtyard of the soldiers' barracks" or "the courtyard of the governor's residence"

##### the whole company of soldiers

"the whole unit of soldiers" "the whole cohort of soldiers"

#### Mark 15:17

##### They put a purple robe on Jesus

Purple was a color worn by royalty. The soldiers did not believe that Jesus was king. They clothed him this way to mock him because others said that he was the King of the Jews.

##### a crown of thorns

"a crown made of thorny branches"

#### Mark 15:18

##### began to salute him

The reader should understsnd that they were mocking Jesus by pretending to salute him.

##### Hail, King of the Jews

The greeting "Hail" with a raised hand was only used to greet the Roman emperor. The soldiers did not believe that Jesus was the king of the Jews. Rather they said this to mock him.

#### Mark 15:19

##### a reed

"a stick" or "a staff"

##### went to their knees

"kneeled" or "knelt" or "got on their knees"

#### Mark 15:21

##### Simon ... Alexander ... Rufus

These are names of men.

##### Cyrene

This is the name of a place.

##### from the country

"from outside the city"

##### he was the father of Alexander and Rufus

This is background information about the man whom the soldiers forced to carry Jesus's cross.

##### they forced him to carry his cross

According to Roman law, a solider could force a man he came upon along the road to carry a load. In this case, they forced Simon to carry Jesus's cross.

#### Mark 15:22

##### Place of a Skull

"Skull Place" or "Place of the Skull." This the name of a place. It does not mean that there are lots of skulls there.

##### Skull

A skull is the head bones, or a head without any flesh on it.

#### Mark 15:23

##### wine mixed with myrrh

"wine mixed with a medicine called myrrh" or "wine mixed with a pain-relieving medicine called myrrh"

#### Mark 15:25

##### the third hour

"nine o'clock in the morning"

#### Mark 15:26

##### On a sign

"They attached to the cross above Jesus's head a sign on which"

##### the charge against him

"the crime they were accusing him of doing"

#### Mark 15:27

##### one on the right of him and one on his left

"one on a cross on the right side of him and one on a cross on the left side of him"

#### Mark 15:29

##### shaking their heads

This action showed that the people disapproved of Jesus.

##### Aha!

This is a exclamation of mockery. Use the appropriate exclamation in your language.

##### You who would destroy the temple and rebuild it in three days

"You who said you would destroy the temple and rebuild it in three days"

#### Mark 15:31

##### were mocking him with each other

"were saying mocking things about Jesus among themselves"

#### Mark 15:32

##### Let the Christ, the King of Israel, come down

"He calls himself the Christ and the King of Israel. So let him come down" or "If he is really the Christ and the King of Israel, he should come down"

##### believe

"believe in him"

##### insulted

mocked, slandered

#### Mark 15:33

##### the sixth hour

This refers to noon or 12 p.m.

##### darkness came over the whole land

"the whole land became dark"

#### Mark 15:34

##### At the ninth hour

This refers to three o'clock in the afternoon. Alternate translation: "At three o'clock in the afternoon" or "In the middle of the afternoon"

##### Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani

These are Aramaic words that should be copied as is into your language with similar sounds.

##### is interpreted

"means"

#### Mark 15:35

##### Some of those standing by heard his words and said

"When some of those standing there heard his words, they misunderstood and said"

#### Mark 15:36

##### sour wine

"vinegar"

##### reed staff

"stick." This was a staff made from a reed.

##### gave it to him

"held it up to Jesus"

#### Mark 15:38

##### The curtain of the temple was split in two

"God split the curtain of the temple in two"

#### Mark 15:39

##### the centurion

This is the centurion who supervised the soldiers who crucified Jesus.

##### who stood and faced Jesus

"who stood in front of Jesus"

##### that he had died in this way

"how Jesus had died" or "the way Jesus had died"

#### Mark 15:40

##### looked on from a distance

"watched from far away"

##### (the mother of James ... and of Joses)

"who was the mother of James ... and of Joses." This can be written without the parentheses.

##### Salome

Salome is the name of a woman.

#### Mark 15:42

##### Connecting Statement:

Joseph of Arimathea asks Pilate for the body of Jesus, which he wraps in linen and puts in a tomb.

##### evening had come

"it had become evening" or "it was evening"

#### Mark 15:43

##### Joseph of Arimathea came there. He was a respected

"Joseph of Arimathea was a respected"

##### went in to Pilate

"went to Pilate" or "went in to where Pilate was"

##### asked for the body of Jesus

"asked for permission to get the body of Jesus in order to bury it"

#### Mark 15:44

##### Pilate was amazed that Jesus was already dead; he called the centurion

"Pilate was amazed when he heard that Jesus was already dead, so he called the centurion"

#### Mark 15:45

##### he gave the body to Joseph

"he permitted Joseph to take Jesus's body"

#### Mark 15:46

##### linen

Linen is cloth made from the fibers of a flax plant.

##### He took him down ... Then he rolled a stone

"He and others took him down ... Then they rolled a stone"

##### a tomb that had been cut out of a rock

"a tomb that someone had previously cut out of solid rock"

##### a stone against

"a huge flat stone in front of"

#### Mark 15:47

##### the place where Jesus was buried

"the place where Joseph and the others buried Jesus's body"

Chapter 16

1When the Sabbath day was over, Mary Magdalene, Mary the mother of James, and Salome bought spices that they might come and anoint Jesus' body.2Very early on the first day of the week, they went to the tomb when the sun had come up.3They were saying to one another, "Who will roll away the stone for us from the entrance to the tomb?"4When they looked up, they saw that the stone had been rolled away, for it was very large.5They entered the tomb and saw a young man dressed in a white robe, sitting on the right side, and they were alarmed.

6He said to them, "Do not be alarmed. You seek Jesus, the Nazarene, who was crucified. He is risen! He is not here. Look at the place where they had laid him.7But go, tell his disciples and Peter, 'He is going ahead of you to Galilee. There you will see him, just as he told you.'"

8They went out and ran from the tomb; they were trembling and amazed. They said nothing to anyone because they were so afraid.9[1](#footnote-target-1) [Early on the first day of the week, after he arose, he appeared first to Mary Magdalene, from whom he had cast out seven demons.10She went and told those who were with him, while they were mourning and weeping.11They heard that he was alive and that he had been seen by her, but they did not believe.

12After these things he appeared in a different form to two of them as they were walking out into the country.13They went back and told the rest, but they did not believe them.

14Jesus later appeared to the eleven as they were reclining at the table, and he rebuked them for their unbelief and hardness of heart, because they did not believe those who saw him after he rose from the dead.15He said to them, "Go into all the world, and preach the gospel to the entire creation.16He who believes and is baptized will be saved, and he who does not believe will be condemned.17These signs will go with those who believe: In my name they will cast out demons. They will speak in new languages.18They will pick up snakes with their hands, and if they drink anything deadly, it will not hurt them. They will lay hands on the sick, and they will get well."

19After the Lord Jesus had spoken to them, he was taken up into heaven and sat down at the right hand of God.20The disciples left and preached everywhere, while the Lord worked with them and confirmed the word by the signs that went with them.] [2](#footnote-target-2)

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient copies do not have Mark 16:9-20. [2](#footnote-caller-2)See the note on Mark 16:9.

### Mark 16

## 16:1-11

#### What was the Sabbath?

[16:1]

See: Sabbath

#### Why did these women bring spices to anoint the body?

[16:1]

The women brought spices to anoint Jesus’ body. In ancient Israel, people did this to someone after they died. They did not think Jesus would be made alive again. The spices were used to stop the body from smelling bad. People did this for people they loved when the person died.

See: Anoint (Anointing)

#### What day was the first day of the week?

[16:2]

The Sabbath began on Friday at sunset and ended Saturday at sunset. The day after the sabbath was the first day of the week. This day began on Saturday at sunset and ended on Sunday at sunset.

See: Sabbath

#### Why did the women need someone to roll the stone away?

[16:3]

The stone in front of Jesus’ tomb was very large. It was so large three women could not move it. Therefore, they needed several men to move it.

#### Who was the man in the tomb?

[16:5]

The man in the tomb was an angel.

See: Angel; White (symbol)

#### Where was Nazareth?

[16:6]

See Map: Nazareth

#### How was Jesus crucified?

[16:6]

See: Crucify (Crucifixion)

#### How was Jesus resurrected?

[16:6]

The man in the tomb said that Jesus was risen. That is, Jesus was resurrected and was alive again.

See: Resurrect (Resurrection)

#### Where was Galilee?

[16:7]

See Map: Galilee

#### Why did the man say, “just as he told you”?

[16:7]

The man said that Jesus was resurrected, “just as he told you.” Jesus told people that he was going to be resurrected after he died. He also said he would go to Galilee (see: 14:28). They did not understand what he said. Or perhaps they did not believe it when he said it.

See: Resurrect (Resurrection)

See Map: Galilee

#### Did Mark write the words of 16:9-20?

[16:9]

The oldest copies of the Greek New Testament do not have the words written in Mark 16:9-20. Other ancient copies of the Greek New Testament do have these words. Therefore, some scholars do not think Mark wrote these words. They think some ancient scholars added these words to the ending of Mark’s gospel. Perhaps they did this to make the gospel end in a different way. That is, so the gospel would tell people about Jesus’ resurrection. Other scholars think Mark wrote these words. Perhaps an early copy of Mark’s gospel lost its last page and people made copies of this without the last page.

See: Gospel; Resurrect (Resurrection) ; Differences in the Ancient Copies of the Bible

#### How did Jesus cast out demons?

[16:9]

See: Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons)

#### Why were people mourning and weeping?

[16:10]

People were mourning and weeping because they were sad. They were sad that Jesus died. They did not know that he promised to be resurrected. They also did not know that he was resurrected. When they heard that Jesus was alive, they did not believe the women. They thought the women lied because people did not become alive after they died.

See: Resurrect (Resurrection)

## 16:12-20

#### How did Jesus appear in a different form?

[16:12]

Jesus joined two people walking. Scholars think these people saw Jesus before he died. However, Jesus looked different from the first time they saw him. So they did not know it was Jesus (see: Luke 24:13-32).

#### Why were the disciples called the eleven?

[16:14]

People called the disciples the eleven. This is because Judas Iscariot was not a disciple anymore.

See: Disciple

#### Why did the disciples recline at the table?

[16:14]

The disciples reclined at the table because they were eating.

See: Disciple

#### What did Jesus tell the disciples to do?

[16:15]

Jesus wanted the disciples to go tell everyone they could that Jesus was made alive again. He wanted them to tell everyone about the gospel. When Jesus said “the entire creation,” he wanted everyone in the world to know these things.

See: Disciple; Resurrect (Resurrection) ; Gospel

#### How is someone who is baptized saved?

[16:16]

Jesus said that whoever believes in him and is baptized will be saved. When someone believes in Jesus, they are at peace with God and will live with him forever. Some scholars think Jesus spoke about being baptized by the Holy Spirit. Other scholars think Jesus spoke about being baptized with water.

See: Baptize (Baptism); Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins); Heaven

#### How is someone who does not believe in Jesus condemned?

[16:16]

People who do not believe in Jesus are condemned. That is, they are punished and will live forever in hell.

See: Hell

#### What is casting out demons?

[16;17]

See: Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons)

#### How will Christians be able to speak in new languages?

[16:17]

See: Speaking in Tongues

#### Were Christians able to be poisoned without getting sick?

[16:18]

Jesus talked about Christians being poisoned. He said that Christians will be poisoned or bitten by poisonous snakes, but they will not die. The apostles did many miracles. These were signs so that other people would know that what they said came from God. Jesus did not talk about all Christians at all times.

See: Apostle; Miracle; Sign

#### Why is Jesus at the right hand of God in heaven?

[16:19]

See: Right Hand; Heaven

#### How did Jesus help the disciples when they preached?

[16:20]

The disciples went many places and told people about Jesus. Jesus helped them through the Holy Spirit. He also gave them the power to do miracles. These were signs that the things they taught were from God.

See: Preach (Preacher); Miracle; Sign

#### Mark 16:1

##### When the Sabbath day was over

That is, after the Sabbath, the seventh day of the week, had ended and the first day of the week had begun.

#### Mark 16:4

##### the stone had been rolled away

"someone had rolled away the stone"

#### Mark 16:6

##### He is risen!

"He arose!" or "God raised him from the dead!" or "He raised himself from the dead!"

#### Mark 16:9

##### on the first day of the week

"on Sunday"

#### Mark 16:11

##### They heard

"They heard Mary Magdalene say"

##### he had been seen by her

"Mary Magdalene had seen him" or "she had seen him"

#### Mark 16:12

##### he appeared in a different form to two of them

The "two of them" saw Jesus, but he looked different from how he had looked previously.

##### two of them

"two of his disciples"

#### Mark 16:13

##### they did not believe them

The rest of the disciples did not believe what the two who had been walking in the country said.

#### Mark 16:14

##### the eleven

These are the eleven apostles who remain after Judas has left them.

##### they were reclining at the table

"they were eating a meal"

##### reclining

In Jesus's culture, when people gathered to eat, they lay down on their sides, propping themselves up on pillows beside a low table.

##### hardness of heart

"refusal to believe"

#### Mark 16:15

##### Go into all the world

"Go everywhere there are people"

##### the entire creation

"absolutely everybody"

#### Mark 16:16

##### He who believes and is baptized will be saved

"God will save all people who believe and allow you to baptize them"

##### he who does not believe will be condemned

"God will condemn all people who do not believe"

#### Mark 16:17

##### These signs will go with those who believe

"People watching those who believe will see these things happen and know that I am with the believers"

##### In my name they

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus is giving a general list: "In my name they will do things like these: They" or 2) Jesus is giving an exact list: "These are the things they will do in my name: They."

##### In my name

"By the authority of my name" or "By the power of my name"

#### Mark 16:19

##### he was taken up into heaven and sat

"God took him up into heaven, and he sat"

##### sat down at the right hand of God

"sat in the place of honor beside God"

#### Mark 16:20

##### confirmed the word

"showed that his message, which they were speaking, was true"

##### by the signs that went with them

"by enabling them wherever they went to do miracles that showed that they truly were his disciples"

## Translation Words

### Abiathar

#### Facts:

Abiathar was a high priest for the nation of Israel during the time of King David.

* When King Saul killed the priests, Abiathar escaped and went to David in the wilderness.
* Abiathar and another high priest named Zadok served David faithfully throughout his reign.
* After David's death, Abiathar helped Adonijah try to become king instead of Solomon.
* Because of this, King Solomon removed Abiathar from the priesthood.

(See also: [Zadok](../names/zadok.md), [Saul (OT)](../names/saul.md), [David](../names/david.md), [Solomon](../names/solomon.md), [Adonijah](../names/adonijah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
* 1 Kings 01:07
* 1 Kings 02:22-23
* 2 Samuel 17:15
* Mark 02:25-26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H54, G8

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Abiathar, Abiathar's

### Abraham

#### Related Words:

Abram

#### Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

* The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
* "Abraham" means "father of many."
* God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
* Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
* Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Chaldea](../names/chaldeans.md), [Sarah](../names/sarah.md), [Isaac](../names/isaac.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 03:08
* Genesis 11:29-30
* Genesis 21:04
* Genesis 22:02
* James 02:23
* Matthew 01:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H87, H85, G11

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Abraham, Abraham's, Abram

### Abraham

#### Related Words:

Abram

#### Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

* The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
* "Abraham" means "father of many."
* God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
* Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
* Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Chaldea](../names/chaldeans.md), [Sarah](../names/sarah.md), [Isaac](../names/isaac.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 03:08
* Genesis 11:29-30
* Genesis 21:04
* Genesis 22:02
* James 02:23
* Matthew 01:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H87, H85, G11

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Abraham, Abraham's, Abram

### Ai

#### Facts:

In Old Testament times, Ai was the name of a Canaanite town located just south of Bethel and about 8 km northwest of Jericho.

* After defeating Jericho, Joshua led the Israelites in an attack of Ai. But they were easily defeated because God was not pleased with them.
* An Israelite named Achan had stolen plunder from Jericho, and God ordered that he and his family be killed. Then God helped the Israelites defeat the people of Ai.

(See also: [Bethel](../names/bethel.md), [Jericho](../names/jericho.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezra 02:27-30
* Genesis 12:8-9
* Genesis 13:3-4
* Joshua 07:03
* Joshua 08:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5857

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ai

### Andrew

#### Facts:

Andrew was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his closest disciples (later called apostles).

* Andrew's brother was Simon Peter. Both of them were fishermen.
* Peter and Andrew were fishing in the Sea of Galilee when Jesus called them to be his disciples.
* Before Peter and Andrew met Jesus, they had been disciples of John the Baptizer.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [the twelve](../kt/thetwelve.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:12-14
* John 01:40
* Mark 01:17
* Mark 01:29-31
* Mark 03:17-19
* Matthew 04:19
* Matthew 10:2-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G406

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Andrew, Andrew's

### Asa

#### Facts:

Asa was a king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah for forty years, from 913 B.C. to 873 B.c.

* King Asa was a good king who removed many idols of false gods and caused the Israelites to start worshiping Yahweh again.
* Yahweh gave King Asa success in his warfare against other nations.
* Later in his reign, however, King Asa stopped trusting Yahweh and became sick with a disease that eventually killed him.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 09:14-16
* 1 Kings 15:7-8
* 2 Chronicles 14:03
* Jeremiah 41:09
* Matthew 01:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H609

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Asa, Asa's

### Barabbas

#### Facts:

Barabbas was a prisoner in Jerusalem at the time when Jesus was arrested.

* Barabbas was a criminal who had committed crimes of murder and rebellion against the Roman government.
* When Pontius Pilate offered to either release Barabbas or Jesus, the people chose Barabbas.
* So Pilate allowed Barabbas to go free, but condemned Jesus to be killed.

(See also: [Pilate](../names/pilate.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 18:40
* Luke 23:19
* Mark 15:07
* Matthew 27:15-16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G912

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Barabbas, Barabbas'

### Bartholomew

#### Facts:

Bartholomew was one of Jesus' twelve apostles.

* Along with the other apostles, Bartholomew was sent out to preach the gospel and do miracles in Jesus' name.
* He was also one of those who saw Jesus return to heaven.
* A few weeks after that, he was with the other apostles in Jerusalem at Pentecost when the Holy Spirit came upon them.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [good news](../kt/goodnews.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [miracle](../kt/miracle.md), [Pentecost](../kt/pentecost.md), [the twelve](../kt/thetwelve.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:12-14
* Luke 06:14-16
* Mark 03:17-19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G918

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Bartholomew, Bartholomew's

### Beelzebul

#### Facts:

Beelzebul is another name for Satan, or the devil. It is also sometimes spelled, "Beelzebub."

* This name literally means "lord of flies" which means, "ruler over demons." But it is best to translate this term close to the original spelling rather than translate the meaning.
* It could also be translated as "Beelzebul the devil" to make it clear who is being referred to.
* This name is related to the name of the false god "Baal-zebub" of Ekron.

(See also: [demon](../kt/demon.md), [Ekron](../names/ekron.md), [Satan](../kt/satan.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 11:15
* Mark 03:22
* Matthew 10:25
* Matthew 12:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G954

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Beelzebul, Beelzebul's

### Bethany

#### Facts:

The town of Bethany was located at the base of the eastern slope of the Mount of Olives, about 2 miles east of Jerusalem.

* Bethany was near the road that ran between Jerusalem and Jericho.
* Jesus often visited Bethany where his close friends Lazarus, Martha, and Mary lived.
* Bethany is especially known as the place where Jesus raised Lazarus from the dead.

(See also: [Jericho](../names/jericho.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md), [Lazarus](../names/lazarus.md), [Martha](../names/martha.md), [Mary (sister of Martha)](../names/marysisterofmartha.md), [Mount of Olives](../names/mountofolives.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 01:26-28
* Luke 24:50-51
* Mark 11:01
* Matthew 21:15-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G963

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Bethany

### Caesar

#### Related Words:

the emperor

#### Facts:

The term "Caesar" was the name or title used by many of the rulers of the Roman Empire. In the Bible, this name refers to three different Roman rulers.

* The first Roman ruler named Caesar was "Caesar Augustus," who was ruling during the time that Jesus was born.
* About thirty years later, at the time when John the Baptist was preaching, Tiberius Caesar was the ruler of the Roman Empire.
* Tiberius Caesar was still ruling Rome when Jesus told the people to pay Caesar what was due him and to give to God what is due him.
* When Paul appealed to Caesar, this referred to the Roman emperor, Nero, who also had the title "Caesar."
* When "Caesar" is used by itself as a title, it can also be translated as: "the Emperor" or "the Roman Ruler."
* In names such as Caesar Augustus or Tiberius Caesar, "Caesar" can be spelled close to the way a national language spells it.
* An emperor is the ruler of an empire.

(See also: [king](../other/king.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 25:06
* Luke 02:01
* Luke 20:23-24
* Luke 23:02
* Mark 12:13-15
* Matthew 22:17
* Philippians 04:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2541, G4575

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Caesar, Caesar's, the emperor

### Caesarea

#### Related Words:

Caesarea Philippi

#### Facts:

Caesarea was an important city on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 39 km south of Mount Carmel. Caesarea Philippi was a city located in the northeastern part of Israel, near Mount Hermon.

* These cities were named for the Caesars who ruled the Roman empire.
* The coastal Caesarea became the capital city of the Roman province of Judea around the time of the birth of Jesus.
* The apostle Peter first preached to the Gentiles in Caesarea.
* Paul sailed from Caesarea to Tarsus and also passed through this city on two of his missionary journeys.
* Jesus and his disciples traveled in the region surrounding Caesarea Philippi in Syria. Both cities were named after Herod Philip.

(See also: [Caesar](../names/caesar.md), [Gentile](../kt/gentile.md), [the sea](../names/mediterranean.md), [Carmel](../names/carmel.md), [Mount Hermon](../names/mounthermon.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md), [Tarsus](../names/tarsus.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:30
* Acts 10:1-2
* Acts 25:01
* Acts 25:14
* Mark 08:27
* Matthew 16:13-16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2542, G5376

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Caesarea, Caesarea Philippi

### Capernaum

#### Facts:

Capernaum was a fishing village on the northwest shore of the Sea of Galilee.

* Jesus lived in Capernaum whenever he was teaching in Galilee.
* Several of his disciples were from Capernaum.
* Jesus also did many miracles in this city, including bringing a dead girl back to life.
* Capernaum was one of three cities that Jesus publicly rebuked because their people rejected him and did not believe his message. He warned them that God would punish them for their unbelief.

(See also: [Galilee](../names/galilee.md), [Sea of Galilee](../names/seaofgalilee.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 02:12
* Luke 04:31
* Luke 07:1
* Mark 01:21
* Mark 02:02
* Matthew 04:12-13
* Matthew 17:24-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2584

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Capernaum

### Christ

#### Related Ideas:

Christ Jesus, Jesus Christ, Messiah

#### Facts:

The terms "Messiah" and "Christ" mean "Anointed One" and refer to Jesus, God's Son.

* Both "Messiah" and "Christ" are used in the New Testament to refer to God's Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
* In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
* Often a word meaning "anointed (one)" is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
* Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
* The word "Christ" is often used as a title, as in "the Christ" and "Christ Jesus." "Christ" also came to be used as part of his name, as in "Jesus Christ." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who will reign forever.
* Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
* For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
* This term could be translated using its meaning, "the Anointed One" or "God's Anointed Savior."
* Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like "Christ" or "Messiah."
* The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term, as in "Christ, the Anointed One."
* Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
* Make sure the translations of "Messiah" and "Christ" work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [David](../names/david.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [anoint](../kt/anoint.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 05:1-3
* Acts 02:35
* Acts 05:40-42
* John 01:40-42
* John 03:27-28
* John 04:25
* Luke 02:10-12
* Matthew 01:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Christ, Christ Jesus, Jesus Christ, Messiah

### Cyrene

#### Related Ideas:

Cyrenian

#### Facts:

Cyrene was a Greek city on the north coast of Africa on the Mediterranean Sea, directly south of the island of Crete.

* In New Testament times, both Jews and Christians lived in Cyrene.
* Cyrene is probably most well-known in the Bible as the home city of a man named Simon who carried the cross of Jesus.

(See also: [Crete](../names/crete.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 11:19-21
* Matthew 27:32-34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2956, G2957

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Cyrene, Cyrenians

### Dan

#### Related Words:

Danite

#### Facts:

Dan was the fifth son of Jacob and was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.The region settled by the tribe of Dan in the northern part of Canaan also was given this name.

* During the time of Abram, there was a city named Dan located west of Jerusalem.
* Years later, during the time the nation of Israel entered the promised land, a different city named Dan was located about 60 miles north of Jerusalem.
* The term "Danites" refers to the descendants of Dan, who were also members of his clan.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 12:35
* 1 Kings 04:25
* Exodus 01:1-5
* Genesis 14:14
* Genesis 30:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1835, H1839, H2051

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Dan, Dan's, Danite, Danites

### David

#### Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

* When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
* David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
* King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
* David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
* Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(See also: [Goliath](../names/goliath.md), [Philistines](../names/philistines.md), [Saul (OT)](../names/saul.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 17:12-13
* 1 Samuel 20:34
* 2 Samuel 05:02
* 2 Timothy 02:08
* Acts 02:25
* Acts 13:22
* Luke 01:32
* Mark 02:26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1732, G1138

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

David, David's

### Elijah

#### Facts:

Elijah was one of the most important prophets of Yahweh. Elijah prophesied during the reigns of several kings of Israel and Judah, including King Ahab.

* God did many miracles through Elijah, including raising a dead boy back to life.
* Elijah rebuked King Ahab for worshiping the false god Baal.
* He challenged the prophets of Baal to a test that proved that Yahweh is the only true God.
* At the end of Elijah's life, God miraculously took him up to heaven while he was still alive.
* Hundreds of years later, Elijah, along with Moses, appeared with Jesus on a mountain, and they talked together about Jesus' coming suffering and death in Jerusalem.

(See also: [miracle](../kt/miracle.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 17:1
* 2 Kings 01:3-4
* James 05:16-18
* John 01:19-21
* John 01:24-25
* Mark 09:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H452, G2243

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Elijah, Elijah's

### Eve

#### Facts:

This was the name of the first woman. Her name means "life" or "living."

* God formed Eve from a rib that he took out of Adam.
* Eve was created to be Adam's "helper." She came alongside Adam to assist him in the work that God gave them to do.
* Eve was tempted by Satan (in the form of a snake) and was the first to sin by eating the fruit that God said not to eat.

(See also: [Adam](../names/adam.md), [life](../kt/life.md), [Satan](../kt/satan.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 02:13
* 2 Corinthians 11:03
* Genesis 03:20
* Genesis 04:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2332, G2096

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Eve, Eve's

### Gad

#### Related Words

Gadite

#### Facts:

Gad was one of the sons of Jacob. Jacob was also named Isreal.

* Gad's family became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
* Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.
* The names of the cities Baalgad and Migdalgad are each two words in the original text and are sometimes written "Baal Gad" and "Migdal Gad."
* A Gadite was a person from the tribe of Gad.

(See also: [census](../other/census.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 05:18
* Exodus 01:1-5
* Genesis 30:11
* Joshua 01:12
* Joshua 21:38

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1410, H1425, G1045

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gad, Gadite, Gadites, Gad's

### Galilee

#### Related Words:

Galilean

#### Facts:

Galilee was the most northern region of Israel, just north of Samaria. A "Galilean" was a person who lived in Galilee or who lived in Galilee.

* Galilee, Samaria, and Judea were the three main provinces of Israel during New Testament times.
* Galilee is bordered on the east by a large lake called the "Sea of Galilee."
* Jesus grew up and lived in the town of Nazareth in Galilee.
* Most of the miracles and teachings of Jesus took place in the region of Galilee.

(See also: [Nazareth](../names/nazareth.md), [Samaria](../names/samaria.md), [Sea of Galilee](../names/seaofgalilee.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:32
* Acts 13:31
* John 02:1-2
* John 04:03
* Luke 13:03
* Mark 03:07
* Matthew 02:22-23
* Matthew 03:13-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1551, G1056, G1057

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Galilee, Galilean, Galileans

### Gentile

#### Facts:

The term "Gentile" refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

* In the Bible, the term "uncircumcised" is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
* Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God's people.
* The Jews were also called "Israelites" or "Hebrews" at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a "Gentile."
* Gentile could also be translated as "not a Jew" or "non-Jewish" or "not an Israelite" (Old Testament) or "non-Jew.".
* Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Jew](../kt/jew.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:13-16
* Acts 14:5-7
* Galatians 02:16
* Luke 02:32
* Matthew 05:47
* Matthew 06:5-7
* Romans 11:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1471, G1482, G1484

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gentile, Gentiles

### Gethsemane

#### Facts:

Gethsemane was a garden of olive trees east of Jerusalem beyond the Kidron valley and near the Mount of Olives.

* The garden of Gethsemane was a place where Jesus and his followers would go to be alone and rest, away from the crowds.
* It was in Gethsemane that Jesus prayed in deep sorrow, before being arrested there by Jewish leaders.

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](../names/judasiscariot.md), [Kidron Valley](../names/kidronvalley.md), [Mount of Olives](../names/mountofolives.md))

#### Bible References:

* Mark 14:32
* Matthew 26:36

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1068

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gethsemane

### God

#### Related Ideas:

the living God

#### Facts:

In the Bible, the term "God" refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is "Yahweh."

* God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
* He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
* God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
* He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
* People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
* God revealed his name as "Yahweh," which means "he is" or "I am" or "the One who (always) exists."
* The Bible also teaches about false "gods," which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "God" could include "Deity" or "Creator" or "Supreme Being."
* Other ways to translate "God" could be "Supreme Creator" or "Infinite Sovereign Lord" or "Eternal Supreme Being."
* Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for "God" in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
* Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
* Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for "God" and "god."
* The phrase "I will be their God and they will be my people" could also be translated as "I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me."

(See also: [create](../other/creation.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [God the Father](../kt/godthefather.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:07
* 1 Samuel 10:7-8
* 1 Timothy 04:10
* Colossians 01:16
* Deuteronomy 29:14-16
* Ezra 03:1-2
* Genesis 01:02
* Hosea 04:11-12
* Isaiah 36:6-7
* James 02:20
* Jeremiah 05:05
* John 01:03
* Joshua 03:9-11
* Lamentations 03:43
* Micah 04:05
* Philippians 02:06
* Proverbs 24:12
* Psalms 047:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H136, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2623, H3069, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2312, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

God, God's, the living God

### Golgotha

#### Facts:

"Golgotha" was the name of the place where Jesus was crucified. Its name comes from an Aramaic word that means "Skull" or "Place of the Skull."

* Golgotha was located outside the city walls of Jerusalem, somewhere nearby. It was perhaps located on a slope of the Mount of Olives.
* In some older English versions of the Bible, Golgotha is translated as "Calvary," which comes from the Latin word for "skull."
* Many Bible versions use a word that looks or sounds similar to "Golgotha," since its meaning is already explained in the Bible text.

(See also: [Aram](../names/aram.md), [Mount of Olives](../names/mountofolives.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 19:17
* Mark 15:22
* Matthew 27:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1115

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Golgotha

### Greek

#### Related Words:

Grecian

#### Facts:

The term "Greek" refers to the language spoken in the country of Greece. It is also a person from the country of Greece. Greek was also spoken throughout the Roman Empire. The term "Grecian" means "Greek-speaking."

* Since most non-Jewish people in the Roman Empire spoke Greek, Gentiles are often referred to as "Greeks" in the New Testament, especially when contrasted with Jews.
* The phrase "Grecian Jews" referred to Jews who spoke Greek in contrast to the "Hebraic Jews" who spoke only Hebrew, or perhaps Aramaic.
* Other ways to translate "Grecian" could include, "Greek-speaking" or "culturally Greek" or "Greek."
* When referring to non-Jews, "Greek" could be translated as "Gentile."

(See also: [Aram](../names/aram.md), [Gentile](../kt/gentile.md), [Greece](../names/greece.md), [Hebrew](../kt/hebrew.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:1
* Acts 09:29
* Acts 11:20
* Acts 14:1-2
* Colossians 03:11
* Galatians 02:3-5
* John 07:35

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3125, G1672, G1673, G1674, G1675, G1676

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Greek, Greeks, Grecian

### Hebrew

#### Facts:

The "Hebrews" were people who were descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob. Abraham is the first person in the Bible to be called a "Hebrew."

* The term "Hebrew" also refers to the language that the Hebrew people spoke. The vast majority of the Old Testament was written in the Hebrew language.
* In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called "Jewish people" or "Israelites." It is best to keep all three terms distinct in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(See also: [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Jew](../kt/jew.md), [Jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 26:12-14
* Genesis 39:13-15
* Genesis 40:15
* Genesis 41:12-13
* John 05:1-4
* John 19:13
* Jonah 01:8-10
* Philippians 03:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5680, G1445, G1446, G1447

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hebrew, Hebrews, Hebrews'

### Herodias

#### Facts:

Herodias was the wife of Herod Antipas in Judea during the time of John the Baptist.

* Herodias was originally the wife of Herod Antipas' brother Philip, but later she unlawfully married Herod Antipas.
* John the Baptist rebuked Herod and Herodias for their unlawful marriage. Because of this, Herod put John in prison and because of Herodias eventually was beheaded.

(See also: [Herod Antipas](../names/herodantipas.md), [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 03:19
* Mark 06:17
* Mark 06:22
* Matthew 14:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2266

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Herodias, Herodias'

### Herodias

#### Facts:

Herodias was the wife of Herod Antipas in Judea during the time of John the Baptist.

* Herodias was originally the wife of Herod Antipas' brother Philip, but later she unlawfully married Herod Antipas.
* John the Baptist rebuked Herod and Herodias for their unlawful marriage. Because of this, Herod put John in prison and because of Herodias eventually was beheaded.

(See also: [Herod Antipas](../names/herodantipas.md), [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 03:19
* Mark 06:17
* Mark 06:22
* Matthew 14:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2266

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Herodias, Herodias'

### Holy One

#### Related Ideas:

holy one

#### Definition:

The term "Holy One" is a title in the Bible that almost always refers to God.

* In the Old Testament, this title often occurs in the phrase "Holy One of Israel."
* In the New Testament, Jesus is also referred to as the "Holy One."
* The term "holy one" is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to an angel.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The literal term is "the Holy" (with "One" being implied.) Many languages (like English) will translate this with the implied noun included (such as "One" or "God").
* This term could also be translated as "God, who is holy" or "the Set Apart One."
* The phrase "the Holy One of Israel" could be translated as "the Holy God whom Israel worships" or "the Holy One who rules Israel."
* It is best to translate this term using the same word or phrase that is used to translate "holy."

(See also: [holy](../kt/holy.md), [God](../kt/god.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:20
* 2 Kings 19:22
* Acts 02:27
* Acts 03:13-14
* Isaiah 05:15-17
* Isaiah 41:14
* Luke 04:33-34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6918, G40, G3741

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Holy One, holy ones

### Holy Spirit

#### Related Ideas:

Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit of the Lord Yahweh

#### Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

* The Holy Spirit is also referred to as "the Spirit" and "Spirit of Yahweh" and "Spirit of truth."
* Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
* Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
* When God's Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God's will.
* The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate "holy" and "spirit."
* Ways to translate this term could also include "Pure Spirit" or "Spirit who is Holy" or "God the Spirit."

(See also: [holy](../kt/holy.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md), [God](../kt/god.md), [Lord](../kt/lord.md), [God the Father](../kt/godthefather.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [gift](../kt/gift.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 10:10
* 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
* Acts 08:17
* Galatians 05:25
* Genesis 01:1-2
* Isaiah 63:10
* Job 33:04
* Matthew 12:31
* Matthew 28:18-19
* Psalms 051:10-11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Holy Spirit, Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit of the Lord Yahweh

### Isaac

#### Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

* The name "Isaac" means "he laughs." When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
* But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
* God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
* When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham's faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
* Isaac's son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [eternity](../kt/eternity.md), [fulfill](../kt/fulfill.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Sarah](../names/sarah.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:28-29
* Genesis 25:9-11
* Genesis 25:19
* Genesis 26:1
* Genesis 26:08
* Genesis 28:1-2
* Genesis 31:18
* Matthew 08:11-13
* Matthew 22:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3327, H3446, G2464

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Isaac, Isaac's

### Isaiah

#### Facts:

Isaiah was a prophet of God who prophesied during the reigns of four kings of Judah: Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah.

* He lived in Jerusalem during the time when the Assyrians were attacking the city, during the reign of Hezekiah.
* The Old Testament book of Isaiah is one of the major books of the Bible.
* Isaiah wrote many prophecies that came true while he was still living.
* Isaiah is especially known for the prophecies he wrote about the Messiah that came true 700 years later when Jesus was living on earth.
* Jesus and his disciples quoted Isaiah's prophecies to teach people about the Messiah.

(See also: [Ahaz](../names/ahaz.md), [Assyria](../names/assyria.md), [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [Hezekiah](../names/hezekiah.md), [Jotham](../names/jotham.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [Uzziah](../names/uzziah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 20:1-3
* Acts 28:26
* Isaiah 01:1
* Luke 03:4
* Mark 01:01
* Mark 07:06
* Matthew 03:03
* Matthew 04:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3470, G2268

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Isaiah, Isaiah's

### Israel

#### Related Ideas:

Israelite

#### Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means "he struggles with God."

* The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
* God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
* The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
* Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
* Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [nation](../other/nation.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 10:01
* 1 Kings 08:02
* Acts 02:36
* Acts 07:24
* Acts 13:23
* John 01:49-51
* Luke 24:21
* Mark 12:29
* Matthew 02:06
* Matthew 27:09
* Philippians 03:4-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Israel, Israel's, Israelite, Israelite's, Israelites, Israelites'

### Israel

#### Related Ideas:

Israelite

#### Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means "he struggles with God."

* The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
* God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
* The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
* Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
* Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [nation](../other/nation.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 10:01
* 1 Kings 08:02
* Acts 02:36
* Acts 07:24
* Acts 13:23
* John 01:49-51
* Luke 24:21
* Mark 12:29
* Matthew 02:06
* Matthew 27:09
* Philippians 03:4-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Israel, Israel's, Israelite, Israelite's, Israelites, Israelites'

### Jacob

#### Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

* Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
* Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
* Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
* Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
* Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
* A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [deceive](../other/deceive.md), [Esau](../names/esau.md), [Isaac](../names/isaac.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Rebekah](../names/rebekah.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:11
* Acts 07:46
* Genesis 25:26
* Genesis 29:1-3
* Genesis 32:1-2
* John 04:4-5
* Matthew 08:11-13
* Matthew 22:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3290, G2384

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jacob, Jacob's

### James son of Alphaeus

#### Facts:

James, the son of Alphaeus, was one of Jesus' twelve disciples. Jesus also called these men apostles.

* His name is given in the lists of Jesus' disciples in the gospels of Matthew, Mark, and Luke.
* He is also mentioned in the book of Acts as one of the eleven disciples who were together praying in Jerusalem after Jesus went back up to heaven.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [James (brother of Jesus)](../names/jamesbrotherofjesus.md), [James (son of Zebedee)](../names/jamessonofzebedee.md), [the twelve](../kt/thetwelve.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:12-14
* Luke 06:14-16
* Mark 03:17-19
* Mark 14:32-34
* Matthew 10:2-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2385

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

James son of Alphaeus

### James son of Zebedee

#### Facts:

James, a son of Zebedee, was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He had a younger brother named John who was also one of Jesus' apostles.

* James and his brother John worked by fishing with their father Zebedee.
* James and John were nicknamed the "Sons of Thunder," perhaps because they got angry quickly.
* Peter, James, and John were Jesus' closest disciples and were with him for amazing events such as when Jesus was on a mountaintop with Elijah and Moses and when Jesus caused a dead little girl to come back to life.
* This is a different James than the one who wrote a book in the Bible. Some languages may have to write their names differently to make it clear that they were two different men.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [Elijah](../names/elijah.md), [James (brother of Jesus)](../names/jamesbrotherofjesus.md), [James (son of Alphaeus)](../names/jamessonofalphaeus.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 09:28-29
* Mark 01:19-20
* Mark 01:29-31
* Mark 03:17
* Matthew 04:21-22
* Matthew 17:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2385

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

James son of Zebedee, James

### Jericho

#### Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

* As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
* Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
* When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Jordan River](../names/jordanriver.md), [Joshua](../names/joshua.md), [miracle](../kt/miracle.md), [Salt Sea](../names/saltsea.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 06:78
* Joshua 02:1-3
* Joshua 07:2-3
* Luke 18:35
* Mark 10:46-48
* Matthew 20:29-31
* Numbers 22:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3405, G2410

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jericho, Jericho's

### Jerusalem

#### Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

* The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
* Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
* It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
* Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
* People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [David](../names/david.md), [Jebusites](../names/jebusites.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [Solomon](../names/solomon.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md), [Zion](../kt/zion.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:26-27
* John 02:13
* Luke 04:9-11
* Luke 13:05
* Mark 03:7-8
* Mark 03:20-22
* Matthew 03:06
* Matthew 04:23-25
* Matthew 20:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jerusalem, Jerusalem's

### Jesus

#### Related Ideas:

the Lord Jesus

#### Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves."

* In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
* Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In many languages "Jesus" is spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesu," "Jezus," "Yesus", and "Hesu" are some of the ways that this name is translated into different languages.
* Also consider how this names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(See also: [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [God](../kt/god.md), [God the Father](../kt/godthefather.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [kingdom of God](../kt/kingdomofgod.md), [Mary](../names/mary.md), [Savior](../kt/savior.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 06:11
* 1 John 02:02
* 1 John 04:15
* 1 Timothy 01:02
* 2 Peter 01:02
* 2 Thessalonians 02:15
* 2 Timothy 01:10
* Acts 02:23
* Acts 05:30
* Acts 10:36
* Hebrews 09:14
* Hebrews 10:22
* Luke 24:20
* Matthew 01:21
* Matthew 04:03
* Philippians 02:05
* Philippians 02:10
* Philippians 04:21-23
* Revelation 01:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2424

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jesus, the Lord Jesus

### Jew

#### Related Ideas:

Jewish, person of Judah

#### Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

* People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
* Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.
* Often the phrase "the Jews" refers to the leaders of the Jews, not all the Jewish people. In those contexts, some translations add "leaders of" to make this clear.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:05
* Acts 10:28
* Acts 14:5-7
* Colossians 03:11
* John 02:14
* Matthew 28:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G2450, G2451, G2452, G2453

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jew, Jewish, Jews, Jews', a person of Judah, the language of Judah, the people of Judah

### John the Baptist

#### Facts:

John was the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth. Since "John" was a common name, he is often called "John the Baptist" to distinguish him from the other people named John, such as the Apostle John.

* John was the prophet whom God sent to prepare people to believe in and follow the Messiah.
* John told people to confess their sins, turn to God, and stop sinning, so that they would be ready to receive the Messiah.
* John baptized many people in water as a sign that they were sorry for their sins and were turning away from them.
* John was called "John the Baptist" because he baptized many people.

(See also: [baptize](../kt/baptize.md), [Zechariah (NT)](../names/zechariahnt.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 03:22-24
* Luke 01:11-13
* Luke 01:62-63
* Luke 03:7
* Luke 03:15-16
* Luke 07:27-28
* Matthew 03:13
* Matthew 11:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G910 G2491

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

John the Baptist, Baptist, John the Baptist, John's

### Jordan River

#### Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

* Today, the Jordan River separates the countries of Israel and Jordan. Israel is on the west side of the river, and Jordan is on the east side of the river.
* The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
* When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
* Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as "the Jordan."

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Salt Sea](../names/saltsea.md), [Sea of Galilee](../names/seaofgalilee.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 32:9-10
* John 01:26-28
* John 03:25-26
* Luke 03:3
* Matthew 03:06
* Matthew 03:13-15
* Matthew 04:14-16
* Matthew 19:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3383, G2446

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jordan River, Jordan

### Judas Iscariot

#### Related Words

Judas son of Simon Iscariot

#### Facts:

Judas Iscariot was one of Jesus' apostles. He was the one who betrayed Jesus to the Jewish leaders.

* The name "Iscariot" may mean "from Kerioth," perhaps indicating that Judas grew up in that city.
* Judas Iscariot managed the apostles' money and regularly stole some of it to use for himself.
* Judas betrayed Jesus by telling the religious leaders where Jesus was so they could arrest him.
* After the religious leaders condemned Jesus to die, Judas regretted that he had betrayed Jesus, so he gave the betrayal money back to the Jewish leaders and then killed himself.
* Another apostle was also named Judas, as was one of Jesus' brothers. Jesus' brother was also known as "Jude."

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [betray](../other/betray.md), [Jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md), [Judas the son of James](../names/judassonofjames.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 06:14-16
* Luke 22:47-48
* Mark 03:19
* Mark 14:10-11
* Matthew 26:23-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2455, G2469

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Judas ... Iscariot

### Judea

#### Facts:

The term "Judea" refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

* Sometimes "Judea" is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province "Judah."
* Other times "Judea" has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
* If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as "Judea Country" and the narrow sense could be translated as "Judea Province," or "Judah Province" since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(See also: [Galilee](../names/galilee.md), [Edom](../names/edom.md), [Judah](../names/judah.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [Samaria](../names/samaria.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:14
* Acts 02:09
* Acts 09:32
* Acts 12:19
* John 03:22-24
* Luke 01:05
* Luke 04:44
* Luke 05:17
* Mark 10:1-4
* Matthew 02:01
* Matthew 02:05
* Matthew 02:22-23
* Matthew 03:1-3
* Matthew 19:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2453

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Judea

### King of the Jews

#### Definition:

The term "King of the Jews" is a title that refers to Jesus, the Messiah.

* The first time the Bible records this title is when it was used by the wise men who traveled to Bethlehem looking for the baby who was "King of the Jews."
* The angel revealed to Mary that her son, a descendant of King David, would be a king whose reign would last forever.
* Before Jesus was crucified, Roman soldiers mockingly called Jesus "King of the Jews." This title was also written on a piece of wood and nailed to the top of Jesus' cross.
* Jesus truly is the King of the Jews and the king over all creation.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "King of the Jews" could also be translated as "king over the Jews" or "king who rules over the Jews" or "supreme ruler of the Jews."
* Check to see how the phrase "king of" is translated in other places in the translation.

(See also: [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [Jew](../kt/jew.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [king](../other/king.md), [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md), [kingdom of God](../kt/kingdomofgod.md), [wise men](../other/wisemen.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 23:03
* Luke 23:38
* Matthew 02:02
* Matthew 27:11
* Matthew 27:35-37

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G935, G2453

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

King of the Jews, king of the Jews

### Levi

#### Facts:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term "Levite" refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

* The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
* All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
* The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
* Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
* Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: [Matthew](../names/matthew.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
* 1 Kings 08:3-5
* Acts 04:36-37
* Genesis 29:34
* John 01:19-21
* Luke 10:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical, Levi's, Levite's, Levites'

### Mary

#### Facts:

Mary was a young woman living in the city of Nazareth who was pledged to be married to a man named Joseph. God chose Mary to be the mother of Jesus the Messiah, the Son of God.

* The Holy Spirit miraculously caused Mary to become pregnant while she was a virgin.
* An angel told Mary that the baby to be born to her was the Son of God and that she must name him Jesus.
* Mary loved God and praised him for being gracious to her.
* Joseph married Mary, but she remained a virgin until after the baby was born.
* Mary thought deeply about the amazing things that the shepherds and wise men said about the baby Jesus.
* Mary and Joseph took the baby Jesus to be dedicated at the temple. Later they took him to Egypt to escape King Herod's plot to kill the baby. Eventually they moved back to Nazareth.
* When Jesus was an adult, Mary was with him when he changed water to wine at a wedding in Cana.
* The gospels also mention that Mary was at the cross when Jesus was dying. He told his disciple John to take care of her like his own mother.

(See also: [Cana](../names/cana.md), [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [Herod the Great](../names/herodthegreat.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [Joseph (NT)](../names/josephnt.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [virgin](../other/virgin.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 02:04
* John 02:12
* Luke 01:29
* Luke 01:35
* Mark 06:03
* Matthew 01:16
* Matthew 01:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3137

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Mary, the mother of Jesus

### Mary Magdalene

#### Facts:

Mary Magdalene was one of several women who believed in Jesus and followed him in his ministry. She was known as the one whom Jesus had healed from seven demons who had controlled her.

* Mary Magdalene and some other women helped support Jesus and his apostles by giving to them.
* She is also mentioned as one of the women who were the first to see Jesus after he rose from the dead.
* As Mary Magdalene stood outside the empty tomb, she saw Jesus standing there and he told her to go tell the other disciples that he was alive again.

(See also: [demon](../kt/demon.md), [demon-possessed](../kt/demonpossessed.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 08:1-3
* Luke 24:8-10
* Mark 15:39-41
* Matthew 27:54-56

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3094, G3137

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Mary ... Magdalene

### Matthew

#### Facts:

Matthew was one of the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his apostles. He was also known as Levi son of Alphaeus.

* Levi (Matthew) was a tax-collector from Capernaum before he met Jesus.
* Matthew wrote the gospel that bears his name.
* There are several other men named Levi in the Bible.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [Levite](../names/levite.md), [tax collector](../other/tax.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 05:27
* Luke 06:14-16
* Mark 02:14
* Mark 03:17-19
* Matthew 09:09
* Matthew 10:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3017, G3156

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Matthew, Levi

### Moses

#### Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

* When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
* God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
* After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
* Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(See also: [Miriam](../names/miriam.md), [Promised Land](../kt/promisedland.md), [Ten Commandments](../other/tencommandments.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:21
* Acts 07:30
* Exodus 02:10
* Exodus 09:01
* Matthew 17:04
* Romans 05:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Moses, Moses'

### Most High

#### Facts:

The term "Most High" is a title for God. It refers to his greatness or authority.

* The meaning of this term is similar to the meaning of "Sovereign" or "Supreme."
* The word "high" in this title does not refer to physical height or distance. It refers to greatness.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term can also be translated as "Most High God" or "Most Supreme being" or "God Most High" or "Greatest One" or "Supreme One" or "God, who is Greater than all."
* If a word like "high" is used, make sure it does not refer to being physically high or tall.

(See also: [God](../kt/god.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:47-50
* Acts 16:16-18
* Daniel 04:17-18
* Deuteronomy 32:7-8
* Genesis 14:17-18
* Hebrews 07:1-3
* Hosea 07:16
* Lamentations 03:35
* Luke 01:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5945, G5310

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Most High

### Mount of Olives

#### Facts:

The Mount of Olives is a mountain or large hill located near the east side of the city of Jerusalem. It is about 787 meters high.

* In the Old Testament, this mountain is sometimes referred to as "the mountain that is east of Jerusalem."
* The New Testament records several occasions when Jesus and his disciples went to the Mount of Olives to pray and rest.
* Jesus was arrested in the Garden of Gethsemane, which is located on the Mount of Olives.
* This could also be translated as "Olive Hill" or "Olive Tree Mountain."

(See also: [Gethsemane](../names/gethsemane.md), [olive](../other/olive.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 19:29
* Luke 19:37
* Mark 13:03
* Matthew 21:1-3
* Matthew 24:3-5
* Matthew 26:30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2132, G3735, G1636

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Mount of Olives, mountain that is called Olives

### Nazareth

#### Facts:

Nazareth is a town in the region of Galilee in northern Israel. It is about 100 kilometers north of Jerusalem, and it took about three to five days to travel on foot.

* Joseph and Mary were from Nazareth, and this is where they raised Jesus. That is why Jesus was known as "the Nazarene."
* Many of the Jews living in Nazareth did not respect Jesus' teaching because he had grown up among them, and they thought he was just an ordinary person.
* Once, when Jesus was teaching in Nazareths synagogue, the Jews there tried to kill him because he claimed to be the Messiah and had rebuked them for rejecting him.
* The remark Nathaniel made when he heard that Jesus was from Nazareth indicated that this city was not thought of very highly.

(See also: [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [Galilee](../names/galilee.md), [Joseph (NT)](../names/josephnt.md), [Mary](../names/mary.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 26:9-11
* John 01:43-45
* Luke 01:26-29
* Mark 16:5-7
* Matthew 02:23
* Matthew 21:9-11
* Matthew 26:71-72

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3478, G3479, G3480

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Nazareth, Nazarene

### Passover

#### Facts:

The "Passover" is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

* The name of this festival comes from the fact that God "passed over" the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
* The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
* God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God "passed over" their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "Passover" could be translated by combining the words "pass" and "over" or another combination of words that has this meaning.
* It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 05:07
* 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
* 2 Kings 23:23
* Deuteronomy 16:02
* Exodus 12:26-28
* Ezra 06:21-22
* John 13:01
* Joshua 05:10-11
* Leviticus 23:4-6
* Numbers 09:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6453, G3957

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Passover

### Peter

#### Related Words:

Cephas, Simon

#### Facts:

Peter was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He was an important leader of the early Church.

* Before Jesus called him to be his disciple, Peter's name was Simon.
* Later, Jesus also named him "Cephas," which means "stone" or "rock" in the Aramaic language. The name Peter also means "stone" or "rock" in the Greek language.
* God worked through Peter to heal people and to preach the good news about Jesus.
* Two books in the New Testament are letters that Peter wrote to encourage and teach fellow believers.

(See also: [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [apostle](../kt/apostle.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:25
* Galatians 02:6-8
* Galatians 02:12
* Luke 22:58
* Mark 03:16
* Matthew 04:18-20
* Matthew 08:14
* Matthew 14:30
* Matthew 26:33-35

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2786, G4074, G4613, G4826

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas, Simon son of Jonah, Simon, Simon's

### Pharisee

#### Facts:

The Pharisees were an important, powerful group of Jewish religious leaders in Jesus' time.

* Many of them were middle class businessmen and some of them were also priests.
* Of all the Jewish leaders, the Pharisees were the most strict in obeying the Laws of Moses and other Jewish laws and traditions.
* They were very concerned about keeping the Jewish people separated from the influence of the Gentiles around them. The name "Pharisee" comes from the word to "separate."
* The Pharisees believed in life after death; they also believed in the existence of angels and other spiritual beings.
* The Pharisees and Sadducees actively opposed Jesus and the early Christians.

(See also: [council](../other/council.md), [Jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [Sadducee](../kt/sadducee.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 26:04
* John 03:1-2
* Luke 11:44
* Matthew 03:07
* Matthew 05:20
* Matthew 09:11
* Matthew 12:02
* Matthew 12:38
* Philippians 03:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5330

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Pharisee, Pharisees

### Philip

#### Facts:

In the early Christian church in Jerusalem, Philip was one of seven leaders chosen to care for the poor and needy Christians, especially the widows.

* God used Philip to share the gospel with people in many different towns in the provinces of Judea and Galilee, including an Ethiopian man he met on the desert road to Gaza from Jerusalem.
* Years later Philip was living in Caesarea when Paul and his companions stayed at his house on their way back to Jerusalem.
* Most Bible scholars think that Philip the evangelist was not the same man as Jesus' apostle by that name. Some languages may prefer to use slightly different spellings for the names of these two men to make it clear they are different men.

(See also: [Philip](../names/philiptheapostle.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:5-6
* Acts 08:06
* Acts 08:13
* Acts 08:31
* Acts 08:36
* Acts 08:40

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5376

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Philip, Philip the evangelist

### Philip

#### Facts:

Philip the apostle was one of the original twelve disciples of Jesus. He was from the town of Bethsaida.

* Philip brought Nathanael to meet Jesus.
* Jesus questioned Philip about how to provide food for a crowd of over 5,000 people.
* At the last Passover supper that Jesus ate with his disciples, he talked to them about God, his Father. Philip asked Jesus to show them the Father.
* Some languages may prefer to spell this Philip's name in a different way from the other Philip (the evangelist) to avoid confusion.

(See also: [Philip](../names/philip.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:14
* John 01:44
* John 06:06
* Luke 06:14
* Mark 03:17-19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5376

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Philip, Philip the apostle, the apostle Philip

### Philippi

#### Related Words

Philippians

#### Facts:

Philippi was a major city and Roman colony located in Macedonia in the northern part of ancient Greece. The people of Philippi were called "Philippians."

* Paul and Silas traveled to Philippi to preach about Jesus to the people there.
* While in Philippi, Paul and Silas were arrested, but God miraculously freed them.
* The New Testament book of Philippians is a letter that the apostle Paul wrote to the Christians in the church at Philippi.
* Note that this is a different city from Caesarea Philippi which was located in northeastern Israel near Mount Hermon.

(See also: [Caesarea](../names/caesarea.md), [Christian](../kt/christian.md), [church](../kt/church.md), [Macedonia](../names/macedonia.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [Silas](../names/silas.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:1-2
* Acts 16:11
* Matthew 16:13-16
* Philippians 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5374, G5375

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Philippi, Philippians

### Pilate

#### Facts:

Pilate was the governor of the Roman province of Judea who sentenced Jesus to death.

* Because Pilate was the governor, he had the authority to put criminals to death.
* The Jewish religious leaders wanted Pilate to crucify Jesus, so they lied and said that Jesus was a criminal.
* Pilate realized that Jesus was not guilty, but he was afraid of the crowd and wanted to please them, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.

(See also: [crucify](../kt/crucify.md), [governor](../other/governor.md), [guilt](../kt/guilt.md), [Judea](../names/judea.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:27-28
* Acts 13:28
* Luke 23:02
* Mark 15:02
* Matthew 27:13
* Matthew 27:58

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4091, G4194

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Pilate, Pontius Pilate

### Rabbi

#### Related Ideas:

Rabboni

#### Definition:

The term "Rabbi" literally means "my master" or "my teacher."

* It was a title of respect that was used to address a man who was a Jewish religious teacher, especially a teacher of God's laws.
* Both John the Baptist and Jesus were sometimes called "Rabbi" by their disciples.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate this term could include "My Master" or "My Teacher" or "Honorable Teacher" or "Religious Teacher." Some languages may capitalize a greeting like this, while others may not.
* The project language may also have a special way that teachers are normally addressed.
* Make sure the translation of this term does not indicate that Jesus was a schoolteacher.
* Also consider how "Rabbi" is translated in a Bible translation in a related language or a national language.

See:

(See also: [teacher](../other/teacher.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 01:49-51
* John 06:24-25
* Mark 14:43-46
* Matthew 23:8-10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4461

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Rabbi, Rabboni

### Sabbath

#### Definition:

The term "Sabbath" refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

* After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
* The command to "keep the Sabbath holy" is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
* Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
* Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called "Sabbath day" rather than only the Sabbath.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This could also be translated as "resting day" or "day for resting" or "day of not working" or "God's day of rest."
* Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in "Sabbath Day" or "Resting Day."
* Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [rest](../other/rest.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
* Acts 13:26-27
* Exodus 31:14
* Isaiah 56:6-7
* Lamentations 02:06
* Leviticus 19:03
* Luke 13:14
* Mark 02:27
* Matthew 12:02
* Nehemiah 10:32-33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sabbath, Sabbaths

### Sadducee

#### Definition:

The Sadducees were a political group of Jewish priests during the time of Jesus Christ. They supported Roman rule and did not believe in the resurrection.

* Many Sadducees were wealthy, upper-class Jews who held powerful leadership positions such as chief priest and high priest.
* The duties of the Sadducees included taking care of the temple complex and priestly tasks such as offering sacrifices.
* The Sadducees and the Pharisees strongly influenced the Roman leaders to crucify Jesus.
* Jesus spoke against these two religious groups because of their selfishness and hypocrisy.

(See also: [chief priests](../other/chiefpriests.md), [council](../other/council.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [hypocrite](../kt/hypocrite.md), [Jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md), [Pharisee](../kt/pharisee.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:03
* Acts 05:17-18
* Luke 20:27
* Matthew 03:07
* Matthew 16:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4523

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sadducee, Sadducees

### Satan

#### Related Ideas:

devil, evil one

#### Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

* The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
* Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
* God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
* The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
* The word "devil" means "accuser."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
* "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
* These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
* Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [demon](../kt/demon.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [kingdom of God](../kt/kingdomofgod.md), [tempt](../kt/tempt.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 03:08
* 1 Thessalonians 02:17-20
* 1 Timothy 05:15
* Acts 13:10
* Job 01:08
* Mark 08:33
* Zechariah 03:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7854, G1140, G1228, G4190, G4566, G4567

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Satan, devil, devil's, evil one

### Sea of Galilee

#### Facts:

The "Sea of Galilee" is a lake in eastern Israel. It was also referred to as the "Sea of Tiberias" and the "lake of Gennesaret." In the Old Testament it was called the "Sea of Kinnereth."

* The water of this lake flows south through the Jordan River down to the Salt Sea.
* Capernaum, Bethsaida, Gennesaret, and Tiberias were some of the towns located on the Sea of Galilee during New Testament times.
* Many events of Jesus' life took place on or near the Sea of Galilee.
* This term could also be translated as "lake in the region of Galilee" or "Lake Galilee" or "lake near Tiberias (Gennesaret)."

(See also: [Capernaum](../names/capernaum.md), [Galilee](../names/galilee.md), [Jordan River](../names/jordanriver.md), [Salt Sea](../names/saltsea.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 06:1-3
* Luke 05:01
* Mark 01:16-18
* Matthew 04:12-13
* Matthew 04:18-20
* Matthew 08:18-20
* Matthew 13:1-2
* Matthew 15:29-31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3220, H3672, G1056, G1082, G2281, G3041, G5085

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sea of Galilee, Sea of Kinnereth, lake of Gennesaret, Sea of Tiberias, Kinnereth

### Sidon

#### Facts:

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan's son.

* The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
* The "Sidonians" were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
* In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and for immoral behavior of their people.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Noah](../names/noah.md), [Phoenicia](../names/phonecia.md), [the sea](../names/mediterranean.md), [Tyre](../names/tyre.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 12:20
* Acts 27:3-6
* Genesis 10:15-18
* Genesis 10:19
* Mark 03:7-8
* Matthew 11:22
* Matthew 15:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6721, H6722, G4605, G4606

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sidon, Sidonians

### Sidon

#### Facts:

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan's son.

* The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
* The "Sidonians" were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
* In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and for immoral behavior of their people.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Noah](../names/noah.md), [Phoenicia](../names/phonecia.md), [the sea](../names/mediterranean.md), [Tyre](../names/tyre.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 12:20
* Acts 27:3-6
* Genesis 10:15-18
* Genesis 10:19
* Mark 03:7-8
* Matthew 11:22
* Matthew 15:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6721, H6722, G4605, G4606

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sidon, Sidonians

### Simon the Zealot

#### Facts:

Simon the Zealot was one of Jesus' twelve disciples.

* Simon is mentioned three times in the listing of Jesus' disciples, but little else is known about him.
* Simon was one of the Eleven who met to pray together in Jerusalem after Jesus went back up into heaven.
* The term "zealot" may mean that Simon was a member of "the Zealots," a Jewish religious party that was very zealous in upholding the Law of Moses while strongly opposing the Roman government.
* Or, "zealot" may simply mean "the zealous one," referring to Simon's religious zeal.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [the twelve](../kt/thetwelve.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:12-14
* Luke 06:14-16
* Mark 03:17-19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2208, G2581, G4613

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Simon the Zealot, Simon ... Zealot

### Son of God

#### Related Ideas:

the Son

#### Facts:

The term "Son of God" refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as "the Son."

* Unlike anyone else, God the Father, the Son of God, and the Holy Spirit are all one God.
* God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all fully and equally God.
* The Son of God has the same character as God the Father.

Because Jesus is God's Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* For the term "Son of God," it is best to translate "Son" with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
* Make sure the word used to translate "son" fits with the word used to translate "father" and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
* Using a capital letter to begin "Son" may help show that this is talking about God.
* The phrase "the Son" is a shortened form of "the Son of God," especially when it occurs in the same context as "the Father."

(See also: [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [ancestor](../other/father.md), [God](../kt/god.md), [God the Father](../kt/godthefather.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [son](../kt/son.md), [sons of God](../kt/sonsofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:10
* Acts 09:20
* Colossians 01:17
* Galatians 02:20
* Hebrews 04:14
* John 03:18
* Luke 10:22
* Matthew 11:27
* Revelation 02:18
* Romans 08:29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H426, H430, H1121, H1247, G2316, G5207

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Son of God, the Son

### Son of Man

#### Related Ideas:

mankind, son of man

#### Definition:

The title "Son of Man" was used by Jesus to refer to himself. He often used this term instead of saying "I" or "me."

* In the Bible, "son of man" could be a way of referring to or addressing a man. It could also mean "human being."
* Throughout the Old Testament book of Ezekiel, God frequently addressed Ezekiel as "son of man." For example he said, "You, son of man, must prophesy."
* The prophet Daniel saw a vision of a "son of man" coming with the clouds, which is a reference to the coming Messiah.
* Jesus also said that the Son of Man will be coming back someday on the clouds.
* These references to the Son of Man coming on the clouds reveal that Jesus the Messiah is God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When Jesus uses the term "Son of Man" it could be translated as "the One who became a human being" or "the Man from heaven."
* Some translators occasionally include "I" or "me" with this title (as in "I, the Son of Man") to make it clear that Jesus was talking about himself.
* Check to make sure that the translation of this term does not give a wrong meaning (such as referring to an illegitimate son or giving the wrong impression that Jesus was only a human being).
* When used to refer to a person, "son of man" could also be translated as "you, a human being" or "you, man" or "human being" or "man."

(See also: [heaven](../kt/heaven.md), [son](../kt/son.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:56
* Daniel 07:14
* Ezekiel 43:6-8
* John 03:12-13
* Luke 06:05
* Mark 02:10
* Matthew 13:37
* Psalms 080:17-18
* Revelation 14:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H120, H606, H1121, H1247, G444, G5207

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Son of Man, mankind, son of man

### Thomas

#### Facts:

Thomas was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his disciples and later, apostles. He was also known as "Didymus," which means "twin."

* Near the end of Jesus' life, he told his disciples that he was going away to be with the Father and would prepare a place for them to be with him. Thomas asked Jesus how they could know the way to get there when they didn't even know where he was going.
* After Jesus died and came back to life, Thomas said he would not believe that Jesus was really alive again unless he could see and feel the scars where Jesus had been wounded.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [God the Father](../kt/godthefather.md), [the twelve](../kt/thetwelve.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:12-14
* John 11:15-16
* Luke 06:14-16
* Mark 03:17-19
* Matthew 10:2-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2381

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Thomas, Thomas'

### Tyre

#### Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called "Tyrians."

* Part of the city was located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the mainland.
* Because of its location and its valuable natural resources, such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
* King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers to help build a palace for King David.
* Years later, Hiram also sent King Solomon wood and skilled laborers to help build the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
* Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [cedar](../other/cedar.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [the sea](../names/mediterranean.md), [Phoenicia](../names/phonecia.md), [Sidon](../names/sidon.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 12:20
* Mark 03:7-8
* Matthew 11:22
* Matthew 15:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6865, H6876, G5183, G5184

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Tyre, Tyrians

### Zebedee

#### Facts:

Zebedee was a fisherman from Galilee who is known because of his sons, James and John, who were Jesus' disciples. They are often identified in the New Testament as the "sons of Zebedee."

* Zebedee's sons were also fishermen and worked with him to catch fish.
* James and John quit their fishing work with their father Zebedee and left to go follow Jesus.

(See also: [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [fishermen](../other/fisherman.md), [James (son of Zebedee)](../names/jamessonofzebedee.md), [John (the apostle)](../names/johntheapostle.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 21:1-3
* Luke 05:8-11
* Mark 01:19-20
* Matthew 04:21-22
* Matthew 20:20
* Matthew 26:36-38

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2199

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Zebedee, Zebedee's

### abomination

#### Related Ideas:

abominable, abominably, disgusting, foul

#### Definition:

The term "abomination" is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

* The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an "abomination." This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn't want to associate with them or be near them.
* Some of the things that the Bible calls "an abomination to Yahweh" include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
* In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an "abomination of desolation" that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "abomination" could also be translated by "something God hates" or "something disgusting" or "disgusting practice" or "very evil action."
* Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase "is an abomination to" could include "is greatly hated by" or "is disgusting to" or "is totally unacceptable to" or "causes deep disgust."
* The phrase "abomination of desolation" could be translated as "defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed" or "disgusting thing that causes great sorrow."

(See also: [adultery](../kt/adultery.md), [desecrate](../other/desecrate.md), [desolate](../other/desolate.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezra 09:1-2
* Genesis 46:34
* Isaiah 01:13
* Matthew 24:15
* Proverbs 26:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, H8581, G946

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

abominable, abomination, abominations, committed ... abominably, disgusting practices, disgusting thing, disgusting things, foul, foul thing

### accuse

#### Related Ideas:

accusation, accuser

#### Definition:

The terms "accuse" and "accusation" refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an "accuser."

* A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
* In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called "the accuser."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 19:40
* Hosea 04:04
* Jeremiah 02:9-11
* Luke 06:6-8
* Romans 08:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2778, H3198, H6818, G1458, G2649, G2723, G2724

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

accusation, accusations, accuse, accused, accuser, accusers, accuses, accusing

### adultery

#### Related Ideas:

adulterer, adulteress, adulterous, immoral woman

#### Definition:

The term "adultery" refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person's spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term "adulterous" describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

* The term "adulterer" refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
* Sometimes the term "adulteress" is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
* Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
* God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.
* The term "adulterous" is often used in a figurative sense to describe the people of Israel as being unfaithful to God, especially when they worshiped false gods.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If the target language does not have one word that means "adultery," this term could be translated with a phrase such as "having sexual relations with someone else's wife" or "being intimate with another person's spouse."
* Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as "sleeping with someone else's spouse" or "being unfaithful to one's wife."
* When "adulterous" is used in a figurative sense, it is best to translate it literally in order to communicate God's view of his disobedient people as being compared to an unfaithful spouse. If this does not communicate accurately in the target language, the figurative use of "adulterous" could be translated as "unfaithful" or "immoral" or "like an unfaithful spouse."

(See also: [commit](../other/commit.md), [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [sexual immorality](../other/fornication.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 20:14
* Hosea 04:1-2
* Luke 16:18
* Matthew 05:28
* Matthew 12:39
* Revelation 02:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2114, H5003, H5004, H5237, G3428, G3429, G3430, G3431, G3432

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

adulterer, adulterers, adulteress, adulteresses, adulteries, adulterous, adultery, immoral woman

### afflict

#### Related Ideas:

affliction, difficulty

#### Definition:

The term "afflict" means to cause someone distress or suffering. An "affliction" is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

* God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
* God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
* To "be afflicted with" means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To afflict someone could be translated as "cause someone to experience troubles" or "cause someone to suffer" or "cause suffering to come."
* In certain contexts "afflict" could be translated as "happen to" or "come to" or "bring suffering."
* A phrase like "afflict someone with leprosy" could be translated as "cause someone to be sick with leprosy."
* When a disease or disaster is sent to "afflict" people or animals, this could be translated as "cause suffering to."
* Depending on the context, the term "affliction" could be translated as "calamity" or "sickness" or "suffering" or "great distress."
* The phrase "afflicted with" could also be translated as "suffering from" or "sick with."

(See also: [leprosy](../other/leprosy.md), [plague](../other/plague.md), [suffer](../other/suffer.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Thessalonians 01:06
* Amos 05:12
* Colossians 01:24
* Exodus 22:22-24
* Genesis 12:17-20
* Genesis 15:12-13
* Genesis 29:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H5221, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G1453, G2346, G2347, G2852, G3804, G4912

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

afflict, afflicted, afflicting, affliction, afflictions, difficulties

### age

#### Related Ideas:

aged, from ancient times, old age

#### Definition:

The term "age" refers to the length of time a person has lived. The term "aged" describes a person who is very old. The term "age" is also used to refer generally to a time period.

* Jesus refers to "this age" as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
* There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.
* Other words used to express an extended period of time include "era" and "season."
* The phrase "ancient times" refers to times long ago.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "age" could also be translated as "era" or "number of years old" or "time period" or "time."
* The phrase "at a very old age" could be translated as "when he was very old" or "when he had lived a very long time."
* The phrase "this present evil age" means "during this time right now when people are very evil."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 29:28
* 1 Corinthians 02:07
* Hebrews 06:05
* Job 05:26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5769, H7872, G165, G166, G1074

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

age, aged, ages, from ancient times, old age

### age

#### Related Ideas:

aged, from ancient times, old age

#### Definition:

The term "age" refers to the length of time a person has lived. The term "aged" describes a person who is very old. The term "age" is also used to refer generally to a time period.

* Jesus refers to "this age" as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
* There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.
* Other words used to express an extended period of time include "era" and "season."
* The phrase "ancient times" refers to times long ago.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "age" could also be translated as "era" or "number of years old" or "time period" or "time."
* The phrase "at a very old age" could be translated as "when he was very old" or "when he had lived a very long time."
* The phrase "this present evil age" means "during this time right now when people are very evil."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 29:28
* 1 Corinthians 02:07
* Hebrews 06:05
* Job 05:26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5769, H7872, G165, G166, G1074

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

age, aged, ages, from ancient times, old age

### alarm

#### Related Ideas:

sound an alarm

#### Definitions:

An alarm is something that warns people about something that could harm them. To "be alarmed" is to be very worried and frightened about something dangerous or threatening.

* King Jehoshapat was alarmed when he heard that the Moabites were planning to attack the kingdom of Judah.
* Jesus told his disciples not to be alarmed when they hear about disasters happening in the last days.
* The expression "sound an alarm" means to give a warning. In ancient times, a person could sound an alarm by making a noise.

#### Translation Suggestions

* To "alarm someone" means to "cause someone to worry" or to "worry someone."
* To "be alarmed" could be translated as "be worried" or "be frightened" or "be very concerned."
* The expression "sound an alarm" could be translated by "publicly warn" or "announce that danger is coming" or "blow a trumpet to warn about danger."

(See also: [Jehoshaphat](../names/jehoshaphat.md), [Moab](../names/moab.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 11:44-45
* Jeremiah 04:19-20
* Numbers 10:9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2648, H7321, H8643

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

alarm, alarms, sound ... alarm

### amazed

#### Related Ideas:

amazement, appalled, astonished, astounded, incomprehensible, marvel, marvelous, perplexed, remarkable, surprised, wonder, wonderful

#### Definition:

Some of these terms mean to be very surprised because of something very unusual that happened. Many of these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened. Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.

* The words "amazed," "astonished," and "astounded" describe someone who is very surprised because of something very unusual that happened.
* The word "appalled" describes someone who is amazed or horrified by something that is bad or evil.
* The word "perplexed" describes someone who is to be amazed and troubled, not knowing what to think or how to act.
* People "marvel" and "wonder" when they are surprised by something very unusual.
* "Amazement" and "wonder" are what people feel when they are amazed.

Some of these terms describe things that are very unusual and surprise people.

* The words "amazing", "astonishing," "marvelous," "remarkable," and "wonderful" describe things that are very unusual and surprise people.
* The word "appalling" describes something that is very bad and causes people to be amazed or horrified.
* The word "incomprehensible" describes something that is so great that people cannot ever understand it.
* A "wonder" is an extraordinary and surprising thing that happens.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean "struck with amazement" or "standing outside of (oneself)." These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
* Other ways to translate these words could be "extremely surprised" or "very shocked."

(See also: [miracle](../kt/miracle.md), [sign](../kt/sign.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:9-11
* Acts 09:20-22
* Galatians 01:06
* Mark 02:10-12
* Matthew 07:28
* Matthew 15:29-31
* Matthew 19:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H226, H852, H926, H943, H2865, H3820, H4159, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H8047, H8074, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, G639, G1411, G1568, G1569, G1605, G1611, G1839, G2284, G2285, G2296, G2297, G2298, G4023, G4592, G5059

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

amazed, amazement, amazing events, amazing things, appalled, appalling, astonish, astonished, astonishing, astounded, incomprehensible, marvel, marveled, marveling, marvelous, marvelous things, perplexed, remarkable, surprised, wonder, wonderful, wondering, wonders

### angel

#### Related Ideas:

archangel

#### Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term "archangel" refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

* The word "angel" literally means "messenger."
* The term "archangel" literally means "chief messenger." The only angel referred to in the Bible as an "archangel" is Michael.
* In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
* Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
* Angels have God's authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
* Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
* A special phrase, "angel of Yahweh," has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean "angel who represents Yahweh" or "messenger who serves Yahweh." 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of "I" as if Yahweh himself was talking.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "angel" could include "messenger from God" or "God's heavenly servant" or "God's spirit messenger."
* The term "archangel" could be translated as "chief angel" or "head ruling angel" or "leader of the angels."
* Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
* The phrase "angel of Yahweh" should be translated using the words for "angel" and "Yahweh." This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include "angel from Yahweh" or "angel sent by Yahweh" or "Yahweh, who looked like an angel."

(See also: [chief](../other/chief.md), [head](../other/head.md), [messenger](../other/messenger.md), [Michael](../names/michael.md), [ruler](../other/ruler.md), [servant](../other/servant.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 24:16
* Acts 10:3-6
* Acts 12:23
* Colossians 02:18-19
* Genesis 48:16
* Luke 02:13
* Mark 08:38
* Matthew 13:50
* Revelation 01:20
* Zechariah 01:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H47, H4397, G32, G743, G2465

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

angel, angels, archangel

### anger

#### Related Ideas:

angry, indignant, indignation, quick-tempered

#### Definition:

To "be angry" or to "have anger" means to be very displeased, irritated, and upset about something or against someone.

* When people get angry, they are often sinful and selfish, but sometimes they have righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
* God's anger (also called "wrath") expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
* The phrase "provoke to anger" means "cause to be angry."
* A "quick-tempered" person becomes angry quickly and easily.
* To be "indignant" is to grieve to the point of anger or to be angry because someone has been arrogant.

(See also: [wrath](../kt/wrath.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ephesians 04:26
* Exodus 32:11
* Isaiah 57:16-17
* John 06:52-53
* Mark 10:14
* Matthew 26:08
* Psalms 018:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H599, H639, H1149, H1984, H2152, H2194, H2195, H2198, H2534, H2734, H2740, H2787, H3179, H3707, H3708, H3824, H4751, H4843, H5674, H5678, H6225, H7107, H7110, H7266, H7307, H7852, G23, G1758, G2371, G2372, G3164, G3709, G3710, G3711, G3947, G3949, G3950, G4360, G5520

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

anger, anger burned, angered, angry, burning anger, indignant, indignation, quick-tempered

### anoint

#### Related Ideas:

perfume, sons of fresh olive oil

#### Definition:

The term "anoint" means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

* In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
* Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
* In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
* The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
* After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
* The titles "Messiah" (Hebrew) and "Christ" (Greek) mean "the Anointed (One)."
* Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "anoint" could be translated as "pour oil on" or "put oil on" or "consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on."
* To "be anointed" could be translated as "be consecrated with oil." or "be appointed" or "be consecrated."
* In some contexts the term "anoint" could be translated as "appoint."
* A phrase like "the anointed priest," could be translated as "the priest who was consecrated with oil" or "the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil."

(See also: [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [consecrate](../kt/consecrate.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [King of the Jews](../kt/kingofthejews.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md) )

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:20
* 1 John 02:27
* 1 Samuel 16:2-3
* Acts 04:27-28
* Amos 06:5-6
* Exodus 29:5-7
* James 05:13-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1101, H1878, H3323, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, G218, G1472, G3462, G3464, G5545, G5548

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

anoint, anointed, anointing, perfume, sons of fresh olive oil

### apostle

#### Related Ideas:

apostleship

#### Definition:

The "apostles" were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term "apostleship" refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

* The word "apostle" means "someone who is sent out for a special purpose." The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
* Jesus' twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
* By God's power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The word "apostle" can also be translated with a word or phrase that means "someone who is sent out" or "sent-out one" or "person who is called to go out and preach God's message to people."
* It is important to translate the terms "apostle" and "disciple" in different ways.
* Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [James (son of Zebedee)](../names/jamessonofzebedee.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [the twelve](../kt/thetwelve.md))

#### Bible References:

* Jude 01:17-19
* Luke 09:12-14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G651, G652, G2491, G5376, G5570

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

apostle, apostles, apostles', apostleship

### appoint

#### Related Ideas:

appointment, direct, predetermine, put in place, reserve, select, set in place, set over, set up, set under

#### Definition:

The terms "appoint" and "appointed" refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

* To "be appointed" can also refer to being "chosen" to receive something, as in "appointed to eternal life." That people were "appointed to eternal life" means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
* The phrase "appointed time" refers to God's "chosen time" or "planned time" for something to happen.
* The word "appoint" may also mean to "command" or "assign" someone to do something.
* To "predetermine" something is to decide beforehand that it will happen and make sure that it happens.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, ways to translate "appoint" could include "choose" or "assign" or "formally choose" or "designate."
* The term "appointed" could be translated as "assigned" or "planned" or "specifically chose."
* The phrase "be appointed" could also be translated as "be chosen."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 08:11
* Acts 03:20
* Acts 06:02
* Acts 13:48
* Genesis 41:33-34
* Numbers 03:9-10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H561, H977, H2163, H2706, H2708, H3198, H3245, H3259, H4150, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5258, H5414, H5975, H6485, H6680, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7761, H7896, G322, G606, G2525, G2749, G2820, G3724, G4296, G4384, G4400, G4929, G5021, G5083, G5087

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

appoint, appointed, appointed by lot, appointment, appoints, area ... reserved, directed, predetermined, put ... in place, reserved, selected, selects, set ... in place, set ... over, set ... up, set under

### ark

#### Related Ideas:

chest

#### Definition:

The term "ark" literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

* In the English Bible, the word "ark" is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
* Ways to translate this term could include "very large boat" or "barge" or "cargo ship" or "large, box-shaped boat."
* The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as "basket."
* In the phrase "ark of the covenant," a different Hebrew word is used for "ark." This could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
* When choosing a term to translate "ark," it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](../kt/arkofthecovenant.md), [basket](../other/basket.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 03:20
* Exodus 16:33-36
* Exodus 30:06
* Genesis 08:4-5
* Luke 17:27
* Matthew 24:37-39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H727, H8392, G2787

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ark, chest

### ark

#### Related Ideas:

chest

#### Definition:

The term "ark" literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

* In the English Bible, the word "ark" is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
* Ways to translate this term could include "very large boat" or "barge" or "cargo ship" or "large, box-shaped boat."
* The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as "basket."
* In the phrase "ark of the covenant," a different Hebrew word is used for "ark." This could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
* When choosing a term to translate "ark," it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](../kt/arkofthecovenant.md), [basket](../other/basket.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 03:20
* Exodus 16:33-36
* Exodus 30:06
* Genesis 08:4-5
* Luke 17:27
* Matthew 24:37-39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H727, H8392, G2787

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ark, chest

### ash

#### Related Ideas:

powder

#### Definitions:

The term "ash" or "ashes" refers to the grey powdery substance that is left behind after wood is burned. It is sometimes used figuratively to refer to something that is worthless or useless.

* In the Bible sometimes the word "dust" is used when speaking about ashes. It can also refer to the fine, loose dirt that can form on dry ground.
* An "ash heap" is a pile of ashes.
* In ancient times, sitting in ashes was a sign of mourning or grieving.
* When grieving, it was the custom to wear rough, scratchy sackcloth and sit in ashes or sprinkle the ashes on the head.
* Putting ashes on the head was also a sign of humiliation or embarrassment.
* Striving for something worthless, is said to be like "feeding on ashes."
* When translating "ashes," use the word in the project language that refers to the burned-up remains after wood has burned.
* Note that an "ash tree" is a completely different term.

(See also: [fire](../other/fire.md), [sackcloth](../other/sackcloth.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 20:10
* Jeremiah 06:26
* Psalms 102:09
* Psalms 113:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H80, H665, H6083, H6368, H7834, G2868, G4700, G5077, G5522

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ash, ashes, powder

### asleep

#### Related Ideas:

sleep, sleeper

#### Definition:

These terms can have figurative meanings relating to death.

* To "sleep" or "be asleep" can be a metaphor meaning to "be dead."
* The expression "fall asleep" means start sleeping, or, figuratively, die.
* To "sleep with one’s fathers" means to die, as one’s ancestors have, or to be dead, as one's ancestors are.
* To "lie down" with others who have died means to die, as they have died, or to be dead, as they are dead.
* The word "lie" often appears in connection with the idea of sleep. This "lie" refers to lying down on a bed or other sleeping place, not to saying things that are untrue.

The phrases "lie with" and "sleep with," when referring to what a man and a woman do together, is a euphemism for them having sexual relations.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To "fall asleep" could be translated as to "suddenly become asleep" or to "start sleeping" or to "die," depending on its meaning.
* Note: It is especially important to keep the figurative expression in contexts where the audience did not understand the meaning. For example, when Jesus told his disciples that Lazarus had "fallen asleep" they thought he meant that Lazarus was just sleeping naturally. In this context, it would not make sense to translate this as "he died."
* Some project languages may have a different expression for death or dying which could be used if the expressions "sleep" and "asleep" do not make sense.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 18:27-29
* 1 Thessalonians 04:14
* Acts 07:60
* Daniel 12:02
* Psalms 044:23
* Romans 13:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1957, H3462, H3463, H7290, H7901, H8139, H8142, H8153, H8639, G879, G1852, G1853, G2518, G2837, G5258

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

asleep, fallen asleep, fell asleep, sleep, lay down, lies down, sleeper, sleeping, sleeps, slept

### astray

#### Related Ideas:

draw away, make a mistake, mislead, mistaken, wander

#### Definition:

The terms "stray" and "go astray" mean to disobey God's will. People who are "led astray" have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

* The word "astray" gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
* Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have "strayed." God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and "gone astray."
* To "draw away" someone or "mislead" someone is to lead him astray.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The phrase "go astray" could be translated as "go away from God" or "take a wrong path away from God's will" or "stop obeying God" or "live in a way that goes away from God."
* To "lead someone astray" could be translated as "cause someone to disobey God" or "influence someone to stop obeying God" or "cause someone to follow you down a wrong path."

(See also: [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [shepherd](../other/shepherd.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 03:07
* 2 Timothy 03:13
* Exodus 23:4-5
* Ezekiel 48:10-12
* Matthew 18:13
* Matthew 24:05
* Psalms 058:03
* Psalms 119:110

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5074, H5080, H7683, H7686, H8582, G1294, G4105, G5351

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

astray, drawn away, go astray, goes astray, gone astray, lead ... astray, leads ... astray, led ... astray, made ... mistake, mislead, misleading, misleads, misled, mistaken, stray, strayed, straying, strays, wander, went astray

### authority

#### Related Ideas:

authority to judge, place in charge, put in charge, right

#### Definition:

The term "authority" refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

* Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
* The word "authorities" can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
* The word "authorities" can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God’s authority.
* Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
* Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "authority" can also be translated as "control" or "right" or "qualifications."
* Sometimes "authority" is used with the meaning of "power."
* When "authorities" is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as "leaders" or "rulers" or "powers."
* The phrase "by his own authority" could also be translated as, "with his own right to lead" or "based on his own qualifications."
* The expression, "under authority" could be translated as, "responsible to obey" or "having to obey others' commands."

(See also: [citizen](../other/citizen.md), [command](../kt/command.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [power](../kt/power.md), [ruler](../other/ruler.md))

#### Bible References:

* Colossians 02:10
* Esther 09:29
* Genesis 41:35
* Jonah 03:6-7
* Luke 12:05
* Luke 20:1-2
* Mark 01:22
* Matthew 08:09
* Matthew 28:19
* Titus 03:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2940, H4475, H4910, H4915, H6486, H6666, H6680, H7980, H7990, H8633, G831, G1413, G1849, G1850, G2003, G2525, G2715, G2917, G2963, G5247

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

authorities, authority, authority to judge, places ... in charge, put ... in charge, puts ... in charge, right, was ... in charge, were ... in charge

### awe

#### Related Ideas:

awesome

#### Definition:

The term "awe" refers to the sense of amazement and deep respect that comes from seeing something great, powerful, and magnificent.

* The term "awesome" describes someone or something that inspires a feeling of awe.
* The visions of the glory of God seen by the prophet Ezekiel were "awesome" or "awe-inspiring."
* Typical human responses showing awe of God's presence include: fear, bowing or kneeling down, covering the face, and trembling.

(See also: [fear](../kt/fear.md), [glory](../kt/glory.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 17:21
* Genesis 28:16-17
* Hebrews 12:28
* Psalm 022:23
* Psalms 147:4-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H366, H1481, H2865, H3372, H6206, H6342, H7227, G2124

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

awe, awesome, awesome deeds

### ax

#### Definition:

An ax is tool used for cutting or chopping trees or wood.

* An ax usually has a long wooden handle with a large metal blade attached to the end.
* If your culture has a tool that is similar to an ax, the name of that tool could be used to translate "ax."
* Other ways to translate this term could include "tree-cutting tool" or "wooden tool with blade" or "long-handled wood-chopping tool."
* In one Old Testament event, the blade of an ax fell into a river, so it is best if the tool that is described has a blade that can come loose from the wooden handle.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 06:7-8
* 2 Kings 06:05
* Judges 09:48-49
* Luke 03:9
* Matthew 03:10
* Psalm 035:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1631, H2719, H7134, G513

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ax, axes

### baptize

#### Related Ideas:

baptism

#### Definition:

In the New Testament, the terms "baptize" and "baptism" usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

* Besides water baptism, the Bible talks about being "baptized with the Holy Spirit" and "baptized with fire."
* The term "baptism" is also used in the Bible to refer to going through great suffering.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
* Depending on the context, the term "baptize" could be translated as "purify," "pour out on," "plunge (or dip) into," "wash," or "spiritually cleanse." For example, "baptize you with water" could be translated as, "plunge you into water."
* The term "baptism" could be translated as "purification," "a pouring out," "a dipping," "a cleansing," or "a spiritual washing."
* When it refers to suffering, "baptism" could also be translated as "a time of terrible suffering" or "a cleansing through severe suffering."
* Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [repent](../kt/repent.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:38
* Acts 08:36
* Acts 09:18
* Acts 10:48
* Luke 03:16
* Matthew 03:14
* Matthew 28:18-19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G907

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

baptism, baptize, baptized, baptizing

### basket

#### Related Ideas:

basketful, cage

#### Definition:

The term "basket" refers to a container made of woven material.

* In biblical times, baskets were probably woven with strong plant materials, such as wood from peeled tree branches or twigs.
* A basket could be coated with a waterproof substance so that it could float.
* When Moses was a baby, his mother made a waterproof basket to put him in and floated it among the reeds of the Nile River.
* The word translated as "basket" in that story is the same word that is translated as "ark" referring to the boat that Noah built. The common meaning of its use in these two contexts may be "floating container."
* A "cage" is a container in which people keep animals.

(See also: [ark](../kt/ark.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [Nile River](../names/nileriver.md), [Noah](../names/noah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 11:33
* Acts 09:25
* Amos 08:01
* John 06:13-15
* Judges 06:19-20
* Matthew 14:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H374, H1731, H1736, H2935, H3619, H5536, H8392, G2894, G3426, G4553, G4711

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

basket, basketfuls, baskets, cage

### bear

#### Related Ideas:

bearer, bear with, birth, carry, childbirth, support, sustain, tolerate

#### Definitions:

The term "bear" literally means "carry" something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

* When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means "give birth to" a child.
* To "bear a burden" means to "experience difficult things." These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
* To "bear with" someone means to be patient with them and their faults.
* A common expression in the Bible is "bear fruit," which means "produce fruit" or "have fruit."
* The expression "bear witness" means "testify" or "report what one has seen or experienced."
* The statement that "a son will not bear the iniquity of his father" means that he "will not be held responsible for" or "will not be punished for" his father's sins.
* In general, this term could be translated as "carry" or "be responsible for" or "produce" or "have" or "endure," depending on the context.

(See also: [burden](../other/burden.md), [Elisha](../names/elisha.md), [endure](../other/endure.md), [fruit](../other/fruit.md), [iniquity](../kt/iniquity.md), [report](../other/report.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md), [strength](../other/strength.md), [testimony](../kt/testimony.md), [testimony](../kt/testimony.md))

#### Bible References:

* Lamentations 03:27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2032, H2232, H3201, H3205, H3211, H4138, H4853, H5375, H5445, H5449, H5582, H6030, H6403, H6509, H6779, H7617, G142, G430, G941, G1080, G1627, G2592, G3140, G4722, G4828, G5041, G5088, G5342, G5409, G5576

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bear, bearer, bearing, bearing with, bears, birth, bore, born, borne, carried, carry, carrying, childbirth, gave birth, give birth, given birth, gives birth, has ... borne, have ... borne, support, supported, supports, sustain, sustains, tolerate

### bear

#### Definition:

A bear is a large, four-legged furry animal with dark brown or black hair, with sharp teeth and claws. Bears were common in Israel during Bible times.

* These animals live in forests and mountain areas; they eat fish, insects, and plants.
* In the Old Testament, the bear is used as a symbol of strength.
* While tending sheep, the shepherd David fought a bear and defeated it.
* Two bears came out of the forest and attacked a group of youths who had mocked the prophet Elisha.

(See also: [David](../names/david.md), [Elisha](../names/elisha.md))

#### Bible References:

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1677, G715

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bear, bears

### beg

#### Related Ideas:

ask, beggar, needy

#### Definition:

The term "beg" means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

* Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don't know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
* A "beggar" is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
* Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, "plead" or "urgently ask" or "demand money" or "regularly ask for money."

(See also: [plead](../other/plead.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 16:20
* Mark 06:56
* Matthew 14:36
* Psalm 045:12-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H34, H577, H1245, H6035, H7592, G154, G1189, G1871, G2065, G3726, G3870, G4319, G4434

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ask, asking, asks, beg, beggar, begged, begging, needy

### beg

#### Related Ideas:

ask, beggar, needy

#### Definition:

The term "beg" means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

* Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don't know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
* A "beggar" is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
* Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, "plead" or "urgently ask" or "demand money" or "regularly ask for money."

(See also: [plead](../other/plead.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 16:20
* Mark 06:56
* Matthew 14:36
* Psalm 045:12-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H34, H577, H1245, H6035, H7592, G154, G1189, G1871, G2065, G3726, G3870, G4319, G4434

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ask, asking, asks, beg, beggar, begged, begging, needy

### believe

#### Related Ideas:

be persuaded, belief, believer, have faith, persuade, persuasive

#### Definition:

The terms "believe" and "believe in" are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

* believe
* To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
* To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.
* To persuade someone is to get that person to believe that something is true.
* believe in
* To "believe in" someone means to "trust in" that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
* When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
* The phrase "have faith in" usually has the same meaning as "believe in."
* To "believe in Jesus" means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

In the Bible, the term "believer" refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

* The term "believer" literally means "person who believes."
* The term "Christian" eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

The term "unbelief" refers to not believing something or someone.

* In the Bible, "unbelief" refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one's Savior.
* A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an "unbeliever."

#### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "believe" and "believe in":

* To "believe" could be translated as to "know to be true" or "know to be right."
* To "believe in" could be translated as "trust completely" or "trust and obey" or "completely rely on and follow."

Translating "believer":

* Some translations may prefer to say "believer in Jesus" or "believer in Christ."
* This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means "person who trusts in Jesus" or "someone who knows Jesus and lives for him."
* Other ways to translate "believer" could be "follower of Jesus" or "person who knows and obeys Jesus."
* The term "believer" is a general term for any believer in Christ, while "disciple" and "apostle" were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.

Translating "unbelief" and "unbeliever":

* Other ways to translate "unbelief" could include "lack of faith" or "not believing."
* The term "unbeliever" could be translated as "person who does not believe in Jesus" or "someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [Christian](../kt/christian.md), [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [faith](../kt/faith.md), [trust](../kt/trust.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 15:06
* Genesis 45:26
* Job 09:16-18
* Habakkuk 01:5-7
* Mark 06:4-6
* Mark 01:14-15
* Luke 09:41
* John 01:12
* Acts 06:05
* Acts 09:42
* Acts 28:23-24
* Romans 03:03
* 1 Corinthians 06:01
* 1 Corinthians 09:05
* 2 Corinthians 06:15
* Hebrews 03:12
* 1 John 03:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H539, H3948, H6601, G544, G569, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

am persuaded, belief, believe, believed, believer, believers, believes, believing, has faith, persuade, persuaded, persuading, persuasiveness, were persuaded

### beloved

#### Related Ideas:

dear, lovely, treasured

#### Definition:

The term "beloved" is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

* The term "beloved" literally means "loved (one)" or "(who is) loved."
* God refers to Jesus as his "beloved Son."
* In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as "beloved."
* Something or someone who is "lovely" attracts the love and good desires of others.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could also be translated as "loved" or "loved one" or "well-loved," or "very dear."
* In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as "my dear friend" or "my close friend." In English it is natural to say "my dear friend, Paul" or "Paul, who is my dear friend." Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
* Note that the word "beloved" comes from the word for God's love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](../kt/love.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 04:14
* 1 John 03:02
* 1 John 04:07
* Mark 01:11
* Mark 12:06
* Revelation 20:09
* Romans 16:08
* Song of Solomon 01:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G25, G26, G27, G5207

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

beloved, dear, lovely, treasured

### betray

#### Related Ideas:

betrayal, betrayer, give over, hand over, traitor, treacherous, treacherously, treachery, turn over

#### Definition:

The term "betray" means to act in a way that deceives a person and allows other people to harm that person. A "betrayer" is a person who betrays a friend who was trusting him.

* Judas was "the betrayer" because he told the Jewish leaders how to capture Jesus.
* The betrayal by Judas was especially evil because he was an apostle of Jesus who received money in exchange for giving the Jewish leaders information that would result in Jesus' unjust death.
* "Betrayal" and "treachery" are two words for what happens when one person betrays another.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "betray" could be translated as "deceive and cause harm to" or "turn over to the enemy" or "treat treacherously."
* The term "betrayer" could be translated as "person who betrays" or "double dealer" or "traitor."

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](../names/judasiscariot.md), [Jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md), [apostle](../kt/apostle.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:52
* John 06:64
* John 13:22
* Matthew 10:04
* Matthew 26:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H898, H4042, H4603, H4604, H4820, H5462, H7411, G1560, G3860, G4273, G5483

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

betray, betrayal, betrayed, betrayer, betrayers, betraying, betrays, give ... over, given ... over, hand ... over, handed ... over, traitor, traitors, treacherous, treacherously, treachery, turn ... over

### blasphemy

#### Related Ideas:

blaspheme, blasphemer, blasphemous, insult, revile, taunt

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "blasphemy" refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To "blaspheme" or "insult" or "revile" someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

* Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
* It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
* Some English versions translate this term as "slander" when it refers to blaspheming people.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To "blaspheme" can be translated as to "say evil things against" or to "dishonor God" or to "slander."
* Ways to translate "blasphemy" could include "speaking wrongly about others" or "slander" or "spreading false rumors."

(See also: [dishonor](../other/dishonor.md), [slander](../other/slander.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 01:12-14
* Acts 06:11
* Acts 26:9-11
* James 02:5-7
* John 10:32-33
* Luke 12:10
* Mark 14:64
* Matthew 12:31
* Matthew 26:65
* Psalms 074:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1421, H1442, H2778, H3639, H5006, H5007, H5344, G987, G988, G989, G3059, G3680, G5196

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

blaspheme, blasphemed, blasphemer, blasphemers, blasphemes, blasphemies, blaspheming, blasphemous, blasphemy, insult, insulted, insulting, insults, revile, reviled, reviling

### bless

#### Related Ideas:

happier, happy

#### Definition:

To "bless" someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

* Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
* In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
* When people "bless" God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
* The term "bless" is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To "bless" could also be translated as to "provide abundantly for" or to "be very kind and favorable toward."
* "God has brought great blessing to" could be translated as "God has given many good things to" or "God has provided abundantly for" or "God has caused many good things to happen to".
* "He is blessed" could be translated as "he will greatly benefit" or "he will experience good things" or "God will cause him to flourish."
* "Blessed is the person who" could be translated as "How good it is for the person who."
* Expressions like "blessed be the Lord" could be translated as "May the Lord be praised" or "Praise the Lord" or "I praise the Lord."
* In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as "thanked God for the food" or "praised God for giving them food" or "consecrated the food by praising God for it."

(See also: [praise](../other/praise.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 10:16
* Acts 13:34
* Ephesians 01:03
* Genesis 14:20
* Isaiah 44:03
* James 01:25
* Luke 06:20
* Matthew 26:26
* Nehemiah 09:05
* Romans 04:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H833, H835, H8055, H1288, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G3741

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bless, blessed, blesses, blessing, blessings, happier, happy

### blood

#### Related Ideas:

bleeding

#### Definition:

The term "blood" refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person's skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person's entire body.

* Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
* When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal's life to pay for people's sins.
* Through his death on the cross, Jesus' blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
* The expression "flesh and blood" refers to human beings.
* The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to people who are biologically related.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
* The expression "flesh and blood" could be translated as "people" or "human beings."
* Depending on the context, the expression "my own flesh and blood" could be translated as "my own family" or "my own relatives" or "my own people."
* If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate "flesh and blood."

(See also: [flesh](../kt/flesh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:07
* 1 Samuel 14:32
* Acts 02:20
* Acts 05:28
* Colossians 01:20
* Galatians 01:16
* Genesis 04:11
* Psalms 016:4
* Psalms 105:28-30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bleeding, blood

### body

#### Related Ideas:

bodily, body of Christ, carcass, corpse

#### Definition:

The term "body" literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

* Often the term "body" refers to a dead person. Sometimes this is referred to as a "dead body" or a "corpse." The dead body of an animal is called a "carcass."
* When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, "This (bread) is my body," he was referring to his physical body that would be "broken" (killed) to pay for their sins.
* In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the "body of Christ." Just as a physical body has many parts, the "body of Christ" has many individual members. Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
* Jesus is also referred to as the "head" (leader) of the "body" of his believers. Just as a person's head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his "body."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
* When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say "spiritual body of Christ."
* When Jesus says, "This is my body," it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
* Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as "corpse" for a person or "carcass" for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](../other/head.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 10:12
* 1 Corinthians 05:05
* Ephesians 04:04
* Judges 14:08
* Numbers 06:6-8
* Psalm 031:09
* Romans 12:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H990, H1320, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5315, H6297, H7607, G4430, G4561, G4954, G4983

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bodies, bodily, body, carcass, carcasses, corpse, corpses

### bold

#### Related Ideas:

boldly, boldness, emboldened

#### Definition:

These terms all refer to having courage and confidence to speak the truth and do the right thing even when it is difficult or dangerous.

* A "bold" person is not afraid to say and do what is good and right, including defending people who are being mistreated. This could be translated as "courageous" or "fearless."
* In the New Testament, the disciples continued to "boldly" preach about Christ in public places, in spite of the danger of being put in jail or killed. This could be translated as "confidently" or "with strong courage" or "courageously."
* The "boldness" of these early disciples in speaking the good news of Christ's redeeming death on the cross resulted in the gospel being spread throughout Israel and nearby countries and finally, to the rest of the world. "Boldness" could also be translated as "confident courage."

(See also: [confidence](../other/confidence.md), [good news](../kt/goodnews.md), [redeem](../kt/redeem.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:28
* 1 Thessalonians 02:1-2
* 2 Corinthians 03:12-13
* Acts 04:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H982, H5797, G662, G2292, G3618, G3954, G3955, G5111, G5112

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bold, boldly, boldness, emboldened

### bow

#### Related Ideas:

bend, bend the knee, bow down, fall down before, kneel

#### Note

For the weapon called a bow, [click here](./bowweapon.md).

#### Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To "bow down" means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

* Other expressions include "bow the knee" (meaning to kneel) and "bow the head" (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
* Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is "bowed down" has been brought to a low position of humility.
* Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
* Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
* In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
* The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means "bend forward" or "bend the head" or "kneel."
* The term "bow down" could be translated as "kneel down" or "prostrate oneself."
* Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](../kt/humble.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 05:18
* Exodus 20:05
* Genesis 24:26
* Genesis 44:14
* Isaiah 44:19
* Luke 24:05
* Matthew 02:11
* Revelation 03:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H86, H1288, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098, G4352, G4364

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

are bent, bend, bend the knee, bow, bow down, bowed, bowed ... down, bowed ... down ... before, bowing, bowing down, bows, bows down, fall down, fell, fell down, has ... bent, have ... bent, kneel, kneeling, knelt, will bend

### bread

#### Related Ideas:

food, loaf of bread

#### Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

* When the term "loaf" occurs by itself, it means "loaf of bread."
* Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
* Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called "unleavened bread" and was used for the Jews' passover meal.
* Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general.
* The term "bread of the presence" referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as "bread showing that God lived among them."
* The figurative term "bread from heaven" referred to the special white food called "manna" that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
* Jesus also called himself the "bread that came down from heaven" and the "bread of life."
* When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
* Many times the term "bread" can be translated more generally as "food."

(See also: [Passover](../kt/passover.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md), [unleavened bread](../kt/unleavenedbread.md), [yeast](../other/yeast.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:46
* Acts 27:35
* Exodus 16:15
* Luke 09:13
* Mark 06:38
* Matthew 04:04
* Matthew 11:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bread, food, loaf of ... bread, loaves, loaves of ... bread

### bride

#### Related Ideas:

bridal

#### Definition:

A bride is the woman in a wedding ceremony who is getting married to her husband, the bridegroom.

* The term "bride" is used as a metaphor for believers in Jesus, the Church.
* Jesus is metaphorically called the "bridegroom" for the Church.

(See also: [bridegroom](../other/bridegroom.md), [church](../kt/church.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 22:16
* Isaiah 62:5
* Joel 02:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3618, G3565

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bridal, bride, brides

### bridegroom

#### Definition:

In a marriage ceremony, the bridegroom is the man who will marry the bride.

* In the Jewish culture during Bible times, the ceremony was centered around the bridegroom coming to get his bride.
* In the Bible, Jesus is figuratively called the "Bridegroom" who will someday come for his "Bride," the Church.
* Jesus compared his disciples to the friends of the bridegroom who celebrate while the bridegroom is with them, but who will be sad when he is gone.

(See also: [bride](../other/bride.md))

#### Bible References:

* Isaiah 62:5
* Joel 02:15-16
* John 03:30
* Luke 05:35
* Mark 02:19
* Mark 02:20
* Matthew 09:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2860, G3566

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bridegroom, bridegrooms

### brother

#### Related Ideas:

brotherhood

#### Definition:

The term "brother" usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

* In the Old Testament, the term "brothers" is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
* In the New Testament, the apostles often used "brothers" to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
* A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term "sister" when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to "a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
* In the Old Testament especially, when "brothers" is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include "relatives" or "clan members" or "fellow Israelites."
* In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as "brother in Christ" or "spiritual brother."
* If both males and females are being referred to and "brother" would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
* Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be "fellow believers" or "Christian brothers and sisters."
* Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [God the Father](../kt/godthefather.md), [sister](../other/sister.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:26
* Genesis 29:10
* Leviticus 19:17
* Nehemiah 03:01
* Philippians 04:21
* Revelation 01:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2993, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

brother, brother's, brotherhood, brothers, brothers'

### burnt offering

#### Related Ideas:

offering by fire

#### Definition:

A "burnt offering" was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an "offering by fire."

* Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
* Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
* God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](../kt/altar.md), [atonement](../kt/atonement.md), [ox](../other/cow.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 40:5-7
* Genesis 08:20
* Genesis 22:1-3
* Leviticus 03:05
* Mark 12:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H801, H5930, H7133, G3646

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire, offering made by fire

### call

#### Related Ideas:

appeal to, invite, summon

#### Definition:

The terms "call to" and "call out" mean to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. To "call" someone means to summon that person. There are also some other meanings.

* To "call out" to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
* Often in the Bible, "call" has a meaning of "summon" or "command to come" or "request to come."
* God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their "calling."
* When God "calls" people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
* This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, "His name is called John," means, "He is named John" or "His name is John."
* To be "called by the name of" means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
* A different expression, "I have called you by name" means that God has specifically chosen that person.
* To appeal to someone is to ask someone to do something.
* To invite someone is to ask them to do something that they might like to do.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "call" could be translated by a word that means "summon," which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
* The expression "call out to you" could be translated as "ask you for help" or "pray to you urgently."
* When the Bible says that God has "called" us to be his servants, this could be translated as, "specially chose us" or "appointed us" to be his servants.
* "You must call his name" can also be translated as, "you must name him."
* "His name is called" could also be translated as, "his name is" or "he is named."
* To "call out" could be translated as, "say loudly" or "shout" or "say with a loud voice." Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
* The expression "your calling" could be translated as "your purpose" or "God's purpose for you" or "God's special work for you."
* To "call on the name of the Lord" could be translated as "seek the Lord and depend on him" or "trust in the Lord and obey him."
* To "call on" an official is to tell him to do what he is supposed to do as part of his job.
* To "call for" something could be translated by "demand" or "ask for" or "command."
* The expression "you are called by my name" could be translated as, "I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me."
* When God says, "I have called you by name," this could be translated as, "I know you and have chosen you."

(See also: [pray](../kt/pray.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 18:24
* 1 Thessalonians 04:07
* 2 Timothy 01:09
* Ephesians 04:01
* Galatians 01:15
* Matthew 02:15
* Philippians 03:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2199, H3259, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G1528, G1793, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G3870, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

appeal to, appealed to, appealing to, call, called, called on, called out, calling, calling out, calls, calls out, invite, invited, summon, summoned, summoning

### camel

#### Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back.

* In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
* The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
* Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
* Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: [burden](../other/burden.md), [clean](../kt/clean.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 05:21
* 2 Chronicles 09:1-2
* Exodus 09:1-4
* Mark 10:25
* Matthew 03:04
* Matthew 19:23-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1581, G2574

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

camel, camel's, camels, camels'

### cast out

#### Related Ideas:

banish, cast off, compel to go, drive out, force out, outcast, put outside, throw out

#### Definition:

To "cast out" or "drive out" someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

* The term "cast" means the same thing as "throw." To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
* In a figurative sense, "cast out" or "cast away" someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.
* To "banish" someone is to force them to stay far away.
* An "outcast" is someone whom other people have rejected and forced him to go live somewhere else.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, "force out" or "send away" or "get rid of."
* To "cast out demons" could be translated as "cause the demons to leave" or "drive the evil spirits out" or "expel the demons" or "command the demon to come out."

(See also: [demon](../kt/demon.md), [demon-possessed](../kt/demonpossessed.md), [lots](../other/lots.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:17-19
* Mark 03:13-16
* Mark 09:29
* Matthew 07:21-23
* Matthew 09:32-34
* Matthew 12:24
* Matthew 17:19-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1272, H1644, H1920, H3423, H5080, H7843, H7971, H7993, G1544

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

banish, banished, cast ... off, cast ... out, casting out, compelled ... to go, drive, drive ... away, drive ... out, driven, driven ... away, driven ... out, drives ... away, drives ... out, driving ... out, drove ... out, force ... out, forced ... out, forcing ... out, outcast, outcasts, put ... outside, threw ... out, throw ... out, throwing out, thrown, thrown out

### centurion

#### Definition:

A centurion was a Roman army officer who had a group of 100 soldiers under his command.

* This could also be translated with a term that means, "leader of a hundred men" or "army leader" or "officer in charge of a hundred."
* One Roman centurion came to Jesus to request healing for his servant.
* The centurion in charge of Jesus' crucifixion was amazed when he witnessed how Jesus died.
* God sent a centurion to Peter so that Peter could explain to him the good news about Jesus.

(See also: [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 10:01
* Acts 27:01
* Acts 27:42-44
* Luke 07:04
* Luke 23:47
* Mark 15:39
* Matthew 08:07
* Matthew 27:54

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1543, G2760

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

centurion, centurions

### chief

#### Related Ideas:

finest, first of all, important, prominent

#### Definition:

The term "chief" refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

* Examples of this include, "chief musician," "chief priest," "chief tax collector" and "chief ruler."
* It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as "chiefs" of their family clans. In this context, the term "chief" could also be translated as "leader" or "head father."
* When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as "leading" or "ruling," as in "leading musician" or "ruling priest."

(See also: [chief priests](../other/chiefpriests.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [tax collector](../other/tax.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 01:11-13
* Ezekiel 26:15-16
* Luke 19:02
* Psalm 004:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H47, H117, H441, H3629, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G749, G750, G754, G3175, G4410, G4413, G5506

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

chief, chiefs, finest, first of all, important, most important, prominent

### chief priests

#### Definition:

The chief priests were important Jewish religious leaders during the time that Jesus lived on earth.

* The chief priests were responsible for everything needed for the worship services at the temple. They were also in charge of the money that was given to the temple.
* They were higher in rank and power than the ordinary priests. Only the high priest had more authority.
* The chief priests were some of Jesus' main enemies and they strongly influenced the Roman leaders to arrest and kill him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "chief priests" could also be translated as "head priests" or "leading priests" or "ruling priests."
* Make sure this term is translated differently from the term "high priest."

(See also: [chief](../other/chief.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [Jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:13-16
* Acts 22:30
* Acts 26:12-14
* Luke 20:01
* Mark 08:31
* Matthew 16:21
* Matthew 26:3-5
* Matthew 26:59
* Matthew 27:41-42

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7218, G749

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

chief priests

### children

#### Related Ideas:

child, childhood, childless

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "child" is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant.

* The word "childhood" refers to the time that a person is a child.
* The word "childless" describes a person who has no children.
* The word "children" is the plural form of "child."

The words "child" and "children" also have several figurative uses.

* In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called "children."
* Often the term "children" is used to refer to a person's descendants.
* The phrase "children of" can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
* children of the light
* children of obedience
* children of the devil
* This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, "children of God" refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "children" could be translated as "descendants" when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
* Depending on the context, "children of" could be translated as, "people who have the characteristics of" or "people who behave like."
* If possible, the phrase, "children of God" should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, "people who belong to God" or "God's spiritual children."
* When Jesus calls his disciples "children," this could also be translated as, "dear friends" or "my beloved disciples."
* When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as "children," this could also be translated as "dear fellow believers."
* The phrase, "children of the promise" could be translated as, "people who have received what God promised them."

(See also: [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [promise](../kt/promise.md), [son](../kt/son.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md), [beloved](../kt/beloved.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:28
* 3 John 01:04
* Galatians 04:19
* Genesis 45:11
* Joshua 08:34-35
* Nehemiah 05:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5953, H6185, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G4690, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5207, G5388

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

child, childhood, childless, children

### clean

#### Related Ideas:

cleanness, cleanse, unclean, uncleanness, wash

#### Definition:

The term "clean" literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, words like "clean" and "washed" are often used figuratively to mean, "pure," "holy," "free from sin," or "innocent".

* "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
* In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
* A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
* Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

* God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
* People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
* If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
* Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
* This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
* In another figurative sense, "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "clean":

* This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty).
* Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God."
* "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify."
* Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.

Translating "unclean""

* The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled."
* When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled."
* The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [defile](../other/defile.md), [demon](../kt/demon.md), [holy](../kt/holy.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 07:02
* Genesis 07:08
* Deuteronomy 12:15
* Psalms 051:07
* Proverbs 20:30
* Ezekiel 24:13
* Matthew 23:27
* Luke 05:13
* Acts 08:07
* Acts 10:27-29
* Colossians 03:05
* 1 Thessalonians 04:07
* James 04:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H1351, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6663, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2514, G2839, G2840

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

clean, cleaned, cleanness, cleans, cleanse, cleansed, cleanses, cleansing, purge, unclean, uncleanness, wash, washed, washes, washing

### clothed

#### Related Ideas:

cloth, clothe, cover, dressed, garment, put on, unclothed, wardrobe, wear

#### Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, "clothed with" means to be endowed or equipped with something. To "clothe" oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

* In the same way that clothing is outside your body and is visible to all, when you are "clothed" with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To "clothe yourself with kindness" means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
* To be "clothed with power from on high" means to have power given to you.
* This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as "clothed with shame" or "clothed with terror."
* All of the clothes a person wears is called his "wardrobe."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, "clothe yourselves with." Another way to translate this could be "put on" if this refers to putting on clothes.
* If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate "clothed with" could be "showing" or "manifesting" or "filled with" or "having the quality of."
* The term "clothe yourself with" could also be translated as "cover yourself with" or "behave in a way that shows."

#### Bible References:

* Luke 24:49

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H155, H899, H2290, H3680, H3736, H3801, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4254, H4374, H5526, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G294, G1463, G1562, G1737, G1742, G1746, G1902, G2066, G2224, G2439, G2440, G4016, G4749, G5409, G5509

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cloth, clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, cover, covered, coverings, coverings for their loins, covers, dressed, garment, garments, put ... on, putting ... on, unclothed, wardrobe, wear, wearing, worn

### command

#### Related Ideas:

commandment, forbid, order, requirement, solemn command

#### Definition:

The term to "command" means to order someone to do something. A "command" or "commandment" is what the person was ordered to do.

* Although these terms have basically the same meaning, "commandment" often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
* A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
* To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.
* To "forbid" is to command that someone not do something.

#### Translation Suggestions

* It is best to translate this term differently from the term "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
* Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
* Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](../other/decree.md), [statute](../other/statute.md), [law](../other/law.md), [Ten Commandments](../other/tencommandments.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 01:06
* Matthew 01:24
* Matthew 22:38
* Matthew 28:20
* Numbers 01:17-19
* Romans 07:7-8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H560, H565, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3245, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4687, H4931, H5713, H5749, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3143, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4487, G5506

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

command, commanded, commanding, commandment, commandments, commands, forbid, forbidden, forbidding, give ... solemn command, given ... solemn commands, given an order, given orders, order, ordered, orders, requirement, solemn commands

### commander

#### Related Ideas:

captain, leader, military officer, one who leads

#### Definition:

The term "commander" refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

* A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
* This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
* Other ways to translate "commander" could include, "leader" or "captain" or "officer."
* The term to "command" an army could be translated as to "lead" or to "be in charge of."

(See also: [command](../kt/command.md), [ruler](../other/ruler.md), [centurion](../kt/centurion.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
* 2 Chronicles 11:11-12
* Daniel 02:14
* Mark 06:21-22
* Proverbs 06:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H117, H1368, H2710, H2951, H1169, G4755, H5057, H5257, H6260, H6346, H7101, H7262, H7218, H7227, H7229, H7860, H7990, H8269, G758, G2233, G4291, G5506

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

captain, captains, commander, commanders, leader, leaders, leading, military officers, one who leads

### commit

#### Related Ideas:

commitment

#### Definition:

The terms "commit" and "commitment" refer to making a decision or promising to do something.

* A person who promises to do something is also described as being "committed" to doing it.
* To "commit" to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has "committed" (or "given") to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
* To "commit" something to someone is to give that thing completely to that person.
* To "commit" someone to another person is to put someone either in the care of or under the guard of that other person.
* The terms "commit" and "committed" also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as "commit a sin" or "commit adultery" or "commit murder."
* The expression "committed to him the task" could also be translated as "gave him the task" or "entrusted to him the task" or "assigned the task to him."
* The term "commitment" could be translated by, "task that was given" or "promise that was made," depending on the context.

(See also: [adultery](../kt/adultery.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md), [promise](../kt/promise.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 28:07
* 1 Peter 02:21-23
* Jeremiah 02:12-13
* Matthew 13:41
* Psalm 058:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H539, H817, H1361, H1497, H1500, H1540, H1556, H2181, H2388, H2398, H2399, H2403, H4560, H4603, H5003, H5753, H5766, H5771, H6213, H6466, H7683, H7760, H7847, G264, G2038, G2716, G3429, G3431, G3860, G3872, G3908, G4102, G4203

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

commit, commitment, commits, committed, committing

### compassion

#### Related Ideas:

compassionate, deal gently with, pity, sympathy

#### Definition:

The term "compassion" refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A "compassionate" person cares about other people and helps them.

* The word "compassion" usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
* The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
* In Paul's letter to the Colossians, he tells them to "clothe themselves with compassion." He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.
* To have "sympathy" for someone is to understand how that person feels and to want to help him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The literal meaning of "compassion" is "bowels of mercy." This is an expression that means "mercy" or "pity." Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
* Ways of translating "compassion" could include, "a deep caring for" or "helpful mercy."
* The term "compassionate" could also be translated as, "caring and helpful" or "deeply loving and merciful."

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 01:8-10
* Hosea 13:14
* James 05:9-11
* Jonah 04:1-3
* Mark 01:41
* Romans 09:14-16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2550, H2580, H2603, H5150, H5162, H5164, H7349, H7355, H7356, G1653, G3356, G3627, G4697, G4834, G4835

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

compassion, compassionate, compassions, deal gently with, pitied, pity, sympathy

### condemn

#### Related Ideas:

condemnation, denounce, sentence, sentence of condemnation, sentenced to death

#### Definition:

The terms "condemn" and "condemnation" refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

* Often the word "condemn" includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
* Sometimes "condemn" means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
* To "denounce" someone is to say that he is guilty of great evil.
* The term "condemnation" refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone. The word "judgment" means the same as "condemnation."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, this term could be translated as "harshly judge" or "criticize falsely."
* The phrase "condemn him" could be translated as,"judge that he is guilty" or "state that he must be punished for his sin."
* The term "condemnation" could be translated as, "harsh judging" or "declaring to be guilty" or "punishment of guilt."

(See also: [judge](../kt/judge.md), [punish](../other/punish.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 03:20
* Job 09:29
* John 05:24
* Luke 06:37
* Matthew 12:07
* Proverbs 17:15-16
* Psalms 034:22
* Romans 05:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H816, H6600, H7561, H8199, H8381, G843, G1349, H1882, G1935, G2607, G2613, G2631, G2632, G2633, G2917, G2919, G2920

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

condemn, condemnation, condemned, condemning, condemns, denounce, sentence, sentence of condemnation, sentenced to death

### confess

#### Related Ideas:

confession, profess

#### Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A "confession" is a statement or admission that something is true.

* The term "confess" can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
* The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
* James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
* The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
* Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, ways to translate "confess" could include, "admit" or "testify" or "declare" or "acknowledge" or "affirm."
* Different ways to translate "confession" could be, "declaration" or "testimony" or "statement about what we believe" or "admitting sin."

(See also: [faith](../kt/faith.md), [testimony](../kt/testimony.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:8-10
* 2 John 01:7-8
* James 05:16
* Leviticus 05:5-6
* Matthew 03:4-6
* Nehemiah 01:6-7
* Philippians 02:9-11
* Psalms 038:17-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3034, H8426, G1843, G3670, G3671

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

confess, confessed, confesses, confessing, confession, profess

### confirm

#### Related Ideas:

carry out, cause someone to believe firmly, confirmation, guarantee

#### Definition:

The terms "confirm" and "confirmation" refer to stating or assuring that something is true or sure or trustworthy.

* In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will "confirm" his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.
* When a king is "confirmed" it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
* To confirm what someone wrote means to say that what was written is true.
* The "confirmation" of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
* To give an oath "as confirmation" means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
* Ways to translate "confirm" could include, "state as true" or "prove to be trustworthy" or "agree with" or "assure" or "promise," depending on the context.
* To "carry out" a promise is to do what one has promised to do.

(See also: [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [oath](../other/oath.md), [trust](../kt/trust.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
* 2 Corinthians 01:21
* 2 Kings 23:3
* Hebrews 06:16-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G950, G951, G3315, G4741, G4972

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

carry out, cause ... to believe firmly, confirm, confirmation, confirmed, confirms, guaranteed

### cornerstone

#### Definition:

The term "cornerstone" refers to a large stone that has been specially cut and placed in the corner of the foundation of a building.

* All the other stones of the building are measured and placed in relation to the cornerstone.
* It is very important for the strength and stability of the whole structure.
* In the New Testament, the Assembly of believers is metaphorically compared to a building which has Jesus Christ as its "cornerstone."
* In the same way that the cornerstone of a building supports and determines the position of the whole building, so Jesus Christ is the cornerstone on which the Assembly of believers is founded and supported.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "cornerstone" could also be translated as "main building stone" or "foundation stone."
* Consider whether the target language has a term for a part of a building's foundation that is the main support. If so, this term could be used.
* Another way to translate this would be, "a foundation stone used for the corner of a building."
* It is important to keep the fact that this is a large stone, used as a solid and secure building material. If stones are not used for constructing buildings, there may be another word that could be used that means "large stone" (such as "boulder") but it should also have the idea of being well-formed and made to fit.

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:11
* Ephesians 02:20
* Matthew 21:42
* Psalms 118:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H68, H6438, H7218, G204, G1137, G2776, G3037

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cornerstone, cornerstones

### council

#### Definition:

A council is a group of people who meet to discuss, give advice, and make decisions about important matters.

* A council is usually organized in an official and somewhat permanent way for a specific purpose, such as making decisions about legal matters.
* The "Jewish Council" in Jerusalem, also known as the "Sanhedrin," had 70 members, which included Jewish leaders such as chief priests, elders, scribes, Pharisees, and Sadducees who met regularly to decide matters of Jewish law. It was this council of religious leaders who put Jesus on trial and decided that he should be killed.
* There were also smaller Jewish councils in other cities.
* The apostle Paul was brought before a Roman council when he was arrested for teaching the gospel.
* Depending on the context, the word "council" could also be translated as "legal assembly" or "political assembly."
* To be "in council" means to be in a special meeting to decide something.
* Note that this is a different word than "counsel," which means, "advice."

(See also: [assembly](../other/assembly.md), [counsel](../other/counselor.md), [Pharisee](../kt/pharisee.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [Sadducee](../kt/sadducee.md), [scribe](../kt/scribe.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:57-58
* Acts 24:20
* John 03:02
* Luke 22:68
* Mark 13:09
* Matthew 05:22
* Matthew 26:59

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4186, H5475, G1010, G4824, G4892

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

council, councils

### courage

#### Related Ideas:

brave, courageous, discourage, discouragement, encourage, encouragement

#### Definitions:

The term "courage" refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

* The term, "courageous" describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
* A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
* The expression "take courage" means, "don't be afraid" or "be assured that things will turn out well."
* When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be "strong and courageous."
* The term "courageous" could also be translated as "brave" or "unafraid" or "bold."
* Depending on the context, to "have courage" could also be translated as, "be emotionally strong" or "be confident" or "stand firm."
* To "speak with courage" could be translated as, "speak boldly" or "speak without being afraid" or "speak confidently."

The terms "encourage" and encouragement" refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

* A similar term is "exhort," which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
* The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term "discourage" refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, ways to translate "encourage" could include "urge" or "comfort" or "say kind things" or "help and support."
* The phrase "give words of encouragement" means "say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered."

(See also: [confidence](../other/confidence.md), [exhort](../kt/exhort.md), [fear](../kt/fear.md), [strength](../other/strength.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 01:37-38
* 2 Kings 18:19-21
* 1 Chronicles 17:25
* Matthew 09:20-22
* 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
* 2 Corinthians 07:13
* Acts 05:12-13
* Acts 16:40
* Hebrews 03:12-13
* Hebrews 13:5-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H47, H533, H553, H1368, H2388, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G2114, G2115, G2174, G2292, G2293, G2294, H2865, G3870, G3874, G3954, G4389, G4837, G5111

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

brave, bravest, courage, courageous, dare, dared, discourage, discouraged, discouragement, discouraging, encourage, encouraged, encouragement, encouraging, take courage

### court

#### Related Ideas:

courtyard

#### Definition:

The terms "courtyard" and "court" refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term "court" also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

* The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
* The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
* These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
* The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
* The phrase "king's court" can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
* The expression, "courts of Yahweh" is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh's dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "courtyard" could be translated as "enclosed space" or "walled-in land" or "temple grounds" or "temple enclosure."
* Sometimes the term "temple" may need to be translated as "temple courtyards" or "temple complex" so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
* The expression, "courts of Yahweh" could be translated as, "place where Yahweh lives" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped."
* The term used for a king's court could also be used to refer to Yahweh's court.

(See also: [Gentile](../kt/gentile.md), [judge](../other/judgeposition.md), [king](../other/king.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 20:4-5
* Exodus 27:09
* Jeremiah 19:14-15
* Luke 22:55
* Matthew 26:69-70
* Numbers 03:26
* Psalms 065:4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1508, H2691, H5835, H7339, H8651, G833, G4259

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

court, courts, courtyard, courtyards

### covenant

#### Related Ideas:

agreed, contract, new covenant, will

#### Definition:

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

* This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
* When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
* Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements or contracts, and treaties between countries.
* Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
* In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
* In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

* God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
* This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
* The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
* God writes the new covenant on the hearts of those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
* The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."

Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."

Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.

The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."

The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [promise](../kt/promise.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 09:12
* Genesis 17:07
* Genesis 31:44
* Exodus 34:10-11
* Joshua 24:24-26
* 2 Samuel 23:5
* 2 Kings 18:11-12
* Mark 14:24
* Luke 01:73
* Luke 22:20
* Acts 07:08
* 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
* 2 Corinthians 03:06
* Galatians 03:17-18
* Hebrews 12:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1285, H1697, H2319, H2374, G1242, G4934

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

agreed, contract, covenant, covenants, new covenant, will

### create

#### Related Ideas:

creation, creator, workmanship

#### Definition:

The term "create" means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a "creation." God is called the "Creator" because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

* When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
* When human beings "create" something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
* Sometimes "create" is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
* The term "creation" can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word "creation" refers more specifically to just the people in the world.
* "Workmanship" is anything that a person makes.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world "out of nothing" to make sure this meaning is clear.
* The phrase, "since the creation of the world" means, "since the time when God created the world."
* A similar phrase, "at the beginning of creation" could be translated as, "when God created the world at the beginning of time," or "when the world was first created."
* To preach the good news to "all creation" means to preach the good news to "all people everywhere on earth."
* The phrase "Let all creation rejoice" means "Let everything that God created rejoice."
* Depending on the context, "create" could be translated as "make" or "cause to be" or "make out of nothing."
* The term "the Creator" could be translated as "the One who created everything" or "God, who made the whole world."
* Phrases like "your Creator" could be translated as "God, who created you."

(See also: [God](../kt/god.md), [good news](../kt/goodnews.md), [world](../kt/world.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
* 1 Peter 04:17-19
* Colossians 01:15
* Galatians 06:15
* Genesis 01:01
* Genesis 14:19-20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1254, H3335, H4639, H6213, H7069, G2041, G2675, G2936, G2937, G2938, G2939, G5480

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

create, created, created thing, creates, creation, creator, thing that has been created, workmanship

### cross

#### Definition:

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

* During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
* Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
* Note that this is a completely different word from the verb "cross" that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
* Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as "execution post" or "tree of death."
* Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [crucify](../kt/crucify.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 01:17
* Colossians 02:15
* Galatians 06:12
* John 19:18
* Luke 09:23
* Luke 23:26
* Matthew 10:38
* Philippians 02:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4716

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cross

### crown

#### Related Ideas:

crest, garland, wreath

#### Definition:

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term to "crown" means to put a crown on someone's head; figuratively it means to "honor."

* Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
* A crown is a symbol of a king's power and wealth.
* By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus' head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
* If a person is "crowned," this means that a crown was put on his head.
* In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
* A "crest" is a crown or a piece of metal or expensive wood with a design on it or something else that people recognize as a symbol of the king or another official. A person whom the official wants to honor will wear the "crest" or put it on the animal that he rides or that pulls his chariot.
* A "garland" and "a wreath" are a crown or necklace made of flowers or leaves.

Sometimes "crown" is used figuratively.

* The figurative use of to "crown" means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
* Pauls calls fellow believers his "joy and crown." In this expression, "crown" is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When used figuratively, "crown" could be translated as "prize" or "honor" or "reward."
* The figurative use of to "crown" could be translated as to "honor" or to "decorate."
* The expression, "he was crowned with glory and honor" could be translated as, "glory and honor were bestowed on him" or "he was given glory and honor" or "he was endowed with glory and honor."

(See also: [glory](../kt/glory.md), [king](../other/king.md), [olive](../other/olive.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 19:03
* Lamentations 05:16
* Matthew 27:29
* Philippians 04:01
* Psalms 021:03
* Revelation 03:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3803, H3804, H5145, H5849, H5850, H6936, G1238, G4735, G4737

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

crest, crown, crowned, crowns, garland, wreath

### crucify

#### Related Ideas:

nail him to a cross

#### Definition:

The term "crucify" means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

* The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
* The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
* The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "crucify" could be translated as, "kill on a cross" or "execute by nailing to a cross."

(See also: [cross](../kt/cross.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:23
* Galatians 02:20-21
* Luke 23:20-22
* Luke 23:34
* Matthew 20:17-19
* Matthew 27:23-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G388, G4362, G4717, G4957

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

crucified, crucify, nailing ... to a cross

### cry

#### Related Ideas:

outcry, raised his voice, scream, shout, speak out, speak loudly

#### Definition:

The terms "cry" or "cry out" often mean to say something loudly and urgently. Someone can "cry out" in pain or in distress or in anger.

* The phrase "cry out" also means to shout or call out, often with the intent to ask for help.
* This term could also be translated as "exclaim loudly" or "urgently ask for help," depending on the context.
* An expression such as, "I cry out to you" could be translated as, "I call to you for help" or "I urgently ask you for help."

(See also: [call](../kt/call.md), [plead](../other/plead.md))

#### Bible References:

* Job 27:09
* Mark 05:5-6
* Mark 06:48-50
* Psalm 022:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8643, H8663, G310, G349, G400, G863, G994, G995, G1916, G2019, G2799, G2805, G2896, G2905, G2906, G2929, G4377, G5455

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cried, cried for help, cried out, cries, cries of distress, cries out, cry, cry ... for help, cry aloud, cry of distress, cry out, crying, crying out, outcries, outcry, raised ... voice, scream, screams, shout, shout out loud, shouted, shouting, shouting out, shouts, speak out, spoke loudly

### curse

#### Related Ideas:

accursed, speak evil

#### Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

* A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
* To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
* It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
* In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
* The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as, "(this person) will experience much trouble."
* The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as, "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
* The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as, "The soil will not be very fertile."
* "Cursed be the day I was born" could also be translated as, "I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born."
* However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](../kt/bless.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 14:24-26
* 2 Peter 02:12-14
* Galatians 03:10
* Galatians 03:14
* Genesis 03:14
* Genesis 03:17
* James 03:10
* Numbers 22:06
* Psalms 109:28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2194, H2778, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

accursed, curse, cursed, curses, cursing, speaks evil

### curtain

#### Related Ideas:

covering, screen

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "curtain" refers to a very thick, heavy piece of material used in the making of the tabernacle and the temple.

* The tabernacle was built using four layers of curtains for the top and sides. These curtain coverings were made of cloth or animal skins.
* Cloth curtains were also used to form a wall surrounding the tabernacle courtyard. These curtains were made out of "linen" which was a kind of cloth made out of the flax plant.
* In both the tabernacle and temple building, a thick cloth curtain hung between the holy place and the most holy place. It was this curtain that was miraculously torn into two parts when Jesus died.
* The "screens" were curtains hung at the entrance to the courtyard of the tabernacle, at the entrance to the tabernacle, and in front of the ark of the covenant.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Since modern-day curtains are very different from the curtains used in the Bible, it may be more clear to use a different word or to add words that describe the curtains.
* Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "curtain covering" or "covering" or "piece of thick cloth" or "animal skin covering" or "hanging piece of cloth."

(See also: [holy place](../kt/holyplace.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* Hebrews 10:20
* Leviticus 04:17
* Luke 23:45
* Matthew 27:51
* Numbers 04:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1852, H3407, H4539, H6532, H7050, G2665

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

covering, curtain, curtains, screen, screening

### cut off

#### Related Ideas:

chop down, cut down, cut in two, pluck out, shear, tear off

#### Definition:

The expression "cut off" literally means to use a sharp instrument to remove a part of something. This can refer to, for example, removing a limb from a tree or an arm or leg from a person, or to chopping a tree completely down.

The expression "cut off" is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

The metaphor "cut off" refers to people or God separating a person from his nation or community either by driving him away or by killing him.

To "shear" is to cut the hair off of an animal.

To "pluck" is to separate a part of something from the rest by pulling it off or out.

* In the Old Testament, disobeying God's commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God's people and from his presence.
* God also said he would "cut off" or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.

#### Picture of Cut Off From People:

<a href="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/c/Cutofffrompeople.png"><img src="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/c/Cutofffrompeople.png" ></a>

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The expression "be cut off" could be translated as "be banished" or "be sent away" or "be separated from" or "be killed" or "be destroyed."
* Depending on the context, to "cut off" could be translated as, to "destroy" or to "send away" or to "separate from" or to "destroy."
* In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as "were stopped" or "were caused to stop flowing" or "were divided."

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 17:14
* Judges 21:06
* Proverbs 23:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1497, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G609, G851, G1581, G1807

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

chop ... down, chopped ... down, cut ... down, cut ... off, cut ... out of, cut in two, cut off, cuts ... off, cutting ... off, eliminate, pluck ... out, shear, sheared, tear ... off

### darkness

#### Related Ideas:

dark, darken, gloom

#### Definition:

The terms "darkness" and "gloom" literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of these terms:

* As a metaphor, "darkness" means "impurity" or "evil" or "spiritual blindness."
* It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
* The expression "dominion of darkness" refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
* The term "darkness" can also be used as a metaphor for death.
* People who do not know God are said to be "living in darkness," which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
* God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
* The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as "outer darkness."
* The term "gloom" can be used as a metaphor for sadness.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
* For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
* Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, "darkness of night" (as opposed to "light of day") or "not seeing anything, like at night" or "evil, like a dark place".

(See also: [corrupt](../other/corrupt.md), [dominion](../kt/dominion.md), [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md), [light](../other/light.md), [redeem](../kt/redeem.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:06
* 1 John 02:08
* 1 Thessalonians 05:05
* 2 Samuel 22:12
* Colossians 01:13
* Isaiah 05:30
* Jeremiah 13:16
* Joshua 24:7
* Matthew 08:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, H6751, H6937, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4654, G4655, G4656

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dark, darken, darkened, darker, darkness, gloom, thick darkness, turned dark

### day

#### Related Ideas:

daily, daytime, morning, today

#### Definition:

The term "day" literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

* For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
* Sometimes the term "day" is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the "day of Yahweh" or "last days."
* Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate "day" nonfiguratively.
* Other translations of "day" could include, "time" or "season" or "occasion" or "event," depending on the context.

(See also: [judgment day](../kt/judgmentday.md), [last day](../kt/lastday.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 20:06
* Daniel 10:04
* Ezra 06:15
* Ezra 06:19
* Matthew 09:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3117, H3118, H3119, H6242, G2250, G4594

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

daily, day, day's, days, days', daytime, morning, today

### day

#### Related Ideas:

daily, daytime, morning, today

#### Definition:

The term "day" literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

* For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
* Sometimes the term "day" is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the "day of Yahweh" or "last days."
* Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate "day" nonfiguratively.
* Other translations of "day" could include, "time" or "season" or "occasion" or "event," depending on the context.

(See also: [judgment day](../kt/judgmentday.md), [last day](../kt/lastday.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 20:06
* Daniel 10:04
* Ezra 06:15
* Ezra 06:19
* Matthew 09:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3117, H3118, H3119, H6242, G2250, G4594

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

daily, day, day's, days, days', daytime, morning, today

### death

#### Related Ideas:

breathed their last, dead, deadly, deadness, deathly, die, lethal, mortal, stop breathing

#### Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

#### 1. Physical death

* To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
* A person's spirit leaves his body when he dies.
* When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
* The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.
* The words "deadly" and "lethal" describe something that causes someone to die.
* Something that is "mortal" can die; it does not live forever.

#### 2. Spiritual death

* Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
* Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
* Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To translate the words "die," death," and dead," it is usually best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death. This is true both when “death” refers to physical death and when it refers to spiritual death.
* In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
* The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died."
* The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [faith](../kt/faith.md), [life](../kt/life.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 15:21
* 1 Thessalonians 4:17
* Acts 10:42
* Acts 14:19
* Colossians 2:15
* Colossians 2:20
* Genesis 2:15-17
* Genesis 34:27
* Matthew 16:28
* Romans 5:10
* Romans 5:12
* Romans 6:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H7819, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G599, G615, G622, G1634, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

about to die, breathed ... last, causes ... death, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deathly, deaths, die, die with, died, dies, dying, fatal, lethal, mortal, stop breathing, stops breathing

### deceive

#### Related Ideas:

lie, deal falsely, deceit, deception, deceptive, delusion, entice, error, false, falsehood, flatter, illusion, trick

#### Definition:

The word "deceive" means to cause someone to believe something that is not true.

* The words "deceit" and "deception" can refer to an act or habit of deceiving others or to a message that is not truthful.
* A "deceiver" is someone who causes others to believe something that is not true. For example, Satan is called a "deceiver." The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
* The words “deceitful” and “deceptive” can describe people who deceive others or to messages or actions that are meant to deceive others.
* To “entice” someone is to deceive him into thinking that he will enjoy doing something evil.
* To “defraud” someone is to use deceit to get from him something that he would not give if he knew the truth.
* To “flatter” someone is to praise him falsely so that he will do what the speaker wants him to do.
* To “lie” to someone or to tell a “lie” is not the same as to lie down to go to sleep.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, “deceive” could be translated as "lie to," "mislead," "trick," or "fool."
* "Deceiver" could be translated as "liar" or "one who misleads" or "someone who deceives."
* Depending on the context, the terms "deception" or "deceit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "falsehood" or "lying" or "trickery" or "dishonesty."
* The terms "deceptive" or "deceitful" could be translated as "untruthful" or "misleading" or "lying" to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](../kt/true.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 1:8
* 1 Timothy 2:14
* 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
* Genesis 3:12-13
* Genesis 31:26-28
* Leviticus 19:11-12
* Matthew 27:64
* Micah 6:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H898, H2048, H2505, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4604, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7723, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1818, G3884, G4105, G2296, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423, G5571

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

a lie, deal falsely, deceit, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deceive, deceived, deceiver, deceivers, deceives, deceiving, deception, deceptive, defraud, defrauded, delusion, entice, error, false, falsehood, falsely, flatter, flattering, flatters, flattery, illusions, liar, liars, lies, trick

### declare

#### Related Ideas:

announce, declaration, proclaim, proclamation, pronounce

#### Definition:

The terms "declare" and "declaration" refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. To "proclaim" means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

* A "declaration" not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
* For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by "the declaration of Yahweh" or "this is what Yahweh declares." This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.
* Often in the Bible, "proclaim" means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
* In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
* The term "proclaim" can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "declare" could be translated as "proclaim" or "publicly state" or "strongly say" or "emphatically state."
* The term "declaration" could be translated as "statement" or "proclamation."
* The term "proclaim" could be translated as "announce" or "openly preach" or "publicly declare."
* The term "proclamation" could be translated as "announcement" or "public preaching."
* The phrase "this is Yahweh's declaration" could be translated as "this is what Yahweh declares" or "this is what Yahweh says."

(See also: [preach](../other/preach.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 16:24
* 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
* 1 Samuel 24:17-18
* Amos 02:16
* Ezekiel 05:11-12
* Matthew 07:21-23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H262, H816, H874, H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H6963, H7121, H7150, H7440, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G518, G591, G669, G1229, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1861, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3004, G3140, G3142, G3670, G3724, G3870, G3955, G4135, G4296, G5335

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

announce, announced, announces, declaration, declarations, declare, declared, declares, declaring, proclaim, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclaims, proclamation, proclamations, pronounces

### defile

#### Related Ideas:

pollute, pollution, stain

#### Definition:

The terms "defile" and "be defiled" refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

* God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as "unclean" and "unholy."
* Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
* God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
* There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
* A "stain" is a dirty mark that is hard to clean.
* In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "defile" can also be translated as "cause to be unclean" or "cause to be unrighteous" or "cause to be ritually unacceptable."
* To "be defiled" could be translated as "become unclean" or "be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)" or "become ritually unacceptable."

(See also: [clean](../kt/clean.md), [clean](../kt/clean.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 23:08
* Exodus 20:24-26
* Genesis 34:27
* Genesis 49:04
* Isaiah 43:27-28
* Leviticus 11:43-45
* Mark 07:14-16
* Matthew 15:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, G2839, G2840, G3392, G3435, G4695

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

are defiled, be defiled, defile, defiled, defiles, defiling, polluted, pollutes, pollution, stain, stained, was defiled, were defiled

### deliver

#### Related Ideas:

defend, deliverance, deliverer, escape, relieve, rescue, rescuer

#### Definition:

To "deliver" someone means to rescue that person. The term "deliverer" refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term "deliverance" refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

* In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
* These deliverers were also called "judges" and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
* God is also called a "deliverer." Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
* The term "deliver over to" or "deliver up to" has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term "deliver" can be translated as "rescue" or "liberate" or "save."
* When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, "deliver over" can be translated as "betray to" or "hand over" or "give over."
* The word "deliverer" can also be translated as "rescuer" or "liberator."
* When the term "deliverer" refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as "governor" or "judge" or "leader."

(See also: [judge](../kt/judge.md), [save](../kt/save.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 01:10
* Acts 07:35
* Galatians 01:04
* Judges 10:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4498, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5437, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7378, H7611, H7725, H7804, H8199, H8668, G325, G525, G629, G1080, G1325, G1659, G1807, G1929, G3086, G3860, G4506, G4991, G5088, G5483

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be rescued, defend, defended, deliver, deliverance, delivered, delivered ... over, deliverer, deliverers, delivering, delivers, escape, escaped, permit ... to escape, relieve, rescue, rescued, rescuer, rescues

### demon

#### Related Ideas:

demonic

#### Definition:

All these terms refer to demons, which are spirit beings that oppose God's will.

* God created angels to serve him. When the devil rebelled against God, some of the angels also rebelled and were thrown out of heaven. It is believed that demons and evil spirits are these "fallen angels."
* Sometimes these demons are called "unclean spirits." The term "unclean" means "impure" or "evil" or "unholy."
* Because demons serve the devil, they do evil things. Sometimes they live inside people and control them.
* Demons are more powerful than human beings, but not as powerful as God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "demon" could also be translated as "evil spirit."
* The term "unclean spirit" could also be translated as "impure spirit" or "corrupt spirit" or "evil spirit."
* Make sure that the word or phrase used to translate this term is different from the term used to refer to the devil.
* Also consider how the term "demon" is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [demon-possessed](../kt/demonpossessed.md), [Satan](../kt/satan.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [angel](../kt/angel.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [clean](../kt/clean.md))

#### Bible References:

* James 02:19
* James 03:15
* Luke 04:36
* Mark 03:22
* Matthew 04:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7307, H7451, H7700, G169, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G4190, G4151

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

demon, demonic, demons

### demon-possessed

#### Related Ideas:

possessed by a demon

#### Definition:

A person who is demon-possessed has a demon or evil spirit that controls what he does and thinks.

* Often a demon-possessed person will hurt himself or other people because the demon causes him to do that.
* Jesus healed demon-possessed people by commanding the demons to come out of them. This is often called "casting out" demons.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate this term could include "demon-controlled" or "controlled by an evil spirit" or "having an evil spirit living inside."

(See also: [demon](../kt/demon.md))

#### Bible References:

* Mark 01:32
* Matthew 04:24
* Matthew 08:16
* Matthew 08:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1139

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

demon-possessed, possessed by a demon, possessed by demons

### desert

#### Related Ideas:

remote place, solitary place, wilderness

#### Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

* A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
* Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
* "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
* This word can also be translated as "deserted place," "remote place," "solitary place," or "uninhabited place."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 13:16-18
* Acts 21:38
* Exodus 04:27-28
* Genesis 37:21-22
* John 03:14
* Luke 01:80
* Luke 09:12-14
* Mark 01:03
* Matthew 04:01
* Matthew 11:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

desert, deserts, remote places, solitary place, wilderness, wildernesses

### destroy

#### Related Ideas:

break down, bring ... to nothing, destruction, remove, cut to pieces, demolish, destroyer, destructive, downfall, overthrow, pass away, put an end to, shatter, spoil, throw down, waste away

#### Definition:

To destroy something is to completely make an end to it, so that it no longer exists.

* The term "destroyer" literally means "person who destroys."
* This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
* When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as "the destroyer of the firstborn." This could be translated as "the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males."
* In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called "the Destroyer." He is the "one who destroys" because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.
* The word "overthrown" is a metaphor that speaks of a ruler or a great city as if it were a person sitting or standing on a high place whom another person has pushed off of the high place and who is now lying helpless.

(See also: [angel](../kt/angel.md), [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [firstborn](../other/firstborn.md), [Passover](../kt/passover.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 12:23
* Hebrews 11:28
* Jeremiah 06:26
* Judges 16:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H622, H398, H1104, H1197, H1760, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H2865, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H3832, H4191, H4229, H4288, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5486, H5487, H5493, H5595, H5642, H5674, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7112, H7701, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8213, H8552, G355, G396, G622, G853, G684, G1311, G1842, G2049, G2506, G2507, G2647, G2704, G3089, G3639, G3645, G4199, G5351, G5356

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

an end is put to, be destroyed, break ... down, breaking ... down, breaks ... down, bring ... to nothing, broke to pieces, broken, broken to pieces, brought ... down, brought ... to nothing, complete destruction, completely destroy, completely destroyed, crashing sound, cut ... to pieces, cut into pieces, cuts ... into pieces, demolish, destroy, destroy ... completely, destroyed, destroyer, destroyers, destroying, destroys, destruction, destructive, downfall, overthrew, overthrown, pass away, put an end to, shatter, shattered, shattering, spoil, throw down, throws ... down, thrown down, wasting away

### devour

#### Definition:

The term "devour" means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

* Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
* Also in a figurative sense, the term "devour" is often used with a meaning of "completely destroy" as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
* This term could also be translated as "completely consume" or "totally destroy."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 05:08
* Amos 01:10
* Exodus 24:17
* Ezekiel 16:20
* Luke 15:30
* Matthew 23:13-15
* Psalms 021:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

devour, devoured, devouring, devours

### disciple

#### Definition:

The term "disciple" refers to a person who spends much time with a teacher, learning from that teacher's character and teaching.

* The people who followed Jesus around, listening to his teachings and obeying them, were called his "disciples."
* John the Baptist also had disciples.
* During Jesus' ministry, there were many disciples who followed him and heard his teachings.
* Jesus chose twelve disciples to be his closest followers; these men became known as his "apostles."
* Jesus' twelve apostles continued to be known as his "disciples" or "the twelve."
* Just before Jesus went up to heaven, he commanded his disciples to teach other people about how to become Jesus' disciples, too.
* Anyone who believes in Jesus and obeys his teachings is called a disciple of Jesus.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "disciple" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "follower" or "student" or "pupil" or "learner."
* Make sure that the translation of this term does not refer only to a student who learns in a classroom.
* The translation of this term should also be different from the translation of "apostle."

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [the twelve](../kt/thetwelve.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:1
* Acts 09:26-27
* Acts 11:26
* Acts 14:22
* John 13:23
* Luke 06:40
* Matthew 11:03
* Matthew 26:33-35
* Matthew 27:64

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3928, G3100, G3101, G3102

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

disciple, disciples

### divorce

#### Definition:

A divorce is the legal act of ending a marriage. The term to "divorce" means to formally and legally separate from one's spouse in order to end the marriage.

* The literal meaning of the term to "divorce" is to "send away" or to "formally separate from." Other languages may have similar expressions to refer to divorce.
* A "certificate of divorce" could be translated as a "paper stating that the marriage has ended."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 08:8-11
* Leviticus 21:7-9
* Luke 16:18
* Mark 10:04
* Matthew 05:32
* Matthew 19:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1644, H3748, H5493, H7971, G630, G647, G863

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

divorce, divorces

### doctrine

#### Related Ideas:

beliefs, learning

#### Definition:

The word "doctrine" literally means "teaching." It usually refers to religious teaching.

* In the context of Christian teachings, "doctrine" refers to all teachings about God—Father, Son and Holy Spirit–including all his character qualities and everything he has done.
* It also refers to everything God teaches Christians about how to live holy lives that bring glory to him.
* The word "doctrine" is sometimes also used to refer to false or worldly religious teachings that come from human beings. The context makes the meaning clear.
* This term could also be translated as "teaching."

(See also: [teach](../other/teach.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 01:03
* 2 Timothy 03:16-17
* Mark 07:6-7
* Matthew 15:7-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3948, G1319, G2085

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

beliefs, doctrine, doctrines, learning

### dove

#### Related Ideas:

pigeon

#### Definition:

Doves and pigeons are two kinds of small, gray-brown birds that look similar. A dove is often thought of as being lighter in color, almost white.

* Some languages have two different names for them, while others use the same name for both.
* Doves and pigeons were used in sacrifices to God, especially for people who could not afford to buy a larger animal.
* A dove brought the leaf of an olive tree to Noah when the flood waters were going down.
* Doves sometimes symbolize purity, innocence, or peace.
* If doves or pigeons are not known in the language area where the translation is being done, this term could be translated as "a small grayish brown bird called a dove" or "a small gray or brown bird, similar to a (name of local bird)".
* If both a dove and a pigeon are referred to in the same verse, it is best to use two different words for these birds, if possible.

(See also: [olive](../other/olive.md), [innocent](../kt/innocent.md), [pure](../kt/purify.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 08:09
* Luke 02:22-24
* Mark 01:10
* Matthew 03:16
* Matthew 21:12-14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1469, H1686, H3123, H8449, G4058

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dove, dove's, doves, pigeon, pigeons

### earth

#### Related Ideas:

clay, dust, earthen, earthly, ground, land, soil

#### Definition:

The term "earth" refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

* "Earth" can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
* This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth.
* The expressions "let the earth be glad" and "he will judge the earth" are examples of figurative uses of this term.
* The term "earthly" usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.
* The term "earthen" describes something that is made of clay

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
* Depending on the context, "earth" could also be translated as "world" or "land" or "dirt" or "soil" or "clay."
* When used figuratively, "earth" could be translated as "people on the earth" or "people living on earth" or "everything on earth."
* Ways to translate "earthly" could include "physical" or "things of this earth" or "visible."

(See also: [spirit](../kt/spirit.md), [world](../kt/world.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 01:38-40
* 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
* Daniel 04:35
* Luke 12:51
* Matthew 06:10
* Matthew 11:25
* Zechariah 06:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H80, H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2868, G2886, G3625, G5517, G5522

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

clay, dust, earth, earth's, earthen, earthly, ground, land, lands, soil

### elder

#### Definition:

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

* The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
* In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
* In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
* In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
* Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
* This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
* 1 Timothy 03:1-3
* 1 Timothy 04:14
* Acts 05:19-21
* Acts 14:23
* Mark 11:28
* Matthew 21:23-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

elder, elders

### elect

#### Related Ideas:

Chosen One, choice, choose, election

#### Definition:

The term "the elect" literally means "chosen ones" or "chosen people" and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. "Chosen One" or "Chosen One of God" is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

* The term "choose" means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
* To be "chosen" means to be "selected" or "appointed" to be or do something.
* God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called "the chosen (ones) or "the elect."
* The term "chosen one" is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God's chosen people.
* The phrase "the elect" is an older term that literally means "the chosen ones" or "the chosen people." This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
* In older English Bible versions, the term "elect" is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for "chosen one(s)." More modern versions use "elect" only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as "chosen ones."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate "elect" with a word or phrase that means "chosen ones" or "chosen people." This could also be translated as "people whom God chose" or "the ones God appointed to be his people."
* The phrase "who were chosen" could also be translated as "who were appointed" or "who were selected" or "whom God chose."
* "I chose you" could be translated as "I appointed you" or "I selected you."
* In reference to Jesus, "Chosen One" could also be translated as "God's chosen One" or "God's specially appointed Messiah" or "the One God appointed (to save people)."

(See also: [appoint](../kt/appoint.md), [Christ](../kt/christ.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 John 01:01
* Colossians 03:12
* Ephesians 01:3-4
* Isaiah 65:22-23
* Luke 18:07
* Matthew 24:19-22
* Romans 08:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H972, H977, H1262, H1305, H3045, H4005, H6901, G138, G140, G1586, G1588, G1589, G1951, G3724, G4400, G4401, G4899, G5500

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Chosen One, choice, choose, chooses, chose, chosen, chosen one, chosen ones, chosen people, elect, election

### endure

#### Related Ideas:

endurance, patient endurance, put up with, resist, stand

#### Definition:

The term "endure" means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

* It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
* The term "endurance" can mean "patience" or "bearing up under a trial" or "persevering when being persecuted."
* The encouragement to Christians to "endure to the end" is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
* To "endure suffering" can also mean to "experience suffering."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate the term "endure" could include "persevere" or "keep believing" or "continue to do what God wants you to do" or "stand firm."
* In some contexts, to "endure" could be translated as to "experience" or to "go through."
* With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term "endure" could also be tranlsated as "last" or "continue." The phrase "will not endure" could be translated as "will not last" or "will not continue to survive."
* Ways to translate "endurance" could include "perseverance" or "continuing to believe" or "remaining faithful."

(See also: [persevere](../other/perseverance.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 02:11-13
* James 01:03
* James 01:12
* Luke 21:19
* Matthew 13:21
* Revelation 01:09
* Romans 05:3-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H386, H3201, H3557, H5331, H5375, H5975, H6965, G430, G907, G1526, G2005, G2076, G2594, G3306, G4722, G5278, G5281, G5297, G5342

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

endurance, endure, endured, endures, enduring, patient endurance, put up with, resist, stand

### envy

#### Related Ideas:

covet, covetousness, envious, greed

#### Definition:

The term "envy" refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person's admirable qualities.

* Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person's success, good fortune, or possessions.
* To "covet" means to have a strong desire to have someone else's property, or even someone else's spouse. Often a person who covets something is willing to sin to get it.
* "Greed" is a strong, selfish desire to have something. Often a person who is greedy wants more of what he already has.

(See also: [jealous](../kt/jealous.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
* 1 Peter 02:01
* Exodus 20:17
* Mark 07:20-23
* Proverbs 03:31-32
* Romans 01:29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H183, H2530, H7065, H7068, H7342, G1937, G2205, G2206, G3788, G4123, G4124, G4190, G5354, G5355

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

covet, coveted, coveting, covetousness, envied, envious, envy, envying, greed, greedy

### evil

#### Related Ideas:

deal violently, displeasing, evil actions, evil deeds, evil plans, fraudulent, harm, harmful, violate, violence, violent, wicked, wicked deeds, wickedly, wickedness, wretched, wretchedly

#### Definition:

The terms "evil" and "wicked" both refer to anything that is opposed to God's holy character and will.

* While "evil" may describe a person's character, "wicked" may refer more to a person's behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
* The term "wickedness" refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
* The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the terms "evil" and "wicked" can be translated as "bad" or "sinful" or "immoral."
* Other ways to translate these could include "not good" or "not righteous" or "not moral."
* Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [good](../kt/good.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md), [demon](../kt/demon.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 24:11
* 1 Timothy 06:10
* 3 John 01:10
* Genesis 02:17
* Genesis 06:5-6
* Job 01:01
* Job 08:20
* Judges 09:57
* Luke 06:22-23
* Matthew 07:11-12
* Proverbs 03:07
* Psalms 022:16-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H1100, H1431, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2554, H2555, H5765, H2162, H2248, H2254, H3238, H3399, H3415, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5771, H5807, H5999, H6090, H6184, H6293, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, H7701, H8133, G92, G93, G94, G932, G983, G984, G987, G988, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G4550, G5337

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

deal violently, deal worse, displeasing, do ... evil, do ... violence, done ... violence, evil, evil actions, evil deeds, evil plans, evils, fraudulent, harm, harmful, violate, violated, violates, violence, violent, wicked, wicked deeds, wickedly, wickedness, wretched, wretchedly, wretches

### face

#### Related Ideas:

before, facedown, facial, presence, surface

#### Definition:

The word "face" literally refers to the front part of a person's head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

* The expression "your face" is often a figurative way of saying "you." Similarly, the expression "my face" often means "I" or "me."
* In a physical sense, to "face" someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
* To "face each other" means to "look directly at each other."
* Being "face to face" means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
* When Jesus "steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem," it means that he very firmly decided to go.
* To "set one's face against" people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
* The expression "face of the land" refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a "famine covering the face of the earth" refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
* The figurative expression "do not hide your face from your people" means "do not reject your people" or "do not desert your people" or "do not stop taking care of your people."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
* The term to "face" could be translated as to "turn toward" or to "look at directly" or to "look at the face of."
* The expression "face to face" could be translated as "up close" or "right in front of" or "in the presence of."
* Depending on the context, the expression "before his face" could be translated as "ahead of him" or "in front of him" or "before him" or "in his presence."
* The expression "set his face toward" could be translated as "began traveling toward" or "firmly made up his mind to go to."
* The expression "hide his face from" could be translated as "turn away from" or "stop helping or protecting" or "reject."
* To "set his face against" a city or people could be translated as "look at with anger and condemn" or "refuse to accept" or "decide to reject" or "condemn and reject" or "pass judgment on."
* The expression "say it to their face" could be translated as "say it to them directly" or "say it to them in their presence" or "say it to them in person."
* The expression "on the face of the land" could also be translated as "throughout the land" or "over the whole earth" or "living throughout the earth."

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 05:04
* Genesis 33:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H600, H639, H2122, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

before, face, faced, facedown, faces, facial, facing, presence, surface

### faith

#### Definition:

In general, the term "faith" refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

* To "have faith" in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
* To "have faith in Jesus" means to believe all of God's teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
* True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
* Sometimes "faith" refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression "the truths of the faith."
* In contexts such as "keep the faith" or "abandon the faith," the term "faith" refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In some contexts, "faith" can be translated as "belief" or "conviction" or "confidence" or "trust."
* For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb "believe."
* The expression "keep the faith" could be translated by "keep believing in Jesus" or "continue to believe in Jesus."
* The sentence "they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith" could be translated by "they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught."
* The expression "my true son in the faith" could be translated by something like "who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus" or "my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:07
* Acts 06:7
* Galatians 02:20-21
* James 02:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G4103

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

faith

### false prophet

#### Definition:

A false prophet is a person who wrongly claims that his message comes from God.

* The prophecies of false prophets are not usually fulfilled. That is, they do not come true.
* False prophets teach messages that partially or totally contradict what the Bible says.
* This term could also be translated as "person who falsely claims to be God's spokesman" or "someone who falsely claims to speak God's words."
* The New Testament teaches that in the end times there will be many false prophets who will try to deceive people into thinking that they come from God.

(See also: [fulfill](../kt/fulfill.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [true](../kt/true.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:1-3
* 2 Peter 02:01
* Acts 13:6-8
* Luke 06:26
* Matthew 07:16
* Matthew 24:23-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5578

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

false prophet, false prophets

### family

#### Related Ideas:

family line, genealogical record

#### Definition:

The term "family" refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. It often also includes other relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

* The Hebrew family was a religious community passing on traditions through worship and instruction.
* Usually the father was the major authority of the family.
* Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
* Some languages may have a broader word such as "clan" or "household" that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
* The term "family" is also used to refer to people who are related spiritually, such as people who are part of God's family because they believe in Jesus.
* A "genealogy" is a record of a person's family that tells who his ancestors were.

(See also: [clan](../other/clan.md), [ancestor](../other/father.md), [house](../other/house.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 08:1-2
* 1 Samuel 18:18
* Exodus 01:21
* Joshua 02:12-13
* Luke 02:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H3188, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, H8435, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

families, family, family line, genealogical record, genealogical records, genealogies, genealogy, recorded in ... genealogies, recorded in ... genealogy

### famine

#### Related Ideas:

famished, hunger

#### Definition:

The term "famine" refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain. The term "famished" means extremely hungry.

* Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
* Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
* In the Bible, God often caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
* In Amos 8:11 the term "famine" is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for "famine" in your language, or with a phrase such as "extreme lack" or "severe deprivation."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
* Acts 07:11
* Genesis 12:10
* Genesis 45:06
* Jeremiah 11:21-23
* Luke 04:25
* Matthew 24:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G3042, G3521

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

famine, famines, famished, hunger

### fast

#### Definition:

The term to "fast" means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

* Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
* Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
* Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
* The verb to "fast" can also be translated as to "refrain from eating" or to "not eat."
* The noun "fast" could be translated as "time of not eating" or "time of abstaining from food."

(See also: [Jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 21:8-10
* 2 Chronicles 20:03
* Acts 13:1-3
* Jonah 03:4-5
* Luke 05:34
* Mark 02:19
* Matthew 06:18
* Matthew 09:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G3521, G3522

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fast, fasted, fasting, fastings, fasts

### father

#### Related Ideas:

ancestor, ancestral, beget, fatherless, forefather, grandfather, orphan

#### Definition:

When used literally, the term "father" refers to a person's male parent.

* A "grandfather" is someone's father's father or someone's mother's father.
* A "forefather" is one of a person's male ancestors, such as his grandfather's grandfather.
* An "ancestral household" is a social unit of those people who are descended from one ancestor.
* A person who is "fatherless" does not have a father.
* An "orphan" is a person who has no parents. In Bible times widows were often not able to care for their children, so a child with a mother but no father could also be thought of as an orphan.
* To "beget" someone is to become that person's father.

There are also several figurative uses of the term "father."

* The term "fathers" often refers to a person's male ancestors, such as his grandfather's grandfather.
* The term "father" can refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 "the father of all who live in tents" could mean, "the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents."
* The apostle Paul called himself the "father" of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

#### Translation Suggestions

* When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
* "God the Father" should also be translated using the usual, common word for "father."
* When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as "ancestors" or "ancestral fathers."
* Sometimes the word "father" can be translated as "clan leader."
* When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as "spiritual father" or "father in Christ."
* The phrase "father of all lies" could be translated as "source of all lies" or "the one from whom all lies come."

(See also: [God the Father](../kt/godthefather.md), [son](../kt/son.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:02
* Acts 07:32
* Acts 07:45
* Acts 22:03
* Genesis 31:30
* Genesis 31:42
* Genesis 31:53
* Hebrews 07:4-6
* John 04:12
* Joshua 24:3-4
* Malachi 03:07
* Mark 10:7-9
* Matthew 01:07
* Matthew 03:09
* Matthew 10:21
* Matthew 18:14
* Romans 04:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1, H2, H25, H539, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ancestor, ancestor's, ancestors, ancestors', ancestral, beget, begot, father, father's, fathered, fathering, fatherless, fathers, fathers', forefather, forefathers, grandfather, orphan, orphans

### fear

#### Related Ideas:

afraid, alarmed, anxiety, coward, dismay, dread, fainthearted, fearful, fearlessly, fearsome, frighten, timid, unafraid

#### Definition:

The terms "fear" and "afraid" refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

* The term "fear" can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
* The phrase "fear of Yahweh," as well as related terms "fear of God" and "fear of the Lord," refer to a deep respect of God and the showing of that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
* The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.
* "Anxiety" is fear about the future, what is going to happen.
* To be "alarmed" is to be surprised and afraid because something bad has suddenly happened.
* "Dread" is great fear.
* Someone who is "timid" is afraid to act because something bad might happen as a result.
* Someone who is "unafraid" is not afraid.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, to "fear" can be translated as to "be afraid" or to "deeply respect" or to "revere" or to "be in awe of."
* The term "afraid" could be translated as "terrified" or "scared" or "fearful."
* The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" could be translated as "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God" or "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply" or "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."
* The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
* Note that the phrase "fear of Yahweh" does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase "fear of the Lord" or "fear of the Lord God" is used instead.

(See also: [marvel](../other/amazed.md), [awe](../other/awe.md), [Lord](../kt/lord.md), [power](../kt/power.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:18
* Acts 02:43
* Acts 19:15-17
* Genesis 50:21
* Isaiah 11:3-5
* Job 06:14
* Jonah 01:09
* Luke 12:05
* Matthew 10:28
* Proverbs 10:24-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H367, H926, H928, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7390, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1568, G1630, G1719, G2125, G5398, G5399, G5401

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

afraid, alarmed, anxiety, cowards, dismay, dismayed, dread, dreaded, fainthearted, fear, feared, fearful, fearful thing, fearlessly, fears, fearsome, frighten, frightened, timid, unafraid

### feast

#### Related Ideas:

dinner

#### Definition:

The term "feast" refers to an event where a group of people eat a very large meal together, often for the purpose of celebrating something. The action to "feast" means to eat a large amount of food or to participate in eating a feast together.

* Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
* The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called "feasts."
* In Bible times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
* In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
* A feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.
* The term to "feast" could also be translated as to "eat lavishly" or to "celebrate by eating lots of food" or to "eat a special, large meal."
* Depending on the context, "feast" could be translated as "celebrating together with a large meal" or "a meal with a lot of food" or "a celebration meal."

(See also: [festival](../other/festival.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 02:12-14
* Genesis 26:30
* Genesis 29:22
* Genesis 40:20
* Jude 01:12-13
* Luke 02:43
* Luke 14:7-9
* Matthew 22:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G1173, G1859, G2165, G4910

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dinner, feast, feasting, feasts

### festival

#### Definition:

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

The word for "festival" in the Old Testament literally means "appointed time."

The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.

In some English translations, the word "feast" is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.

There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:

Passover

Festival of Unleavened Bread

Firstfruits

Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)

Festival of Trumpets

Day of Atonement

Festival of Shelters

The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.

A person who "celebrates" acts as if he were at a festival.

(See also: [feast](../other/feast.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 23:31
* 2 Chronicles 08:13
* Exodus 05:01
* John 04:45
* Luke 22:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1974, H2166, H2282, H2287, H6213, H4150, H8057, G1456, G1858, G1859

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

festival, festivals

### fig

#### Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

* Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
* Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
* Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
* In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
* The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
* Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

#### Bible References:

* Habakkuk 03:17
* James 03:12
* Luke 13:07
* Mark 11:14
* Matthew 07:17
* Matthew 21:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1061, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fig, figs

### fir

#### Definition:

A fir tree is a kind of tree that stays green all year and has cones that contain seeds.

* Fir trees are also referred to as "evergreen" trees.
* In ancient times, the wood of fir trees was used for making musical instruments and for building structures such as boats, houses, and the temple.
* Some examples of fir trees mentioned in the Bible are pine, cedar, cypress, and juniper.

(See also: [cedar](../other/cedar.md), [cypress](../other/cypress.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 27:4-5
* Isaiah 37:24-25
* Isaiah 41:19-20
* Isaiah 44:14
* Isaiah 60:12-13
* Psalms 104:16-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H766, H1265, H1266

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fir, firs

### fir

#### Definition:

A fir tree is a kind of tree that stays green all year and has cones that contain seeds.

* Fir trees are also referred to as "evergreen" trees.
* In ancient times, the wood of fir trees was used for making musical instruments and for building structures such as boats, houses, and the temple.
* Some examples of fir trees mentioned in the Bible are pine, cedar, cypress, and juniper.

(See also: [cedar](../other/cedar.md), [cypress](../other/cypress.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 27:4-5
* Isaiah 37:24-25
* Isaiah 41:19-20
* Isaiah 44:14
* Isaiah 60:12-13
* Psalms 104:16-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H766, H1265, H1266

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fir, firs

### fire

#### Related Ideas:

blazing, fiery, firebrands, inflame, kindle

#### Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

* A fire that is "blazing" is very hot and has large flames.
* A "fire brand" is a piece of burning wood.
* To "set on fire" or "set fire to" something is to make it start burning with fire.
* To "inflame" something is to make it start burning.
* To "kindle" a fire is to start that fire burning.
* The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.

The word "fire" and ideas related to fire are also used figuratively.

* The term "fire" can refer to judgment or purification.
* The phrase "baptize with fire" could also be translated as "cause to experience suffering in order to be purified."
* Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.

(See also: [pure](../kt/purify.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 16:18-20
* 2 Kings 01:10
* 2 Thessalonians 01:08
* Acts 07:29-30
* John 15:06
* Luke 03:16
* Matthew 03:12
* Nehemiah 01:3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H1814, H2734, H2740, H3341, H3857, H4168, H5135, H6315, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G2618, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

blazing, fiery, fire, firebrands, fires, flaming, kindle, kindled, kindles, set fire to, set ... on fire, sets ... on fire

### fire

#### Related Ideas:

blazing, fiery, firebrands, inflame, kindle

#### Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

* A fire that is "blazing" is very hot and has large flames.
* A "fire brand" is a piece of burning wood.
* To "set on fire" or "set fire to" something is to make it start burning with fire.
* To "inflame" something is to make it start burning.
* To "kindle" a fire is to start that fire burning.
* The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.

The word "fire" and ideas related to fire are also used figuratively.

* The term "fire" can refer to judgment or purification.
* The phrase "baptize with fire" could also be translated as "cause to experience suffering in order to be purified."
* Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.

(See also: [pure](../kt/purify.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 16:18-20
* 2 Kings 01:10
* 2 Thessalonians 01:08
* Acts 07:29-30
* John 15:06
* Luke 03:16
* Matthew 03:12
* Nehemiah 01:3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H1814, H2734, H2740, H3341, H3857, H4168, H5135, H6315, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G2618, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

blazing, fiery, fire, firebrands, fires, flaming, kindle, kindled, kindles, set fire to, set ... on fire, sets ... on fire

### fishermen

#### Related Ideas:

fish, fisher

#### Definition:

Fishermen are men who catch fish from the water as a means of earning money. In the New Testament, the fishermen used large nets to catch fish. The term "fishers" is another name for fishermen.

* Peter and other apostles worked as fishermen before being called by Jesus.
* Since the land of Israel was near water, the Bible has many references to fish and fishermen.
* This term could be translated with a phrase such as "men who catch fish" or "men who earn money by catching fish."
* The word "fish" can also be a verb that means "to catch fish."

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 47:9-10
* Isaiah 19:08
* Luke 05:1-3
* Matthew 04:19
* Matthew 13:47

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1728, H1770, H1771, H2271, G231

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fish, fishermen, fishers

### flesh

#### Related Ideas:

fleshly, human, living creatures, meat, physical

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "flesh" literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

* The Bible also uses the term "flesh" in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
* In the New Testament, the term "flesh" can be used to talk about something that is associated with being human. For example, to decide something according to the flesh means to decide something according to human standards.
* In the New Testament, the term "flesh" can be used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
* The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
* The expression "flesh and blood" can also refer to a person's ancestors or descendants.
* The expression "one flesh" refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In the context of an animal's body, "flesh" could be translated as "body" or "skin" or "meat."
* When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as "living beings" or "everything that is alive."
* When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as "people" or "human beings" or "everyone who lives."
* The expression "flesh and blood" could also be translated as "relatives" or "family" or "kinfolk" or "family clan." There may be contexts where it could be translated as "ancestors" or "descendants."
* Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to "flesh and blood."
* The expression "become one flesh" could be translated as "unite sexually" or "become as one body" or "become like one person in body and spirit." The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. . It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who "become one flesh" literally become one person.

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:16
* 2 John 01:07
* Ephesians 06:12
* Galatians 01:16
* Genesis 02:24
* John 01:14
* Matthew 16:17
* Romans 08:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H120, H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4561

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

flesh, fleshly, human, humans, living creatures, meat, physical

### forgive

#### Related Ideas:

forgiven, forgiveness, pardon

#### Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

* Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
* This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
* When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
* Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

* This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
* In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
* Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
* The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
* If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: [guilt](../kt/guilt.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 50:17
* Numbers 14:17-19
* Deuteronomy 29:20-21
* Joshua 24:19-20
* 2 Kings 05:17-19
* Psalms 025:11
* Psalms 025:17-19
* Isaiah 55:6-7
* Isaiah 40:02
* Luke 05:21
* Acts 08:22
* Ephesians 04:31-32
* Colossians 03:12-14
* 1 John 02:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, G859, G863, G2433, G5483

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

forgave, forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, forgives, pardon, pardoned

### found

#### Related Ideas:

establish, foundation, founder

#### Definition:

The verb "found" means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase "founded on" means supported by or based on. A "foundation" is the base of support on which something is built or created.

* The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
* The term "foundation" can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
* In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
* A "foundation stone" was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.
* To "establish" something is for a person to start or make or create something that he wants to endure for a long time.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The phrase "before the foundation of the world" could be translated as "before the creation of the world" or "before the time when the world first existed" or "before everything was first created."
* The term "founded on" could be translated as "securely built on" or "firmly based on."
* Depending on the context, "foundation" could be translated as "strong base" or "solid support" or "beginning" or "creation."

(See also: [cornerstone](../kt/cornerstone.md), [create](../other/creation.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 06:37-38
* 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
* Ezekiel 13:13-14
* Luke 14:29
* Matthew 13:35
* Matthew 25:34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H134, H553, H787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H3559, H3772, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H5975, H7760, H8356, G747, G950, G1457, G2310, G2311, G2602

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

established, establishes, found, foundation, foundations, founded, founder, founds, lay ... foundation, lay ... foundations

### free

#### Related Ideas:

freedom, freeman, liberty, volunteer, without cost, without paying for it

#### Definition:

The terms "free" or "freedom" refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for "freedom" is "liberty."

* The expression to "set someone free" or to "free someone" means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
* In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
* Having "liberty" or "freedom" can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.
* To "volunteer" is to freely and willingly agree to do something.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "free" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "not bound" or "not enslaved" or "not in slavery" or "not in bondage."
* The term "freedom" or "liberty" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the state of being free" or "the condition of not being a slave" or "not being bound."
* The expression to "set free" could be translated as to "cause to be free" or to "rescue from slavery" or to "release from bondage."
* A person who has been "set free" has been "released" or "taken out of" bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](../kt/bond.md), [enslave](../other/enslave.md), [servant](../other/servant.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:26
* Galatians 05:01
* Isaiah 61:1
* Leviticus 25:10
* Romans 06:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6340, H6362, H7342, H7971, G425, G525, G558, G629, G630, G859, G1344, G1432, G1657, G1658, G1659, G1849, G3089, G3955, G4506, G5483

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

free, freed, freedom, freeing, freely, freely gave, freeman, frees, liberty, set ... free, volunteer, volunteered, without cost, without paying for it

### fruit

#### Related Ideas:

bear fruit, crop, fruitful, produce, productive land, unfruitful

#### Definition:

The term "fruit" literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten.

* A "fruitful" plant is one that has a lot of good fruit.
* The expression "fruit of the land" refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
* The term "crop" can refer to what people have planted for for food.
* The term "crop" can refer to the food that is harvested at one time.

Sometimes the term "fruit" and ideas related to it are used figuratively.

* In general, the expression "fruit of" refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the "fruit of wisdom" refers to the good things that come from being wise.
* The expression "fruit of the womb" refers to "what the womb produces"—that is, children.
* The Bible often uses "fruit" to refer to a person's actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person's words and actions reveal what his character is like.
* The expression "fruit of the Spirit" refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
* The term "fruitful" can be used figuratively to mean "prosperous." This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate this term using the general word for "fruit" that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural "fruits" whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
* Depending on the context, the term "fruitful" could be translated as "producing much spiritual fruit" or "having many children" or "prosperous."
* The expression "fruit of the land" could also be translated as "food that the land produces" or "food crops that are growing in that region."
* When God created animals and people, he commanded them to "be fruitful and multiply," which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as "have many offspring" or "have many children and descendants" or "have many children so that you will have many descendants."
* The expression "fruit of the womb" could be translated as "what the womb produces" or "children a women gives birth to" or just "children." When Elizabeth says to Mary "blessed is the fruit of your womb," she means "blessed is the child you will give birth to." The project language may also have a different expression for this.
* Another expression "fruit of the vine," could be translated as "vine fruit" or "grapes."
* Depending on the context, the expression "will be more fruitful" could also be translated as "will produce more fruit" or "will have more children" or "will be prosperous."
* The apostle Paul's expression "fruitful labor" could be translated as "work that brings very good results" or "efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus."
* The "fruit of the Spirit" could also be translated as "works that the Holy Spirit produces" or "words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone."

(See also: [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [grain](../other/grain.md), [grape](../other/grape.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [vine](../other/vine.md), [womb](../other/womb.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 05:23
* Genesis 01:11
* Luke 08:15
* Matthew 03:08
* Matthew 07:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3018, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6499, H6509, H6529, H6631, H7019, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bear fruit, crop, crops, fruit, fruitful, fruits, produce, productive land, unfruitful

### fulfill

#### Related Ideas:

carry out, fill to the limit, finish, fulfillment, in full, make something full

#### Definition:

The term "fulfill" means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

* When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
* If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
* To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "fulfill" could be translated as "accomplish" or "complete" or "cause to happen" or "obey" or "perform."
* The phrase "has been fulfilled" could also be translated as "has come true" or "has happened" or "has taken place."
* Ways to translate "fulfill," as in "fulfill your ministry," could include "complete" or "perform" or "practice" or "serve other people as God has called you to do."

(See also: [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [minister](../kt/minister.md), [call](../kt/call.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 02:27
* Acts 03:17-18
* Leviticus 22:17-19
* Luke 04:21
* Matthew 01:22-23
* Matthew 05:17
* Psalms 116:12-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1214, H4390, H5487, H7999, G378, G4135, G4137, G4138, G5048, G5055

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

carried out, fill up ... to the limit, finishing, fulfill, fulfilled, fulfillment, fulfills, in full, make ... full

### gate

#### Related Ideas:

doorkeeper, entrance, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

#### Definition:

A "gate" is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city.

* A "gate bar" is a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.
* A "gatekeeper" was a person who was responsible to control who could go through the gateway.
* A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
* To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
* A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, other ways to translate "gate" could be "door" or "wall opening" or "barrier" or "entranceway."
* The phrase "bars of the gate" could be translated as "gate bolts" or "wooden beams to lock the gate" or "metal locking rods of the gate."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:24
* Acts 10:18
* Deuteronomy 21:18-19
* Genesis 19:01
* Genesis 24:60
* Matthew 07:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4259, G4439, G4440, G2377

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

entrance, gate, gate bars, gateposts, gates, gateway, gateways

### generation

#### Definition:

The term "generation" refers to a group of people who were all born around the same time period.

* A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
* Parents and their children are from two different generations.
* In the Bible, the term "generation" is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The phrase "this generation" or "people of this generation" could be translated as "the people living now" or "you people."
* "This wicked generation" could also be translated as "these wicked people living now."
* The expression "from generation to generation" or "from one generation to the next" could be translated as "people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren" or "people in every time period" or "people in this time period and future time periods" or "all people and their descendants."
* "A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh" could also be translated as "Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him."

(See also: [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [ancestor](../other/father.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 15:19-21
* Exodus 03:13-15
* Genesis 15:16
* Genesis 17:07
* Mark 08:12
* Matthew 11:16
* Matthew 23:34-36
* Matthew 24:34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1755, H1859, H8435, G1074

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

generation, generations

### glory

#### Related Ideas:

beautiful, beauty, glorify, glorious, take pride

#### Definition:

In general, the term "glory" means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be "glorious."

* Sometimes "glory" refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
* For example, the expression "glory of the shepherds" refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
* Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
* The expression to "glory in" means to boast about or take pride in something.

The term "glorify" means to show or tell how great and important something or someone is. It literally means to "give glory to."

* People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done.
* They can also glorify God by living in a way that honors him and shows how great and magnificent he is.
* When the Bible says that God glorifies himself, it means that he reveals to people his amazing greatness, often through miracles.
* God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to people the Son's perfection, splendor, and greatness.
* Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. When they are raised to life, they will be changed to reflect his glory and to display his grace to all creation.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Depending on the context, different ways to translate "glory" could include "splendor" or "brightness" or "majesty" or "awesome greatness" or "extreme value."

The term "glorious" could be translated as "full of glory" or "extremely valuable" or "brightly shining" or "awesomely majestic."

The expression "give glory to God" could be translated as "honor God's greatness" or "praise God because of his splendor" or "tell others how great God is."

The expression "glory in" could also be translated as "praise" or "take pride in" or "boast about" or "take pleasure in."

"Glorify" could also be translated as "give glory to" or "bring glory to" or "cause to appear great."

The phrase "glorify God" could also be translated as "praise God" or "talk about God's greatness" or "show how great God is" or "honor God (by obeying him)."

The term "be glorified" could also be translated as, "be shown to be very great" or "be praised" or "be exalted."

(See also: [exalt](../kt/exalt.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [praise](../other/praise.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 24:17
* Numbers 14:9-10
* Isaiah 35:02
* Luke 18:43
* Luke 02:09
* John 12:28
* Acts 03:13-14
* Acts 07:1-3
* Romans 08:17
* 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
* Philippians 02:14-16
* Philippians 04:19
* Colossians 03:1-4
* 1 Thessalonians 02:05
* James 02:1-4
* 1 Peter 04:15-16
* Revelation 15:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H117, H142, H155, H1342, H1926, H1927, H1935, H1984, H2896, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H5278, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8231, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2570, G2744, G4888

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

beautiful, beauty, glories, glorified, glorifies, glorify, glorifying, glorious, glory, take pride

### good

#### Related Ideas:

best, better, fair, good things, goodness, improved, prefer, proper, well

#### Definition:

The word "good" has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

* In general, something is good if it fits with God's character, purposes, and will.
* Something that is "good" could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
* Land that is "good" could be called "fertile" or "productive."
* A "good" crop could be a "plentiful" crop.
* A person can be "good" at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, "a good farmer."
* In the Bible, the general meaning of "good" is often contrasted with "evil."
* The term "goodness" usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
* The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.
* Actions that are "proper" are those that are good and right for the situation in which they are done.
* "Goods" are good things, valuable possessions.
* To "prefer" something is to think it is better than other things.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The general term for "good" in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
* Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "kind" or "excellent" or "pleasing to God" or "righteous" or "morally upright" or "profitable."
* "Good land" could be translated as "fertile land" or "productive land"; a "good crop" could be translated as a "plentiful harvest" or "large amount of crops."
* The phrase "do good to" means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as "be kind to" or "help" or "benefit" someone.
* To "do good on the Sabbath" means to "do things that help others on the Sabbath."
* Depending on the context, ways to translate the term "goodness" could include "blessing" or "kindness" or "moral perfection" or "righteousness" or "purity."

(See also: [evil](../kt/evil.md), [holy](../kt/holy.md), [profit](../other/profit.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 05:22-24
* Genesis 01:12
* Genesis 02:09
* Genesis 02:17
* James 03:13
* Romans 02:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H155, H410, H1580, H1926, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3787, H3966, H4399, H5232, H6743, H7225, H7368, H7399, H7999, H8231, H8232, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1342, G1380, G1832, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2140, G2163, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2986, G3140, G4147, G4632, G4851, G5224, G5358, G5543, G5544, G5623

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

best, better, do ... good, fair, good, good things, goodness, goods, improved, made ... better, prefer, proper, seemed good, well

### governor

#### Related Ideas:

deputy, govern government, high officials, proconsul

#### Definition:

A "governor" is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. To "govern" means to guide, lead, or manage them.

* The term "proconsul" was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
* In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
* A "government" consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The word "governor" can also be translated as "ruler" or "overseer" or "regional leader" or "one who rules over a small territory."
* Depending on the context, the term "govern" could also be translated as, "rule over" or "lead" or "manage" or supervise."
* The term "governor" should be translated differently than the terms for "king" or "emperor", since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
* The term "proconsul" could also be translated as, "Roman governor" or "Roman provincial ruler."

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [king](../other/king.md), [power](../kt/power.md), [province](../other/province.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md), [ruler](../other/ruler.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:9-10
* Acts 23:22
* Acts 26:30
* Mark 13:9-10
* Matthew 10:18
* Matthew 27:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H323, H324, H1777, H2280, H4951, H5148, H5333, H5460, H6346, H6347, H6486, H7989, H8269, H8660, G445, G446, G746, G1481, G2232, G2233, G2230, G4232

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

deputy, govern, government, governments, governor, governors, high officials, proconsul, proconsuls, provincial governors

### grain

#### Related Ideas:

grainfields, standing grain

#### Definition:

The term "grain" usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

* In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
* A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
* Note that some older Bible versions use the word "corn" to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, "corn" only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](../other/head.md), [wheat](../other/wheat.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 42:03
* Genesis 42:26-28
* Genesis 43:1-2
* Luke 06:02
* Mark 02:24
* Matthew 13:7-9
* Ruth 01:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G248, G2590, G2848, G3450, G4621, G4719

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

grain, grainfields, grains, standing grain

### guilt

#### Related Ideas:

guilty, accountable, reason for a penalty

#### Definition:

The term "guilt" refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

* To "be guilty" means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
* The opposite of "guilty" is "innocent."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Some languages might translate "guilt" as "the weight of sin" or "the counting of sins."
* Ways to translate to "be guilty" could include a word or phrase that means, to "be at fault" or "having done something morally wrong" or "having committed a sin."

(See also: [innocent](../kt/innocent.md), [iniquity](../kt/iniquity.md), [punish](../other/punish.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 28:36-38
* Isaiah 06:07
* James 02:10-11
* John 19:04
* Jonah 01:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6140, H816, H817, H818, H819, H2398, H5352, H5355, H5771, H7561, H7563, G338, G1777, G5267

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cause ... to become guilty, find guilty, guilt, guilty, held accountable, reason for ... penalty

### hand

#### Related Ideas:

handbreadth, handful, lay a hand on

#### Definition:

There are several figurative ways that "hand" is used in the Bible:

To "hand" something to someone means to put something into that person's hands.

The term "hand" is often used in reference to God's power and action, such as when God says "Has not my hand made all these things?"

Expressions such as "hand over to" or "deliver into the hands of" refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.

Some other figurative uses of "hand" include:

To "lay a hand on" means to "harm."

To "save from the hand of" means to stop someone from harming someone else.

The position of being "on the right hand" means "on the right side" or "to the right."

The expression "by the hand of" someone means "by" or "through" the action of that person. For example, "by the hand of the Lord" means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.

Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.

The term "laying on of hands" refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service or to pray for healing.

When Paul says "written by my hand," it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

#### Translation Suggestions

* These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
* The expression "handed him the scroll" could also be translated as "gave him the scroll" or "put the scroll in his hand." It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
* When "hand" refers to the person, such as in "the hand of God did this," it could be translated as "God did this."
* An expression such as "delivered them into the hands of their enemies" or "handed them over to their enemies," could be translated as, "allowed their enemies to conquer them" or "caused them to be captured by their enemies" or "empowered their enemies to gain control over them."
* To "die by the hand of" could be translated as "be killed by."
* The expression "on the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of."
* In regard to Jesus being "seated at the right hand of God," if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: "on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority."

(See also: [adversary](../other/adversary.md), [bless](../kt/bless.md), [captive](../other/captive.md), [honor](../kt/honor.md), [power](../kt/power.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:25
* Acts 08:17
* Acts 11:21
* Genesis 09:05
* Genesis 14:20
* John 03:35
* Mark 07:32
* Matthew 06:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G710, G1188, G2176, G2902, G4084, G5495, G5496, G5497, H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8042, H8168

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

by the hand of, fist, from the hand of, hand, handbreadth, handed, handful, handfuls, handing, hands, lay a hand on, lays his hand on

### hang

#### Definition:

The term "hang" means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

* Death by hanging typically is done by tying a rope that is tied around a person's neck and sustending him from an elevated object, like a tree limb. Judas killed himself by hanging.
* Although Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross, there was nothing around his neck: the soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
* To hang someone always refers to the way of killing someone by hanging them with a rope around their neck.

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 17:23
* Acts 10:39
* Galatians 03:13
* Genesis 40:22
* Matthew 27:3-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2614, H3363, H8518, G519

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hang, hanged, hanging, hangings, hangs, hung

### hang

#### Definition:

The term "hang" means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

* Death by hanging typically is done by tying a rope that is tied around a person's neck and sustending him from an elevated object, like a tree limb. Judas killed himself by hanging.
* Although Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross, there was nothing around his neck: the soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
* To hang someone always refers to the way of killing someone by hanging them with a rope around their neck.

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 17:23
* Acts 10:39
* Galatians 03:13
* Genesis 40:22
* Matthew 27:3-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2614, H3363, H8518, G519

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hang, hanged, hanging, hangings, hangs, hung

### hard

#### Related Ideas:

hardly, hardness, hardship

#### Definition:

The term "hard" has several different meanings, depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

* An object that is "hard" is solid and firm. It is not easily broken, bent, dented, or pierced.
* Work that is "hard" is difficult to do.
* When a person works "hard", he does that work diligently and with a lot of effort to do it well.
* A person who "hardly" does something either does not do it completely or does it rarely.
* A person who goes through "hardship" is suffering or does not have what he needs.

The term "hard" can be used figuratively

* A person who has a "hard heart" is stubborn. He continues to disobey God and will not repent.
* A person whose heart is hardened has become stubbornly disobedient.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The terms "hardness" or "hardness of heart" or "hard heart" could be translated as "stubbornness" or "persistent rebellion" or "rebellious attitude" or "stubborn disobedience" or "stubbornly not repenting."
* The term "hardened" could also be translated as "stubbornly unrepentant" or "refusing to obey."
* "Do not harden your heart" could be translated as "do not refuse to repent" or "do not stubbornly keep disobeying."
* Other ways to translate "hard-hearted" could include "stubbornly disobedient" or "continuing to disobey" or "refusing to repent" or "always rebelling."
* In expressions such as "work hard" or "try hard," the term "hard" could be translated as "with perseverance" or "diligently."
* The expression "press hard against" could also be translated as "shove with force" or "push strongly against."
* To "oppress people with hard labor" could be translated as "force people to work so hard that they suffer" or "cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work."
* A different kind of "hard labor" is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [heart](../kt/heart.md), [labor pains](../other/laborpains.md), [stiff-necked](../other/stiffnecked.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 11:23
* Deuteronomy 15:07
* Exodus 14:04
* Hebrews 04:07
* John 12:40
* Matthew 19:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4164, H4165, H4522, H4751, H4784, H4843, H5450, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6381, H7185, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8513, H8631, G917, G1421, G1422, G1423, G2205, G2478, G2553, G2872, G2873, G3425, G3433, G4053, G4183, G4456, G4457, G4641, G4642, G4643, G4645, G4912

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hard, harden, hardened, hardening, hardens, harder, hardest, hardly, hardness, hardship, hardships

### harp

#### elated Ideas:

harpist, lyre

#### Definition:

A harp is a stringed musical instrument, that usually consists of a large open frame with vertical strings.

* In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
* Players of harps and lyres would hold them in the hands and play them by strumming or plucking while walking.
* In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
* David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
* He also played a harp for King Saul, to soothe the king's troubled spirit.
* A lyre looks like a small harp, having strings strung across an open frame.

(See also: [David](../names/david.md), [fir](../other/fir.md), [psalm](../kt/psalm.md), [Saul (OT)](../names/saul.md))

#### Picture of a Harp:

<a href="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/h/Harp2.png"><img src="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/h/Harp2.png" ></a>

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 15:16-18
* Amos 05:23-24
* Daniel 03:05
* Psalm 033:1-3
* Revelation 05:8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3658, H5035, H7030, G2788, G2789, G2790

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

harp, harpist, harpists, harps, lyre, lyres

### harvest

#### Related Ideas:

harvester

#### Definition:

The term "harvest" refers to the gathering in of ripe fruits or vegetables from the plants on which they were growing.

* The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
* The Israelites held a "Festival of Harvest" or "Festival of Ingathering" to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
* In a figurative sense, the word "harvest" can refer to people coming to believe in Jesus or can describe a person's spiritual growth.
* The idea of a harvest of spiritual crops fits with the figurative image of fruits being a picture of godly character qualities.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate this term with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
* The event of harvesting could be translated as, "time of gathering in" or "crop gathering time" or "fruit picking time."
* The verb to "harvest" could be translated as, to "gather in" or to "pick up" or to "collect."

(See also: [firstfruits](../other/firstfruit.md), [festival](../other/festival.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 09:9-11
* 2 Samuel 21:7-9
* Galatians 06:9-10
* Isaiah 17:11
* James 05:7-8
* Leviticus 19:09
* Matthew 09:38
* Ruth 01:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2758, H7105, H7114, G270, G1081, G2326, G4863

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

harvest, harvested, harvester, harvesters, harvesting, harvests

### head

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the word "head" is used with several figurative meanings.

* Often this term is used to refer to a ruler or to someone who has authority over people, as in "you have made me the head over nations."
* Jesus is called the "head of the church." Just as a person's head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his "body," the Church.
* The New Testament teaches that a husband is the "head" or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
* The term "head" can also represent the whole person, as in "this gray head," referring to an elderly person, or as in "the head of Joseph," which refers to Joseph.
* The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means" he will never cut or shave his hair."
* The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
* The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top parts of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
* The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, as in the "head of the street."

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "ruler" or "the one who leads and directs" or "the one who is responsible for."
* The expression "head of" can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person's name. For example, "the head of Joseph" could simply be translated as "Joseph."
* The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
* Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "beginning" or "source" or "ruler" or "leader" or "top."

(See also: [grain](../other/grain.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
* 1 Kings 08:1-2
* 1 Samuel 09:22
* Colossians 02:10
* Colossians 02:19
* Numbers 01:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H441, H1538, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

head, heads

### heal

#### Related Ideas:

cure, healer, health, healthy, make fresh, make well, recover, unhealthy

#### Definition:

The terms "heal" and "cure" both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

* A person who is "healed" or "cured" has been "made well" or "made healthy."
* Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
* However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
* For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
* The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.
* A person who is "healthy" has no disease. It may be that he has been healed or that he has simply not been ill for a long time.
* Health can be a metaphor for anything that is good or trustworthy. "Healthy teaching" is teaching that people can depend on to be true and helpful and morally good.

(See also: [miracle](../kt/miracle.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 05:16
* Acts 08:06
* Luke 05:13
* Luke 06:19
* Luke 08:43
* Matthew 04:23-25
* Matthew 09:35
* Matthew 13:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H724, H1369, H1455, H2280, H2421, H2492, H2896, H3545, H4832, H4974, H7495, H7499, H7500, H7725, H7965, H8549, H8585, H8644, H622, G1295, G1743, G2322, G2323, G2386, G2390, G2392, G3647, G4982, G5198, G5199

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cure, cured, heal, healed, healer, healers, healing, healings, heals, health, healthy, made ... fresh, made ... well, make ... fresh, recovered, unhealthy

### heart

#### Related Ideas:

kidneys

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

* To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
* The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
* The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
* The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.
* The kidneys are also used as a synecdoche for the physical inner organs and as a metonym for a person's innermost thoughts and emotions.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
* Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
* If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires" or "inner self".
* Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
* The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
* The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
* Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: [hard](../other/hard.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 03:17
* 1 Thessalonians 02:04
* 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
* Acts 08:22
* Acts 15:09
* Luke 08:15
* Mark 02:06
* Matthew 05:08
* Matthew 22:37

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H7307, H7356, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heart, hearts, kidneys

### heaven

#### Related Ideas:

heavenly, in midair, overhead, sky

#### Definition:

The term that is translated as "heaven" usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean "sky," depending on the context.

* The term "heavens" refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can't directly see from the earth.
* The term "sky" refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be "up in the sky."
* In some contexts in the Bible, the word "heaven" could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
* When "heaven" is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the "kingdom of heaven" he is referring to the kingdom of God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When "heaven" is used figuratively, it could be translated as "God."
* For "kingdom of heaven" in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word "heaven" since this is distinctive to Matthew's gospel.
* The terms "heavens" or "heavenly bodies" could also be translated as, "sun, moon, and stars" or "all the stars in the universe."
* The phrase, "stars of heaven" could be translated as "stars in the sky" or "stars in the galaxy" or "stars in the universe."

(See also: [kingdom of God](../kt/kingdomofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 08:22-24
* 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
* 1 Thessalonians 04:17
* Deuteronomy 09:01
* Ephesians 06:9
* Genesis 01:01
* Genesis 07:11
* John 03:12
* John 03:27
* Matthew 05:18
* Matthew 05:46-48

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heaven, heavenly, heavens, in midair, overhead, skies, sky

### heir

#### Definition:

An "heir" is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

* In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
* The Bible also uses "heir" in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
* As God's children, Christians are said to be "joint heirs" with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as "co-heirs" or "fellow heirs" or "heirs together with."
* The term "heir" could be translated as "person receiving benefits" or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: [firstborn](../other/firstborn.md), [inherit](../kt/inherit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:1-2
* Galatians 04:07
* Genesis 15:01
* Genesis 21:10-11
* Luke 20:14
* Mark 12:07
* Matthew 21:38-39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1121, H3423, G2816, G2818, G2820, G4789

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heir, heirs

### hell

#### Related Ideas:

delivered to Tartarus, hell, lake of fire

#### Definition:

Hell is the final place of unending pain and suffering where God will punish everyone who rebels against him and rejects his plan of saving them through Jesus' sacrifice. It is also referred to as the "lake of fire."

* Hell is described as a place of fire and severe suffering.
* Satan and the evil spirits who follow him will be thrown into hell for eternal punishment.
* People who do not believe in Jesus' sacrifice for their sin and do not trust in him to save them will be punished forever in hell.
* "Tartarus" is a name for hell borrowed from Greek religion to refer to the place where evil spirits are punished.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* These terms should probably be translated differently since they occur in different contexts.
* Some languages cannot use "lake" in the phrase "lake of fire" because it refers to water.
* The term "hell" could be translated as "place of suffering" or "final place of darkness and pain."
* The term "lake of fire" could also be translated as, "sea of fire" or "huge fire (of suffering)" or "field of fire."

(See also: [heaven](../kt/heaven.md), [death](../other/death.md), [Hades](../kt/hades.md), [abyss](../other/abyss.md))

#### Bible References:

* James 03:06
* Luke 12:05
* Mark 09:42-44
* Matthew 05:21-22
* Matthew 05:29
* Matthew 10:28-31
* Matthew 23:33
* Matthew 25:41-43
* Revelation 20:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G86, G1067, G3041, G4442, G5020, G5394

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

delivered ... to Tartarus, hell, lake of fire

### hell

#### Related Ideas:

delivered to Tartarus, hell, lake of fire

#### Definition:

Hell is the final place of unending pain and suffering where God will punish everyone who rebels against him and rejects his plan of saving them through Jesus' sacrifice. It is also referred to as the "lake of fire."

* Hell is described as a place of fire and severe suffering.
* Satan and the evil spirits who follow him will be thrown into hell for eternal punishment.
* People who do not believe in Jesus' sacrifice for their sin and do not trust in him to save them will be punished forever in hell.
* "Tartarus" is a name for hell borrowed from Greek religion to refer to the place where evil spirits are punished.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* These terms should probably be translated differently since they occur in different contexts.
* Some languages cannot use "lake" in the phrase "lake of fire" because it refers to water.
* The term "hell" could be translated as "place of suffering" or "final place of darkness and pain."
* The term "lake of fire" could also be translated as, "sea of fire" or "huge fire (of suffering)" or "field of fire."

(See also: [heaven](../kt/heaven.md), [death](../other/death.md), [Hades](../kt/hades.md), [abyss](../other/abyss.md))

#### Bible References:

* James 03:06
* Luke 12:05
* Mark 09:42-44
* Matthew 05:21-22
* Matthew 05:29
* Matthew 10:28-31
* Matthew 23:33
* Matthew 25:41-43
* Revelation 20:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G86, G1067, G3041, G4442, G5020, G5394

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

delivered ... to Tartarus, hell, lake of fire

### high priest

#### Related Ideas:

high priesthood

#### Definition:

The term "high priest" refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all the other Israelite priests.

* The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the temple to offer a special sacrifice once a year.
* The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
* When Jesus was being arrested, Caiaphas was the official high priest. Caiphas' father-in-law Annas is also mentioned sometimes because he was a former high priest who probably still had power and authority over the people.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* "High priest" could be translated as "supreme priest" or "highest ranking priest."
* Make sure this term is translated differently from the term "chief priest."

(See also: [Annas](../names/annas.md), [Caiaphas](../names/caiaphas.md), [chief priests](../other/chiefpriests.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 05:27
* Acts 07:01
* Acts 09:01
* Exodus 30:10
* Hebrews 06:19-20
* Leviticus 16:32
* Luke 03:02
* Mark 02:25-26
* Matthew 26:3-5
* Matthew 26:51-54

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7218, H1419, H3548, G748, G749

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

high priest, high priesthood, high priests

### holy

#### Related Ideas:

holiness, sacred, unholy

#### Definition:

The terms "holy" and "holiness" refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

* Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
* A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
* An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
* People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
* In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
* God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.
* Believers in Jesus are holy people, not because of what they have done, but rather because of their faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.
* When people of any religion, true or false, consider something "sacred," they consider it holy according to their religion.

Literally, the term "unholy" means "not holy." It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

* This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
* A thing that is called "unholy" could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term "sacred" describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

* In the Old Testament, the term "sacred" was often used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as "religious."
* "Sacred songs" and "sacred music" refer to music that was sung or played for God's glory. This could be translated as "music for worshiping Yahweh" or "songs that praise God."
* The phrase "sacred duties" referred to the "religious duties" or "rituals" that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.
* The phrase "sacred gifts" refers to things that someone has set apart for God and then given to God at the temple.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Ways to translate "holy" might include "set apart for God" or "belonging to God" or "completely pure" or "perfectly sinless" or "separated from sin."

To "make holy" is often translated as "sanctify" in English. It could also be translated as "set apart (someone) for God's glory."

Ways to translate "unholy" could include "not holy" or "not belonging to God" or "not honoring to God" or "not godly."

In some contexts, "unholy" could be translated as "unclean."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [consecrate](../kt/consecrate.md), [sanctify](../kt/sanctify.md), [set apart](../kt/setapart.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 28:22
* 2 Kings 03:02
* Lamentations 04:01
* Ezekiel 20:18-20
* Matthew 07:6
* Mark 08:38
* Acts 07:33
* Acts 11:08
* Romans 01:02
* 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
* Colossians 01:22
* 1 Thessalonians 03:13
* 1 Thessalonians 04:07
* 2 Timothy 03:15
* 1 Timothy 05:10
* 2 Corinthians 09:12-15
* Revelation 16:06
* Revelation 20:9-10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G2150, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

holier, holiest, holiness, holy, holy duties, honored as holy, makes ... holy, sacred, sacred gifts, sacred places, unholy

### honey

#### Related Ideas:

honeycomb

#### Definition:

"Honey" is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

* Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
* Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
* Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
* This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God's words and decrees are said to be "sweeter than honey."
* Sometimes a person's words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [Jonathan](../names/jonathan.md), [Philistines](../names/philistines.md), [Samson](../names/samson.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 14:1-3
* Deuteronomy 06:3
* Exodus 13:3-5
* Joshua 05:06
* Proverbs 05:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G3192

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

honey, honeycomb

### honor

#### Related Ideas:

dignified, esteem, held in honor, highly regarded, honorable, of high standing, places of honor, recognition

#### Definition:

The terms "honor" and to "honor" refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

* Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
* God instructs Christians to honor others.
* Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
* The terms "honor" and "glory" are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
* Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.
* To "esteem" someone is to consider him worthy of great honor.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate "honor" could include "respect" or "esteem" or "high regard."
* The term to "honor" could be translated as to "show special respect to" or to "cause to be praised" or to "show high regard for" or to "highly value."

(See also: [dishonor](../other/dishonor.md), [glory](../kt/glory.md), [glory](../kt/glory.md), [praise](../other/praise.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 02:8
* Acts 19:17
* John 04:44
* John 12:26
* Mark 06:04
* Matthew 15:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5082, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G820, G1391, G1392, G1741, G1784, G2151, G2233, G2570, G3170, G4411, G4586, G5091, G5092, G5093, G5399

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dignified, esteem, held in honor, highly regarded, honor, honorable, honored, honoring, honors, of high standing, places of honor, recognition

### horn

#### Related Ideas:

ram's horn

#### Definitions:

Horns are permanent, hard, pointed growths on the heads of many types of animals, including cattle, sheep, goats, and deer.

* The horn of a ram (male sheep) was made into a musical instrument called a "ram's horn" or "shofar," which was blown for special events such as religious festivals.
* The term "horn" was sometimes used to refer to a "flask" that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king, as Samuel did with David.
* This term should be translated with a word that is different from the word that refers to a trumpet.
* The term "horn" is also used figuratively as a symbol of strength, power, authority, and royalty.
* God told the Israelites to make a horn-shaped projection on each of the four corners of the incense and brazen altars. Although these projections were called "horns," they were not actually animal horns.

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [cow](../other/cow.md), [deer](../other/deer.md), [goat](../other/goat.md), [power](../kt/power.md) [royal](../other/royal.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md), [trumpet](../other/trumpet.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 15:27-28
* 1 Kings 01:39
* 2 Samuel 22:03
* Jeremiah 17:01
* Psalms 022:21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's:H3104, H7160, H7161, H7162, H7782, G2768

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

horn, horned, horns, ram's horn, rams' horns

### hour

#### Definition:

In addition to being used to refer to when or how long something took place, the term "hour" is also used in several figurative ways:

* When the text says that the "hour had come" for Jesus to suffer and be put to death, this means that it was the appointed time for this to happen—the time that God had selected long ago.
* The phrase "that hour" is also used to mean "at that moment" or "right then."
* When the text talks about the "hour" being late, this means that it was late in the day, when the sun would soon be setting.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When used figuratively, the term "hour" can be translated as "time" or "moment" or "appointed time."
* The phrase "in that very hour" or "the same hour" could be translated as "at that moment" or "at that time" or "immediately" or "right then."
* The expression "the hour was late" could be translated as "it was late in the day" or "it would soon be getting dark" or "it was late afternoon."
* Referring to Jesus, the expression "his hour had come" could be translated as, "the time had come for him" or "it was the appointed time for him."

(See also: [hour](../other/biblicaltimehour.md))

#### Bible References:

* Mark 14:35
* 1 Corinthians 15:30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5610

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

appointed time, hour, hours, moment, time, while

### house

#### Related Ideas:

home, residence

#### Definition:

The term "house" is often used figuratively in the Bible.

* Sometimes it means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
* Often "house" refers to a person's descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
* The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
* In Hebrews 3, "God's house" is used as a metaphor to refer to God's people or, more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
* A "residence" is any place in which people live without plans to move to another place.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
* The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
* Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
* The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells."
* "House of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](../names/david.md), [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [house of God](../kt/houseofgod.md), [household](../other/household.md), [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:42
* Acts 07:49
* Genesis 39:04
* Genesis 41:40
* Luke 08:39
* Matthew 10:06
* Matthew 15:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1004, H1005, H4585, H5116, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

home, homes, house, house's, houses, residence

### house of God

#### Related Ideas:

house of Yahweh

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases "house of God" (God's house) and "house of Yahweh (Yahweh's house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

* This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
* Sometimes "God's house" is used to refer to the people of God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as "a house for worshiping God" or "a place for worshiping God."
* If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as "the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or "where God is present" or "where God meets with his people.")
* The word "house" may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God "dwells" there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](../kt/peopleofgod.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 03:14-15
* 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
* Ezra 05:13
* Genesis 28:17
* Judges 18:30-31
* Mark 02:26
* Matthew 12:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H426, H430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G2316, G3624

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

house of ... God, house of Yahweh

### household

#### Related Ideas:

household members

#### Definition:

The term "household" refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

* Managing a household would involves directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
* Sometimes "household" can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](../other/house.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:10
* Galatians 06:10
* Genesis 07:01
* Genesis 34:19
* John 04:53
* Matthew 10:25
* Matthew 10:36
* Philippians 04:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1004, H5657, G2322, G3609, G3614, G3615, G3616, G3623, G3624, G3626

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

household, household members, households, members of household

### hypocrite

#### Related Ideas:

hypocrisy

#### Definition:

The term "hypocrite" refers to a person who does things to appear righteous, but who secretly is acting in evil ways. The term "hypocrisy" refers to the behavior that deceives people into thinking a person is righteous.

* Hypocrites want to be seen doing good things so that people will think that they are good people.
* Often a hypocrite will criticize other people for doing the same sinful things that they themselves do.
* Jesus called the Pharisees hypocrites because although they acted religiously like wearing certain clothes and eating certain foods, they were not kind or fair to people.
* A hypocrite points out faults in other people, but doesn't admit his own faults.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Some languages have an expression like "two-faced" that refers to a hypocrite or a hypocrite's actions.
* Other ways to translate "hypocrite" could include "fraud" or "pretender" or "arrogant, deceitful person."
* The term "hypocrisy" could be translated by, "deception" or "fake actions" or "pretending."

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 02:13
* Luke 06:41-42
* Luke 12:54-56
* Luke 13:15
* Mark 07:6-7
* Matthew 06:1-2
* Romans 12:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G505, G5272, G5273

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hypocrisy, hypocrite, hypocrites

### inherit

#### Related Ideas:

heritage, inheritance,legacy

#### Definition:

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The "inheritance" is what is received.

A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.

A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.

The Bible also calls God's people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.

God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to "inherit the land." This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.

In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will "inherit salvation" and "inherit eternal life." It is also expressed as, "inherit the kingdom of God." This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.

There are other figurative meanings for these terms:

The Bible says that wise people will "inherit glory" and righteous people will "inherit good things."

To "inherit the promises" means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.

This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who "inherit the wind" or "inherit folly." This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
* Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
* Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
* When God's people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as "valued ones belonging to him."
* The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions" or "person chosen to receive (God's) spiritual possessions or blessings."
* The term "heritage" could be translated as "blessings from God" or "inherited blessings."

(See also: [heir](../other/heir.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Promised Land](../kt/promisedland.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 06:09
* 1 Peter 01:04
* 2 Samuel 21:03
* Acts 07:4-5
* Deuteronomy 20:16
* Galatians 05:21
* Genesis 15:07
* Hebrews 09:15
* Jeremiah 02:07
* Luke 15:11
* Matthew 19:29
* Psalm 079:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heritage, inherit, inheritance, inheritances, inherited, legacy

### instruct

#### Related Ideas:

instruction, instructor

#### Definitions:

The terms "instruct" and "instruction" refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

* To "give instructions" means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
* When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
* Depending on the context, the term "instruct" could also be translated as "tell" or "direct" or "teach" or "give instructions to."
* The term "instructions" could be translated as "directions" or "explanations" or "what he has told you to do."
* When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as "commands" or "orders."

(See also: [command](../kt/command.md), [decree](../other/decree.md), [teach](../other/teach.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 14:04
* Genesis 26:05
* Hebrews 11:22
* Matthew 10:05
* Matthew 11:01
* Proverbs 01:30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H631, H1696, H1697, H3256, H3289, H3384, H3948, H4148, H4156, H4687, H4931, H4941, H6098, H6490, H6680, H7919, H8451, G1256, G1291, G1299, G1319, G1321, G1378, G1781, G1785, G2012, G2727, G2753, G3559, G3560, G3807, G3810, G3811, G3852, G3853, G4264, G4367, G4822, G4929

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

gave ... instructions, instruct, instructed, instructing, instruction, instructions, instructor, instructors, instructs

### interpret

#### Related Ideas:

interpretation, interpreter, translate

#### Definitions:

The terms "interpret" and "interpretation" refer to understanding and explaining the meaning of something.

* Often in the Bible these terms are used in connection with explaining the meaning of dreams or visions.
* In the Old Testament, God sometimes used dreams to reveal to people what would happen in the future. So the interpretations of those dreams were prophecies.
* The term "interpret" can refer to figuring out the meaning of other things, such as seeing what the sky looks like and figuring out whether or not it will rain or be windy.
* The terms "interpret" and "translate" can refer to explaining what is said in one language to people who speak another language.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate the term "interpret" include "figure out the meaning of" or "explain" or "give the meaning of."
* The term "interpretation" could also be translated as "explanation" or "meaning."

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Daniel](../names/daniel.md), [dream](../other/dream.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [vision](../other/vision.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 12:10
* Daniel 04:4-6
* Genesis 40:4-5
* Judges 07:15-16
* Luke 12:56

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H995, H3887, H6591, H6622, H6623, H7760, H7922, G1252, G1328, G1329, G1381, G1955, G2058, G3177, G4793

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

interpret, interpretation, interpretations, interpreted, interpreter, interpreting, interprets, translated

### is written

#### Definition:

The phrase "as it is written" or "what is written" occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

* Sometimes "as it is written" refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
* Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
* This could be translated "as it is written in the Law of Moses" or "as the prophets wrote long ago" or "what it says in God's laws that Moses wrote down long ago".
* Another option is to keep "It is written" and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: [command](../kt/command.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 05:13-15
* Acts 13:29
* Exodus 32:15-16
* John 21:25
* Luke 03:4
* Mark 09:12
* Matthew 04:06
* Revelation 01:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H874, H3789, G1125

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

are ... written, had ... been written, has ... been written, have ... been written, is ... written, is it ... written, it is written, it was written, Moses ... wrote, was written, were ... written

### joy

#### Related Ideas:

enjoy, enjoyment, glad, gladness, greet, joyful, joyfulness, jubilant, merry-hearted, rejoice, source of gladness

#### Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

* A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
* God is the one who gives true joy to people.
* Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
* Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.
* To "salute" is to greet a high-ranking government or military official.
* "Jubilant" is another word for "joyful."

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

* This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
* It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
* When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
* The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
* A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
* A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
* A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy."

#### Bible References:

* Nehemiah 08:10
* Psalm 048:02
* Isaiah 56:6-7
* Jeremiah 15:15-16
* Matthew 02:9-10
* Luke 15:07
* Luke 19:37-38
* John 03:29
* Acts 16:32-34
* Romans 05:1-2
* Romans 15:30-32
* Galatians 05:23
* Philippians 04:10-13
* 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
* 1 Thessalonians 05:16
* Philemon 01:4-7
* James 01:02
* 3 John 01:1-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1288, H1523, H1524, H1525, H2287, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2896, H2898, H3190, H4885, H5727, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H7965, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G782, G2165, G2167, G2744, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be glad, be merry, enjoy, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, enjoys, glad, gladness, greet, greeted, greeting, greetings, greets, joy, joyful, joyful shouting, joyfully, joyfulness, jubilant, make ... glad, makes ... glad, merry-hearted, rejoice, rejoiced, rejoiced greatly, rejoices, rejoices greatly, rejoicing, shout for joy, shout joyfully, shout of joy, shouts of joy, source of gladness, was merry

### kin

#### Related Ideas:

kindred, kinfolk, kinsman, relative

#### Definition:

The term "kin" refers to a person's blood relatives, considered as a group. The word "kinsman" refers specifically to a male relative.

* "Kin" can only refer to a person's close relatives, such as parents and siblings, or it can also include more distant relatives, such as an aunts, uncles, or cousins.
* In ancient Israel, if a man died, his nearest male relative was expected to marry his widow, manage his property, and help carry on his family name. This relative was called a "kinsman-redeemer."
* This term "kin" could also be translated as, "relative" or "family member."

#### Bible References:

* Romans 16:9-11
* Ruth 02:20
* Ruth 03:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H251, H1350, H1353, H1730, H4129, H4130, H4138, H4940, H7138, H7607, G1085, G4773

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kin, kindred, kinfolk, kinsfolk, kinsman, kinsmen, relative, relatives

### kin

#### Related Ideas:

kindred, kinfolk, kinsman, relative

#### Definition:

The term "kin" refers to a person's blood relatives, considered as a group. The word "kinsman" refers specifically to a male relative.

* "Kin" can only refer to a person's close relatives, such as parents and siblings, or it can also include more distant relatives, such as an aunts, uncles, or cousins.
* In ancient Israel, if a man died, his nearest male relative was expected to marry his widow, manage his property, and help carry on his family name. This relative was called a "kinsman-redeemer."
* This term "kin" could also be translated as, "relative" or "family member."

#### Bible References:

* Romans 16:9-11
* Ruth 02:20
* Ruth 03:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H251, H1350, H1353, H1730, H4129, H4130, H4138, H4940, H7138, H7607, G1085, G4773

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kin, kindred, kinfolk, kinsfolk, kinsman, kinsmen, relative, relatives

### kind

#### Definition:

The terms "kind" and "kinds" refer to groups or classifications of things that are connected by shared characteristics.

* In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
* Often there are many different variations or species within each "kind." For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same "kind," but they are different species.
* The main thing that distinguishes each "kind" as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same "kind." Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

#### Picture showing Kinds:

<a href="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/k/Kinds.png"><img src="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/k/Kinds.png" ></a>

#### Translation Suggestions

* Ways to translate this term could include "type" or "class" or "group" or "animal (plant) group" or "category."

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 01:21
* Genesis 01:24
* Mark 09:29
* Matthew 13:47

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2178, H4327, G1085

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kind, kinds

### king

#### Related Ideas:

kingly, kingship

#### Definition:

The term "king" refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

* A king was usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
* When a king died, it was usually his oldest son who became the next king.
* In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
* Rarely the term "king" was used to refer to someone who was not a true king, such as "King Herod" in the New Testament.
* In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
* The "kingdom of God" refers to God's rule over his people.
* Jesus was called "king of the Jews," "king of Israel," and "king of kings."
* When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
* This term could also be translated as "supreme chief" or "absolute leader" or "sovereign ruler."
* The phrase "king of kings" could be translated as "king who rules over all other kings" or "supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers."

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [Herod Antipas](../names/herodantipas.md), [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md), [kingdom of God](../kt/kingdomofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 06:15-16
* 2 Kings 05:18
* 2 Samuel 05:03
* Acts 07:9-10
* Acts 13:22
* John 01:49-51
* Luke 01:05
* Luke 22:24-25
* Matthew 05:35
* Matthew 14:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936, G937

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

king, king's, kingly, kings, kingship, made ... king, set up ... king, set up kings

### king

#### Related Ideas:

kingly, kingship

#### Definition:

The term "king" refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

* A king was usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
* When a king died, it was usually his oldest son who became the next king.
* In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
* Rarely the term "king" was used to refer to someone who was not a true king, such as "King Herod" in the New Testament.
* In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
* The "kingdom of God" refers to God's rule over his people.
* Jesus was called "king of the Jews," "king of Israel," and "king of kings."
* When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
* This term could also be translated as "supreme chief" or "absolute leader" or "sovereign ruler."
* The phrase "king of kings" could be translated as "king who rules over all other kings" or "supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers."

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [Herod Antipas](../names/herodantipas.md), [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md), [kingdom of God](../kt/kingdomofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 06:15-16
* 2 Kings 05:18
* 2 Samuel 05:03
* Acts 07:9-10
* Acts 13:22
* John 01:49-51
* Luke 01:05
* Luke 22:24-25
* Matthew 05:35
* Matthew 14:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936, G937

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

king, king's, kingly, kings, kingship, made ... king, set up ... king, set up kings

### kingdom

#### Related Ideas:

power to rule

#### Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

* A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
* The term "kingdom" can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term "kingdom of God."
* God is the ruler of all creation, but the term "kingdom of God" especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
* The Bible also talks about Satan having a "kingdom" in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as "darkness."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term "kingdom" could be translated as "country (ruled by a king)" or "king's territory" or "region ruled by a king."
* In a spiritual sense, "kingdom" could be translated as "ruling" or "reigning" or "controlling" or "governing."
* One way to translate "kingdom of priests" might be "spiritual priests who are ruled by God."
* The phrase "kingdom of light" could be translated as "God's reign that is good like light" or "when God, who is light, rules people" or "the light and goodness of God's kingdom." It is best to keep the word "light" in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
* Note that the term "kingdom" is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [king](../other/king.md), [kingdom of God](../kt/kingdomofgod.md), [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md), [Judah](../names/judah.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:12
* 2 Timothy 04:17-18
* Colossians 01:13-14
* John 18:36
* Mark 03:24
* Matthew 04:7-9
* Matthew 13:19
* Matthew 16:28
* Revelation 01:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kingdom, kingdoms, power to rule, kingship

### kingdom of God

#### Related Ideas:

kingdom of Christ and God, kingdom of heaven

#### Definition:

The terms "kingdom of God" and "kingdom of heaven" both refer to God's rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

* The Jews often used the term "heaven" to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly.
* In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God's kingdom as "the kingdom of heaven," probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
* The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
* The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God's kingdom forever.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "kingdom of God" can be translated as "God's rule (as king)" or "when God reigns as king" or "God's rule over everything."
* The term "kingdom of heaven" could also be translated as "God's rule from heaven as king" or "God in heaven reigning" or "heaven's reign" or "heaven ruling over everything." If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase "kingdom of God" could be translated instead.
* Some translators may prefer to capitalize "Heaven" to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as "kingdom of heaven (that is, 'kingdom of God')."
* A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of "heaven" in this expression.

(See also: [God](../kt/god.md), [heaven](../kt/heaven.md), [king](../other/king.md), [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md), [King of the Jews](../kt/kingofthejews.md), [reign](../other/reign.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Thessalonians 01:05
* Acts 08:12-13
* Acts 28:23
* Colossians 04:11
* John 03:03
* Luke 07:28
* Luke 10:09
* Luke 12:31-32
* Matthew 03:02
* Matthew 04:17
* Matthew 05:10
* Romans 14:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G932, G2316, G3772

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kingdom of Christ and God, kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

### kiss

#### Definition:

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

* Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
* A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
* The expression to "kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
* Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 05:25-28
* Genesis 27:26-27
* Genesis 29:11
* Genesis 31:28
* Genesis 45:15
* Genesis 48:10
* Luke 22:48
* Mark 14:45
* Matthew 26:48

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5390, H5401, G2705, G5368, G5370

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kiss, kissed, kisses, kissing

### know

#### Related Ideas:

knowledge, make known, unknowingly, unknown

#### Definition:

To "know" means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression "make known" is an expression that means to tell information.

* The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
* To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
* To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
* To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
* To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
* Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
* The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."
* If a person does something "unknowingly," he does it without knowing that he is doing it.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
* Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
* The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
* To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
* The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
* The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.
* To "train for" an activity is to learn now to do it well. To train for war is to learn by practice how to be a good fighter.

(See also: [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [reveal](../kt/reveal.md), [understand](../other/understand.md), [wise](../kt/wise.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
* 1 Samuel 17:46
* 2 Corinthians 02:15
* 2 Peter 01:3-4
* Deuteronomy 04:39-40
* Genesis 19:05
* Luke 01:77

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H502, H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H2713, H2372, H3045, H3046, H3925, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1834, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G5319, G2589, G2657, G4267, G4894, G5318

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

knew, know, know ... beforehand, knowing, knowledge, known, knows, made ... known, made known, make ... known, makes known, unknowingly, unknown

### lamb

#### Related Ideas:

Lamb of God

#### Definition:

The term "lamb" refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the "Lamb of God" because he was sacrificed to pay for people's sins.

* These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
* God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
* Jesus is called the "Lamb of God" who was sacrificed to pay for people's sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms "lamb" and "Lamb of God."
* "Lamb of God" could be translated as "God's (sacrificial) Lamb," or "Lamb sacrificed to God" or "(sacrificial) Lamb from God."
* If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as "a young sheep" with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
* Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See also: [sheep](../other/sheep.md), [shepherd](../other/shepherd.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 12:03
* Ezra 08:35-36
* Isaiah 66:3
* Jeremiah 11:19
* John 01:29
* John 01:36
* Leviticus 14:21-23
* Leviticus 17:1-4
* Luke 10:03
* Revelation 15:3-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H6251, H7716, G721, G2316

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Lamb, Lamb of God, lamb, lambs

### lamp

#### Related Ideas:

torch

#### Definition:

The term "lamp" generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

* An ordinary oil lamp usually consisted of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
* For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
* An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
* In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.
* A torch is a light that is meant to be carried around outside. It might be a long piece of wood that burns at the top. It might also be a pole with an oil lamp or a cloth soaked in oil at the top.

(See also: [lampstand](../other/lampstand.md), [life](../kt/life.md), [light](../other/light.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 11:36
* Exodus 25:3-7
* Luke 08:16-18
* Matthew 05:15
* Matthew 06:22
* Matthew 25:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3940, H3974, H4501, H5215, H5216, G2985, G3088

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

lamp, lamps, torch, torches

### lampstand

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "lampstand" generally refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

* A simple lampstand usually held one lamp and was made of clay, wood, or metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
* In the Jerusalem temple there was a special gold lampstand which had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

#### Translation Suggestions

* This term could be also translated as "lamp pedestal" or "structure for holding a lamp" or "lamp holder."
* For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as "seven-lamp lampstand" or "gold pedestal with seven lamps."
* It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: [bronze](../other/bronze.md), [gold](../other/gold.md), [lamp](../other/lamp.md), [light](../other/light.md), [silver](../other/silver.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 05:5-6
* Exodus 37:17
* Mark 04:21-23
* Matthew 05:15-16
* Revelation 01:12-13
* Revelation 01:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4501, G3087

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

lampstand, lampstands

### law

#### Related Ideas:

lawbreaker, lawgiver, lawyer, principle

#### Definition:

A "law" is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A "principle" is a guideline for decision-making and behavior.

* Often the term "law" refers to the "law of Moses." This is the commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
* God is the lawgiver, the one who made the laws and commanded people to obey them.
* A "lawyer" is a person who studies the law and understands it well.
* Both "law" and "principle" can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person's behavior.
* A person who "is principled" is a person who does what is good.

(See also: [law of Moses](../kt/lawofmoses.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 04:02
* Esther 03:8-9
* Exodus 12:12-14
* Genesis 26:05
* John 18:31
* Romans 07:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H5715, H7560, H7771, H8451, G1785, G3544, G3548, G3551, G3848, G4747

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

law, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawgiver, laws, lawyer, principle, principled, principles

### law

#### Related Ideas:

lawbreaker, lawgiver, lawyer, principle

#### Definition:

A "law" is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A "principle" is a guideline for decision-making and behavior.

* Often the term "law" refers to the "law of Moses." This is the commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
* God is the lawgiver, the one who made the laws and commanded people to obey them.
* A "lawyer" is a person who studies the law and understands it well.
* Both "law" and "principle" can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person's behavior.
* A person who "is principled" is a person who does what is good.

(See also: [law of Moses](../kt/lawofmoses.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 04:02
* Esther 03:8-9
* Exodus 12:12-14
* Genesis 26:05
* John 18:31
* Romans 07:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H5715, H7560, H7771, H8451, G1785, G3544, G3548, G3551, G3848, G4747

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

law, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawgiver, laws, lawyer, principle, principled, principles

### lawful

#### Related Ideas:

lawfully, lawless, lawlessness, permitted, unlawful

#### Definition:

The term "lawful" refers to something that is permitted to be done according to a law or other requirement. The opposite of this is "unlawful," which simply means "not lawful."

* In the Bible, something was "lawful" if it was permitted by God's moral law, or by the Law of Moses and other Jewish laws. Something that was "unlawful" was "not permitted" by those laws.
* To do something "lawfully" means to do it "properly" or "in the right way."
* Many of the things that the Jewish laws considered lawful or not lawful were not in agreement with God's laws about loving others.
* Depending on the context, ways to translate "lawful" could include "permitted" or "according to God's law" or "following our laws" or "proper" or "fitting."
* The phrase "Is it lawful?" could also be translated as "Do our laws allow?" or "Is that something our laws permit?"

The terms "unlawful" and "not lawful" are used to describe actions that break a law.

* In the New Testament, the term "unlawful" is not only used to refer to breaking God's laws, but also often refers to breaking Jewish man-made laws.
* Over the years, the Jews added to the laws that God gave to them. The Jewish leaders would call something "unlawful" if it did not conform to their man-made laws.
* When Jesus and his disciples were picking grain on a Sabbath day, the Pharisees accused them of doing something "unlawful" because it was breaking the Jewish laws about not working on that day.
* When Peter stated that eating unclean foods was "unlawful" for him, he meant that if he ate those foods he would be breaking the laws God had given the Israelites about not eating certain foods.

The term "lawless" describes a person who does not obey laws or rules. When a country or group of people are in a state of "lawlessness," there is widespread disobedience, rebellion, or immorality.

* A lawless person is rebellious and does not obey God's laws.
* The apostle Paul wrote that in the last days there will be a "man of lawlessness," or a "lawless one," who will be influenced by Satan to do evil things.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term "unlawful" should be translated using a word or expression that means "not lawful" or "lawbreaking."
* Other ways to translate "unlawful" could be "not permitted" or "not according to God's law" or "not conforming to our laws."
* The expression "against the law" has the same meaning as "unlawful."
* The term "lawless" could also be translated as "rebellious" or "disobedient" or "law-defying".
* The term "lawlessness" could be translated as "not obeying any laws" or "rebellion (against God's laws)."
* The phrase "man of lawlessness" could be translated as "man who does not obey any laws" or "man who rebels against God's laws."
* It is important to keep the concept of "law" in this term, if possible.
* Note that the term "unlawful" has a different meaning from this term.

(See also: [law](../other/law.md), [law of Moses](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [Sabbath](../kt/sabbath.md))

#### Bible References:

* Matthew 07:21-23
* Matthew 12:02
* Matthew 12:04
* Matthew 12:10
* Mark 03:04
* Luke 06:02
* Acts 02:23
* Acts 10:28
* Acts 22:25
* 2 Thessalonians 02:03
* Titus 02:14
* 1 John 03:4-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6530, G111, G113, G266, G458, G459, G1832, G3545

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

lawful, lawfully, lawless, lawlessness, not lawful, permitted, unlawful

### leper

#### Related Ideas:

leprosy, leprous

#### Definition:

The term "leprosy" is used in the Bible to refer to several different skin diseases. A "leper" is a person who has leprosy. The term "leprous" describes a person or body part that is infected with leprosy.

* Certain kinds of leprosy cause the skin to become discolored with white patches, as when Miriam and Naaman had leprosy.
* In modern times, leprosy often causes hands, feet, and other body parts to become damaged and deformed.
* According to the instructions that God gave to the Israelites, when a person had leprosy, he was considered "unclean" and had to stay away from other people so that they would not become infected with the disease.
* A leper would often call out "unclean" so that others would be warned not to come near him.
* Jesus healed many lepers, and also people who had other kinds of diseases.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "leprosy" in the Bible can be translated as "skin disease" or "dreaded skin disease."
* Ways to translate "leprous" could include "full of leprosy" or "infected with skin disease" or "covered with skin sores."

(See also: [Miriam](../names/miriam.md), [Naaman](../names/naaman.md), [clean](../kt/clean.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 05:13
* Luke 17:12
* Mark 01:40
* Mark 14:03
* Matthew 08:03
* Matthew 10:8-10
* Matthew 11:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6879, H6883, G3014, G3015

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

leper, lepers, leprosy, leprous

### life

#### Related Ideas:

alive, come to life, conduct, exist, fresh, life-giving, lifetime, live, revive, survive, survivor

#### Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by "physical life" and "spiritual life."

#### 1. Physical life

* Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam's body, and he became a living being.
* A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
* Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
* It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
* The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
* In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."
* To "revive" is for someone who is dead or almost dead to live again, or to take something or someone who is dead or almost dead and make him live again.
* A person who "survives" has almost died for some reason but is still alive.
* The same Hebrew words can be translated "fresh" water or "living" water.
* Things that are "lifeless" either have never been alive or were once alive but are now dead.
* The way a person "conducts" himself or his life is the way he lives his life, most importantly the morally good or bad things he does.

#### 2. Spiritual life

* A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
* This life is also called "eternal life" to indicate that it does not end.
* The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
* Depending on the context, the term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
* The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
* The expression "spared their lives' could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
* The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
* Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally." The word "life-giving" can be translated as "something that causes to live" or "something that gives life."

(See also: [death](../other/death.md), [everlasting](../kt/eternity.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 01:03
* Acts 10:42
* Genesis 02:07
* Genesis 07:22
* Hebrews 10:20
* Jeremiah 44:02
* John 01:04
* Judges 02:18
* Luke 12:23
* Matthew 07:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2416, H2417, H2418, H2421, H2425, H2465, H2673, H3351, H3824, H3885, H4241, H5315, H5397, H5564, H6106, H7611, H8141, H8300, G326, G386, G390, G895, G979, G980, G981, G982, G1127, G1236, G1514, G2198, G2222, G2225, G2227, G2450, G3118, G4176, G4684, G4748, G4763, G4800, G4806, G5171, G5225, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

alive, come to life, conduct, conducted, existed, fresh, keep ... alive, life, life-giving, lifeless, lifetime, live, lived, lives, living, revive, revived, survive, survived, survivor, survivors

### light

#### Related Ideas:

bright, brightness, enlighten, shine

#### Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term "light" in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth.

* Jesus said, "I am the light of the world" to express that he brings God's true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
* Christians are commanded to "walk in the light," which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
* The apostle John stated that "God is light" and in him there is no darkness at all.
* Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
* Jesus said that he was "the light of the world" and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
* "Walking in the light" represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms "light" and "darkness" even when they are used figuratively.
* It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, "walk as children of light" could be translated as, "live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight."
* Make sure that the translation of "light" does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](../other/darkness.md), [holy](../kt/holy.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md), [true](../kt/true.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:07
* 1 John 02:08
* 2 Corinthians 04:06
* Acts 26:18
* Isaiah 02:05
* John 01:05
* Matthew 05:16
* Matthew 06:23
* Nehemiah 09:12-13
* Revelation 18:23-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, G681, G796, G1391, G1645, G2985, G2986, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bright, brightness, enlighten, enlightened, light, lighting, lights, shining

### like

#### Related Ideas:

according to, alike, as, as if, compare, in the same way, just as, liken, likeness, likewise, resemble, similar, similarly, unlike

#### Definition:

The terms "like" and "likeness" refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

* To "compare" two things is to look at how they are the same or how they are different.
* The word "like" is also often used in a figurative expressions called a "simile" in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, "his clothes shined like the sun" and "the voice boomed like thunder."
* To "be like" or "sound like" or "look like" something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
* People were created in God's "likeness," that is, in his "image." It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are "like" or "similar to" qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
* To have "the likeness of" something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.
* The word "likewise" means "in the same way," referring to something that the speaker has just said.
* The word "unlike" means "not like."

#### Translation Suggestions

* In some contexts, the expression "the likeness of" could be translated as "what looked like" or "what appeared to be."
* The expression "in the likeness of his death" could be translated as "sharing in the experience of his death" or "as if experiencing his death with him."
* The expression "in the likeness of sinful flesh" could be translated as "being like a sinful human being" or to "be a human being." Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
* "In his own likeness" could also be translated as to "be like him" or "having many of the same qualities that he has."
* The expression "the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things" could be translated as "idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things."

(See also: [beast](../other/beast.md), [flesh](../kt/flesh.md), [image of God](../kt/imageofgod.md), [image](../other/image.md), [perish](../kt/perish.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 01:05
* Mark 08:24
* Matthew 17:02
* Matthew 18:03
* Psalms 073:05
* Revelation 01:12-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1819, H1823, H3644, H4915, H7737, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4793, G4833, G5108, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

according to, alike, as, as if, be ... like, become ... like, compare, in the same way, is ... like, just as, like, liken, likeness, likenesses, likewise, resemble, resembled, similar to, similarly, the same, the same way, unlike

### like

#### Related Ideas:

according to, alike, as, as if, compare, in the same way, just as, liken, likeness, likewise, resemble, similar, similarly, unlike

#### Definition:

The terms "like" and "likeness" refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

* To "compare" two things is to look at how they are the same or how they are different.
* The word "like" is also often used in a figurative expressions called a "simile" in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, "his clothes shined like the sun" and "the voice boomed like thunder."
* To "be like" or "sound like" or "look like" something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
* People were created in God's "likeness," that is, in his "image." It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are "like" or "similar to" qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
* To have "the likeness of" something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.
* The word "likewise" means "in the same way," referring to something that the speaker has just said.
* The word "unlike" means "not like."

#### Translation Suggestions

* In some contexts, the expression "the likeness of" could be translated as "what looked like" or "what appeared to be."
* The expression "in the likeness of his death" could be translated as "sharing in the experience of his death" or "as if experiencing his death with him."
* The expression "in the likeness of sinful flesh" could be translated as "being like a sinful human being" or to "be a human being." Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
* "In his own likeness" could also be translated as to "be like him" or "having many of the same qualities that he has."
* The expression "the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things" could be translated as "idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things."

(See also: [beast](../other/beast.md), [flesh](../kt/flesh.md), [image of God](../kt/imageofgod.md), [image](../other/image.md), [perish](../kt/perish.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 01:05
* Mark 08:24
* Matthew 17:02
* Matthew 18:03
* Psalms 073:05
* Revelation 01:12-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1819, H1823, H3644, H4915, H7737, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4793, G4833, G5108, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

according to, alike, as, as if, be ... like, become ... like, compare, in the same way, is ... like, just as, like, liken, likeness, likenesses, likewise, resemble, resembled, similar to, similarly, the same, the same way, unlike

### lion

#### Related Ideas:

lioness

#### Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

* Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
* Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
* Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
* When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
* Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.
* A "lioness" is a female lion.

(See also: [David](../names/david.md), [leopard](../other/leopard.md), [Samson](../names/samson.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
* 1 Kings 07:29
* Proverbs 19:12
* Psalms 017:12
* Revelation 05:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H738, H739, H744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G3023

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

lion, lion's, lioness, lionesses, lions, lions'

### locust

#### Related Ideas:

grasshopper, locust swarms

#### Definitions:

The term "locust" refers to a type of large, flying grasshopper that sometimes flies with many others of its kind in a very destructive swarm that eats all vegetation.

* Locusts and other grasshoppers are large, straight-winged insects with long, jointed back legs that give them the ability to jump a long distance way.
* In the Old Testament, swarming locusts were referred to figuratively as a symbol or picture of the overwhelming devastation that would come as a result of Israel's disobedience.
* God sent locusts as one of the ten plagues against the Egyptians.
* The New Testament says that locusts were a main source of food for John the Baptist while he was living in the desert.

(See also: [captive](../other/captive.md), [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [plague](../other/plague.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 06:28
* Deuteronomy 28:38-39
* Exodus 10:3-4
* Mark 01:06
* Proverbs 30:27-28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H697, H1357, H1462, H1501, H2284, H3218, H5556, H6767, G200

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

grasshoppers, locust, locust swarms, locusts

### lots

#### Related Ideas:

allotted, allotted portion, cast lots, chosen by lot, divide up by lot

#### Definition:

A "lot" is a marked object that is chosen from among other similar objects as a way of deciding something. "Casting lots" referred to tossing marked objects onto the ground or other surface.

* Often the lots were small marked stones or pieces of broken pottery.
* Some cultures "draw" or "pull out" lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
* The practice of casting lots was used by the Israelites to find out what God wanted them to do.
* As in the time of Zechariah and Elizabeth, it was also used to choose which priest would perform a specific duty in the temple at a specific time.
* The soldiers who crucified Jesus cast lots to decide who would get to keep Jesus' robe.
* The phrase "casting lots" can be translated as "tossing lots" or "drawing lots" or "rolling lots." Make sure the translation of "cast" does not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
* Depending on the context, the term "lot" could also be translated as "marked stone" or "pottery piece" or "stick" or "piece of straw."
* If a decision is made "by lot" this could be translated as, "by drawing (or throwing) lots."
* To allot things to people can mean to divide those things and to toss lots to decide who gets each portion.
* To allot something to someone can mean to assign it to him or give it to him. (See also: [Elizabeth](../names/elizabeth.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [Zechariah (OT)](../names/zechariahot.md), [Zechariah (NT)](../names/zechariahnt.md))

#### Bible References:

* Jonah 01:07
* Luke 01:8-10
* Luke 23:34
* Mark 15:22
* Matthew 27:35-37
* Psalms 022:18-19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1486, G2819, G2975

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

allotted, allotted portion, cast lots, chosen by lot, divide up ... by lot, lot, lots

### love

#### Related Ideas:

brotherly love

#### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

* Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
* When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
* In the ULB, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

1. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.

* This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
* The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.

The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

In the figurative expression "Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated," the term "loved" refers to God's choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as "chosen." Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn't given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term "hated" is used figuratively here to mean "rejected" or "not chosen."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
* Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
* Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
* In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
* Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
* Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [death](../other/death.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [save](../kt/save.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 13:07
* 1 John 03:02
* 1 Thessalonians 04:10
* Galatians 05:23
* Genesis 29:18
* Isaiah 56:06
* Jeremiah 02:02
* John 03:16
* Matthew 10:37
* Nehemiah 09:32-34
* Philippians 01:09
* Song of Solomon 01:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H1730, H2245, H2532, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5383, G5388

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

brotherly love, love, loved, loves, loving

### lute

#### Definition:

A lute is a small, stringed, musical instrument that the Israelites used when they worshiped God.

* A lute is very similar to a modern-day acoustic guitar, having a wooden sound box and an extended neck on which strings are strung.
* In playing a lute, certain strings are held down with the fingers of one hand while these and other strings are plucked or strummed with the other hand.
* The number of strings varied, but the Old Testament specifically mentions instruments that had ten strings.

(See also: [harp](../other/harp.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 10:11-12
* 1 Samuel 10:5-6
* 2 Chronicles 05:11-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5035, H5443

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

lute, lutes

### melt

#### Related Ideas:

molten

#### Definitions:

The term "melt" refers to something becoming liquid when it is heated. Something that is melted is described as being "molten."

* Different kinds of metals are heated until they melt and can be poured into molds in order to make things such as weapons or idols. The expression "molten metal" refers to a metal that is melted.
* As a candle burns, its wax melts and drips. In ancient times, letters were often sealed by pouring a small amount of melted wax on the edges.

The term "melt" can also be used in figurative ways.

* A figurative use of "melt" means to become soft and weak, like melted wax.
* The expression "their hearts will melt" means that they will become very weak because of fear.
* Another figurative expression "they will melt away" means that they will be forced to go away or they will be shown to be weak and will go away in defeat.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The literal meaning of "melt" could be translated as "become liquid" or "liquefy" or "cause to become liquid."
* Ways to translate the figurative meanings of "melt" could include "become soft" or "become weak" or "be defeated."

(See also: [heart](../kt/heart.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [image](../other/image.md), [seal](../other/seal.md))

#### Bible References:

* Psalms 112:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2046, H3988, H4127, H4541, H4549, H5140, H5413, H8557, G3089, G5080

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

melt, melted, melting, melts, molten

### member

#### Definition:

The term "member" refers to one part of a complex body or group.

* The New Testament describes Christians as "members" of the body of Christ. Believers in Christ belong to a group that is made up of many members.
* Jesus Christ is the "head" of the body and individual believers function as the members of the body. The Holy Spirit gives each member of the body a special role to help the entire body to function well.
* Individuals who participate in groups such as the Jewish Council and the Pharisees are also called "members" of these groups.

(See also: [body](../kt/body.md), [Pharisee](../kt/pharisee.md), [council](../other/council.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 06:15
* 1 Corinthians 12:14-17
* Numbers 16:02
* Romans 12:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1004, H1121, H3338, H5315, G1010, G3196, G3609

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

member, members

### mercy

#### Related Ideas:

kindness, merciful, spare

#### Definition:

The terms "mercy" and "merciful" refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

* The term "mercy" can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
* A powerful person such as a king is described as "merciful" when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
* To "be merciful" or "spare" someone who has done wrong to another means to forgive that person.
* An evil person who "spares" those who have done nothing wrong does not do the same wrong to them that he has done to others.
* We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
* God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "mercy" could be translated as "kindness" or "compassion" or "pity."
* The term "merciful" could be translated as "showing pity" or "being kind to" or "forgiving."
* To "show mercy to" or "have mercy on" could be translated as "treat kindly" or "be compassionate toward."

(See also: [compassion](../kt/compassion.md), [forgive](../kt/forgive.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 01:3-5
* 1 Timothy 01:13
* Daniel 09:17
* Exodus 34:06
* Genesis 19:16
* Hebrews 10:28-29
* James 02:13
* Luke 06:35-36
* Matthew 09:27
* Philippians 02:25-27
* Psalms 041:4-6
* Romans 12:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2550, H2551, H2603, H2604, H2617, H3722, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, H8467, G1653, G1655, G1656, G2433, G2436, G3628, G3629, G4698, G5363, G5544

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kindness, mercies, merciful, mercy, spare, spared, spares, tender mercy

### messenger

#### Related Ideas:

courier, herald

#### Definitions:

The term "messenger" refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

* In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
* An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate "angel" as "messenger."
* John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah's coming and to prepare people to receive him.
* Jesus' apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.
* A "herald" or a "courier" is a messenger who carries messages from rulers to their subjects.

(See also: [angel](../kt/angel.md), [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 19:1-3
* 1 Samuel 06:21
* 2 Kings 01:1-2
* Luke 07:27
* Matthew 11:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H6735, H6737, G32, G652

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

couriers, herald, messenger, messengers

### mighty

#### Related Ideas:

Mighty One, mightily, mighty host, mighty men, mighty work

#### Definition:

The terms "mighty" and "might" refer to having great strength or power.

* Often the word "might" is another word for "strength." When talking about God, it can mean "power."
* The phrase "mighty men" often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David's band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called "mighty men."
* The phrase "the Might One" refers to God.
* The phrase "a mighty one" can refer to God or to a man.
* The phrase "mighty works" usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
* This term is related to the term "almighty," which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "mighty" could be translated as "powerful" or "amazing" or "very strong."
* The phrase "his might" could be translated as "his strength" or "his power."
* In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was "mighty in word and deed." This could be translated as "Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things" or "Moses spoke God's word powerfully and did many amazing things."
* Depending on the context, "mighty works" could be translated as "amazing things that God does" or "miracles" or "God doing things with power."
* The term "might" could also be translated as "power" or "great strength."
* Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in "It might rain."

(See also: [Almighty](../kt/almighty.md), [miracle](../kt/miracle.md), [power](../kt/power.md), [strength](../other/strength.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:22
* Genesis 06:4
* Mark 09:38-39
* Matthew 11:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H46, H47, H117, H202, H352, H386, H410, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G1411, G1415, G1498, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3167, G3173

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Mighty One, might, mightier, mightily, mighty, mighty host, mighty men, mighty one, mighty ones, mighty work, mighty works

### mind

#### Related Ideas:

expect, intention, likeminded, mindful, sober, think

#### Definition:

The term "mind" refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

* The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
* To "have the mind of Christ" means to think and act as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
* To "change his mind" means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.
* To "expect" something is to think that it will happen.
* To "think" can mean to use one's mind to form ideas.
* To "think" can also mean to have a belief or opinion about something.
* To "intend" or "have an intention" to do something is to decide or to plan to do that thing. That thing may be good or evil, and the person may or may not want to do it, but he plans to do it.
* A person who is "sober" is able to think clearly, especially in contrast to a person who has harmed his mind by drinking to much wine.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The term "mind" could also be translated as "thoughts" or "reasoning" or "thinking" or "understanding."
* The expression "keep in mind" could be translated as "remember" or "pay attention to this" or "be sure to know this."
* The expression "heart, soul, and mind" could also be translated as "what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about."
* The expression "call to mind" could be translated as "remember" or "think about."
* The expression "double-minded" could also be translated as "doubting" or "unable to decide" or "with conflicting thoughts."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [heart](../kt/heart.md), [soul](../kt/soul.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 10:27
* Mark 06:51-52
* Matthew 21:29
* Matthew 22:37
* James 04:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H226, H1079, G1380, H1843, H3629, H3820, H3824, H3825, H4093, H4150, H5162, H6419, H6725, H6734, H7217, H7725, G364, G1271, G1374, G1839, G2233, G2657, G3328, G3525, G3539, G3540, G3563, G4102, G4993, G5280, G5426, G5427, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

expect, expected, intention, likeminded, mind, minded, mindful, minds, sober, think, think carefully about, thinks, thought, thoughts

### miracle

#### Related Ideas:

miraculous

#### Definition:

A "miracle" is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

* Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
* Miracles are sometimes called "wonders" because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
* The term "wonder" can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God's power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
* Miracles can also be called "signs" because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
* Some miracles were God's acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
* Other wonders were God's acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah's time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
* Many of God's miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
* God's power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
* God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God's power.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Possible translations of "miracles" or "wonders" could include "impossible things that God does" or "powerful works of God" or "amazing acts of God."
* The frequent expression "signs and wonders" could be translated as "proofs and miracles" or "miraculous works that prove God's power" or "amazing miracles that show how great God is."
* Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](../kt/power.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [sign](../kt/sign.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
* Acts 04:17
* Acts 04:22
* Daniel 04:1-3
* Deuteronomy 13:01
* Exodus 03:19-22
* John 02:11
* Matthew 13:58

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4159, H6381, H6382, G1411, G1605, G4592, G5059

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

miracle, miracles, miraculous

### mock

#### Related Ideas:

defy, laughingstock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, taunt

#### Definition:

The terms "mock," ridicule," "scoff at," and "taunt" all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

* Mocking often involves imitating people's words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
* The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
* A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
* The term "scoff at" can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
* A "mocker" is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.
* A person who "defies" another mockingly challenges that other person to do something the mocker believes the other person cannot do.

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 03:04
* Acts 02:12-13
* Galatians 06:6-8
* Genesis 39:13-15
* Luke 22:63-65
* Mark 10:34
* Matthew 09:23-24
* Matthew 20:19
* Matthew 27:29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4426, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8437, H8591, H8595, G1592, G1701, G1702, G1703, G2301, G2606, G3456, G5512

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

defied, defy, laugh in mockery, laughingstock, mock, mocked, mocker, mockers, mockery, mocking, mocks, ridicule, ridiculed, scoff at, scoffed at, scoffing, taunted, taunting song, taunts

### mourn

#### Related Ideas:

funeral song, grief, grieve, howl, mourner, mournful, sorrow, sorrowful, tears, wail, weep, with tears

#### Definitions:

The terms "mourn" and "mourning" refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

* In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
* The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
* Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
* The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
* The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about "mourning" because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.
* A "howl" is the crying sound an animal makes. People who "howl" are hurt, sad, or angry.

(See also: [sackcloth](../other/sackcloth.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 15:34-35
* 2 Samuel 01:11
* Genesis 23:02
* Luke 07:31-32
* Matthew 11:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H56, H57, H60, H205, H421, H578, H584, H585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H2470, H3510, H3013, H3213, H3708, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6087, H6937, H6941, H8386, G23, G2354, G2355, G2799, G2805, G2875, G3076, G3077, G3602, G3996, G3997

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bitter, cause ... grief, funeral song, grief, grieve, grieved, grieving, howl, howls, mourn, mourned, mourner, mourners, mourners', mournful, mournfully, mourning, mourns, sorrow, sorrowful, sorrows, tears, wail, wailing, wailings, wails, weep, weeping, weeps bitterly, wept, with tears

### myrrh

#### Definition:

Myrrh is an oil or spice that is made from the resin of a myrrh tree that grows in Africa and Asia. It is related to frankincense.

* Myrrh was also used to make incense, perfume, and medicine, and to prepare dead bodies for burial.
* Myrrh was one of the gifts that the learned men gave to Jesus when he was born.
* Jesus was offered wine mixed with myrrh in order to ease the pain when he was crucified.

(See also: [frankincense](../other/frankincense.md), [learned men](../other/learnedmen.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 30:22-25
* Genesis 37:25-26
* John 11:1-2
* Mark 15:23
* Matthew 02:11-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3910, H4753, G3464, G4666, G4669

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

myrrh

### mystery

#### Related Ideas:

hidden meaning, hidden truth, secrets

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "mystery" refers to something unknown or difficult to understand that God is now explaining.

* The New Testament states that the gospel of Christ was a mystery that was not known in past ages.
* One of the specific points described as a mystery is that Jews and Gentiles would be equal in Christ.
* This term could also be translated as "secret" or "hidden things" or "something unknown."

(See also: [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [Gentile](../kt/gentile.md), [good news](../kt/goodnews.md), [Jew](../kt/jew.md), [true](../kt/true.md))

#### Bible References:

* Colossians 04:2-4
* Ephesians 06:19-20
* Luke 08:9-10
* Mark 04:10-12
* Matthew 13:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1219, H7328, G3466

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hidden meaning, hidden truth, hidden truths, mysteries, mystery, secrets

### name

#### Related Ideas:

fame, nameless, notorious, reputation

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the word "name" was used in several figurative ways.

* In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
* The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
* Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
* The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved."
* People who are "nameless" are unimportant, so few people know about them or care about them.
* A person who is "notorious" is one who has a reputation for evil or foolishness.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
* Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
* The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
* The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
* The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
* The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: [call](../kt/call.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:12
* 2 Timothy 02:19
* Acts 04:07
* Acts 04:12
* Acts 09:27
* Genesis 12:02
* Genesis 35:10
* Matthew 18:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5344, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2028, G2564, G3140, G3141, G3686, G3687, G5122

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fame, name, name's, named, nameless, names, notorious, reputation

### name

#### Related Ideas:

fame, nameless, notorious, reputation

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the word "name" was used in several figurative ways.

* In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
* The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
* Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
* The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved."
* People who are "nameless" are unimportant, so few people know about them or care about them.
* A person who is "notorious" is one who has a reputation for evil or foolishness.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
* Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
* The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
* The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
* The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
* The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: [call](../kt/call.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:12
* 2 Timothy 02:19
* Acts 04:07
* Acts 04:12
* Acts 09:27
* Genesis 12:02
* Genesis 35:10
* Matthew 18:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5344, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2028, G2564, G3140, G3141, G3686, G3687, G5122

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fame, name, name's, named, nameless, names, notorious, reputation

### nation

#### Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

* A "nation" usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
* In the Bible, a "nation" could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
* Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
* Sometimes the word "nation" was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were "nations" that would fight against each other. This could be translated as "the founders of two nations" or the "ancestors of two people groups."
* The word translated as "nation" was also sometimes used to refer to "Gentiles" or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the word "nation" could also be translated as "people group" or "people" or "country."
* If a language has a term for "nation" that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
* The plural term "nations" can often be translated as "people groups."
* In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as "Gentiles" or "nonJews."

(See also: [Assyria](../names/assyria.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Gentile](../kt/gentile.md), [Greek](../names/greek.md), [people group](../other/peoplegroup.md), [Philistines](../names/philistines.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
* 2 Chronicles 15:06
* 2 Kings 17:11-12
* Acts 02:05
* Acts 13:19
* Acts 17:26
* Acts 26:04
* Daniel 03:04
* Genesis 10:2-5
* Genesis 27:29
* Genesis 35:11
* Genesis 49:10
* Luke 07:05
* Mark 13:7-8
* Matthew 21:43
* Romans 04:16-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H523, H524, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

nation, nations

### neighbor

#### Related Ideas:

neighborhood, neighboring

#### Definition:

The term "neighbor" usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

* A "neighbor" is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
* In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term "neighbor" figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
* If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means "person who lives nearby."
* A "neighborhood" is a community of people in a town or city who live near each other.
* "Neighboring" countries and regions are countries and regions that are nearby.

(See also: [adversary](../other/adversary.md), [parable](../kt/parable.md), [people group](../other/peoplegroup.md), [Samaria](../names/samaria.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:26-28
* Ephesians 04:25-27
* Galatians 05:14
* James 02:08
* John 09:8-9
* Luke 01:58
* Matthew 05:43
* Matthew 19:19
* Matthew 22:39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G1069, G2087, G4040, G4139

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring, neighbors

### oak

#### Related Ideas:

terebinth

#### Definition:

An oak, or oak tree, is a tall shade tree with a large trunk and wide spreading branches.

* Oak trees have strong, hard wood that was used to build ships and to make farming plows, oxen yokes and walking sticks.
* The seed of an oak tree is called an acorn.
* The trunks of certain oak trees could bemeasured up to 6 meters around.
* Oak trees were symbolic of long life and had other spiritual meanings. In the Bible, they were often associated with holy places.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Many translations will find it important to use the term "oak tree" rather than just the word "oak."
* If oak trees are not known in the receptor area, "an oak" could be translated as "an oak, which is a large shade tree like…," then give the name of a local tree that has similar characteristics.
* See:

(See also: [holy](../kt/holy.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 10:3-4
* Genesis 13:18
* Genesis 14:13-14
* Genesis 35:4-5
* Judges 06:11-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H352, H424, H427, H436, H437, H438

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

oak, oaks, terebinths

### oak

#### Related Ideas:

terebinth

#### Definition:

An oak, or oak tree, is a tall shade tree with a large trunk and wide spreading branches.

* Oak trees have strong, hard wood that was used to build ships and to make farming plows, oxen yokes and walking sticks.
* The seed of an oak tree is called an acorn.
* The trunks of certain oak trees could bemeasured up to 6 meters around.
* Oak trees were symbolic of long life and had other spiritual meanings. In the Bible, they were often associated with holy places.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Many translations will find it important to use the term "oak tree" rather than just the word "oak."
* If oak trees are not known in the receptor area, "an oak" could be translated as "an oak, which is a large shade tree like…," then give the name of a local tree that has similar characteristics.
* See:

(See also: [holy](../kt/holy.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 10:3-4
* Genesis 13:18
* Genesis 14:13-14
* Genesis 35:4-5
* Judges 06:11-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H352, H424, H427, H436, H437, H438

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

oak, oaks, terebinths

### oath

#### Related Ideas:

swear, swear by

#### Definition:

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. A person who swears an oath commits himself to being faithful and truthful, and by doing so he is saying that God has the right to punish him if he breaks the oath.

* In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
* In the Bible, the term "swear" means to speak an oath.
* The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
* Sometimes these terms are used together, as in "swear an oath."
* Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
* Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
* God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
* A modern-day meaning of the word "swear" is "use foul language." This is not its meaning in the Bible.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
* To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
* Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
* To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
* Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: [Abimelech](../names/abimelech.md), [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [vow](../kt/vow.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 21:23
* Genesis 24:03
* Genesis 31:51-53
* Genesis 47:31
* Luke 01:73
* Mark 06:26
* Matthew 05:36
* Matthew 14:6-7
* Matthew 26:72

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G331, G332, G3660, G3726, G3727, G3728, G3784

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

oath, oath-taking, oaths, swear, swear by, swearing, swears, swears by, swore, swore an oath, sworn

### obey

#### Related Ideas:

follow, give ear, hear, hold securely, hold to, keep, listen, obedience, obedient

#### Definition:

The term "obey" means to do what is required or commanded. The term "obedient" describes someone who obeys. "Obedience" is the characteristic that an obedient person has.

* Usually the term "obey" is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
* For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
* Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
* When someone in authority commands people not to do something, the people obey by not doing that.
* To "observe" a law or command is to obey it.
* Other words used to refer to obeying someone or something are: follow, give ear, hear, hold securely, hold to, keep, listen.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "obey" could include a word or phrase that means "do what is commanded" or "follow orders" or "do what God says to do."
* The term "obedient" could be translated as "doing what was commanded" or "following orders" or "doing what God commands."

(See also: [citizen](../other/citizen.md), [command](../kt/command.md), [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md), [law](../other/law.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 05:32
* Acts 06:7
* Genesis 28:6-7
* James 01:25
* James 02:10
* Luke 06:47
* Matthew 07:26
* Matthew 19:20-22
* Matthew 28:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2388, H3349, H4928, H5341, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G2722, G2902, G3980, G3982, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5426, G5442

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

following, give ... ear, hear, heard, hold ... securely, hold to, keep, keeps, kept, listen, listened, listened to, obedience, obedient, obediently, obey, obeyed, obeying, obeys

### official

#### Related Ideas:

officer

#### Definition:

The terms "official" and "officer" refer to people who hold positions within a government or organization. Leaders within the government or organization give the official or officer certain authority and duties to perform as long as he remains in the position.

* A king often had many officials to serve him.
* When someone makes an "official visit," it means a person with authority is visiting a person or place as part of his job.
* An officer is a person who carries out the orders of an official or a judge and issues orders only to officers of lesser rank and to people subject to the government.

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 39:1
* Ester 01:03
* Jeremiah 01:18
* Matthew 09:18
* Acts 25:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5461, H5631, H6496, H7860, H8269, G758, G3175, G4173, G5257

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

officer, officers, official, officials

### oil

#### Related Ideas:

ointment

#### Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

* Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
* In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
* Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](../other/olive.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 01:21
* Exodus 29:02
* Leviticus 05:11
* Leviticus 08:1-3
* Mark 06:12-13
* Matthew 25:7-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G1637, G3464

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

oil, oils, ointment, ointments

### oil

#### Related Ideas:

ointment

#### Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

* Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
* In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
* Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](../other/olive.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 01:21
* Exodus 29:02
* Leviticus 05:11
* Leviticus 08:1-3
* Mark 06:12-13
* Matthew 25:7-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G1637, G3464

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

oil, oils, ointment, ointments

### parable

#### Related Ideas:

hard question, lesson, riddle

#### Definition:

The term "parable" usually refers to a short story or object lesson that is used to explain or teach a moral truth. It can also refer to a saying that is difficult to understand and about which the hearer will have to think carefully before he can understand what the speaker is teaching.

* Jesus used parables to teach his disciples. Although he also told parables to the crowds of people, he did not always explain the parable.
* Jesus used parables to reveal truth to his disciples and to hide the truth from people like the Pharisees who did not believe in him.
* The prophet Nathan told David a parable to show the king his terrible sin.
* The story of the Good Samaritan is an example of a parable that is a story. Jesus' comparison of old and new wineskins is an example of a parable that was an object lesson to help the disciples understand Jesus' teachings.
* A "riddle" is a type of "hard question." The one who asks a hard question does not know the correct answer, but he hopes the hearer can answer correctly. The one who asks a riddle does not want the hearer to be able to answer the question correctly.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The word "parable" can be translated as "illustration".

(See also: [Samaria](../names/samaria.md))

#### Bible References:

* Proverbs 01:06
* Luke 05:36
* Luke 06:39
* Luke 08:04
* Luke 08:9-10
* Mark 04:01
* Matthew 13:03
* Matthew 13:10
* Matthew 13:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1819, H2420, H4426, H4912, G3850, G3942

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hard questions, lesson, parable, parables, riddle, riddles

### partial

#### Related Ideas:

partiality

#### Definition:

The terms "be partial" and "show partiality" refer to making a choice to treat certain people as more important than other people.

* This is similar to showing favoritism, which means to treat some people better than others.
* Usually partiality or favoritism is shown to people because they are richer or more popular than other people.
* God instructs his people to not show partiality or favoritism to people who are rich or of high status.
* In his letter to the Romans, Paul teaches that God judges people fairly and with no partiality.
* The book of James teaches that it is wrong to treat rich people better than poor people.

(See also: [favor](../kt/favor.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 01:17
* Malachi 02:09
* Mark 12:13-15
* Matthew 22:16
* Romans 02:10-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5234, H5375, H6440, G991, G2983, G4299, G4381, G4382, G4383

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be partial, partial, partiality, show partiality

### peace

#### Related Ideas:

peaceable, peaceful, peacemaker, quiet

#### Definition:

The term "peace" refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is "peaceful" feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

* "Peace" can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have "peaceful relations."
* To "make peace" with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
* A "peacemaker" is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
* To be "at peace" with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
* A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having "peace with God."
* The greeting "grace and peace" was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
* The term "peace" can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.
* A person who is "peaceable" acts in a way that enables him to live in peace with other people. He acts "peaceably."
* To "quiet" someone is to get them to be at peace. To quiet a quarrel is to get the people to stop quarreling and be at peace with each other.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
* Acts 07:26
* Colossians 01:18-20
* Colossians 03:15
* Galatians 05:23
* Luke 07:50
* Luke 12:51
* Mark 04:39
* Matthew 05:09
* Matthew 10:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, H8535, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

peace, peaceable, peaceably, peaceful, peacefully, peacemakers, quiet, quiets

### pig

#### Related Ideas:

boar, pork, swine

#### Definition:

A pig is a type of four-legged, hoofed animal that is raised for meat. Its meat is called "pork." The general term for pigs and related animals is "swine."

* God told the Israelites not to eat pig meat and to consider it unclean. Jews today still view pigs as unclean and do not eat pork.
* Pigs are raised on farms to be sold to other people for their meat.
* There is a kind of swine that is not raised on farms but rather lives out in the wild; it is called a "wild boar." Wild boars have tusks and are considered to be very dangerous animals.
* Sometimes large pigs are referred to as "hogs."
* A "boar" is a wild pig. Wild pigs are usually fierce and dangerous.

(See also: [clean](../kt/clean.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 02:22
* Mark 05:13
* Matthew 07:6
* Matthew 08:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2386, G5519

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

boar, boars, pig, pigs, pork, swine, swine's

### pit

#### Related Ideas:

pitfall, quarry

#### Definition:

A "pit" is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground. A "pitfall" is a trap made of a pit that is hidden with a cover. A "quarry" is a pit from which people take valuable stones.

* People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
* A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
* Sometimes the phrase "the pit" refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to "the abyss."
* The term "pit" is also used figuratively in phrases such as, "pit of destruction" which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: [abyss](../other/abyss.md), [hell](../kt/hell.md), [prison](../other/prison.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 37:21-22
* Job 33:18
* Luke 06:39
* Proverbs 01:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H875, H953, H1356, H1475, H2352, H4087, H4113, H4379, H6354, H7585, H7745, H7816, H7825, H7845, H7882, G12, G999, G5421

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

pit, pitfall, pits, quarry

### pit

#### Related Ideas:

pitfall, quarry

#### Definition:

A "pit" is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground. A "pitfall" is a trap made of a pit that is hidden with a cover. A "quarry" is a pit from which people take valuable stones.

* People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
* A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
* Sometimes the phrase "the pit" refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to "the abyss."
* The term "pit" is also used figuratively in phrases such as, "pit of destruction" which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: [abyss](../other/abyss.md), [hell](../kt/hell.md), [prison](../other/prison.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 37:21-22
* Job 33:18
* Luke 06:39
* Proverbs 01:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H875, H953, H1356, H1475, H2352, H4087, H4113, H4379, H6354, H7585, H7745, H7816, H7825, H7845, H7882, G12, G999, G5421

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

pit, pitfall, pits, quarry

### possess

#### Related Ideas:

belongings, dispossess, possession, property

#### Definitions:

The terms "possess" and "possession" usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

* In the Old Testament, "possess" is often used in the context of "possessing" or "taking possession of" an area of land.
* When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to "possess" the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
* Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as "their possession." This could also be translated as "their rightful place to live."
* The people of Israel were also called Yahweh's "special possession." This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.
* The term "dispossess" meant "take someone's property."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "possess" could also be translated as "own" or "have" or "have charge over."
* "Possessions" are also called "belongings" and "property."
* The phrase "take possession of" could be translated as "take control of" or "occupy" or "live on," depending on the context.
* When Yahweh calls the Israelites "my special possession" this could also be translated as "my special people" or "people who belong to me" or "my people whom I love and rule."
* The sentence, "they will become their possession" when referring to land, means "they will occupy the land" or "the land will belong to them."
* The phrase "as your possession" could also be translated as "as something that belongs to you" or "as a place where your people will live."
* The phrase "dispossess them" can be translated as "take their land" or "make them leave their land."

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 06:70
* 1 Kings 09:17-19
* Acts 02:45
* Deuteronomy 04:5-6
* Genesis 31:36-37
* Matthew 13:44

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H270, H272, H2505, H2631, H3018, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H5157, H5159, H5459, G979, G1139, G2697, G2722, G2932, G2933, G2935, H3520, G4041, G4047, G4632, G5224, G5225

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

belongings, dispossess, possess, possessed, possesses, possessing, possession, possessions, property, took possession, valuable possessions

### power

#### Related Ideas:

ability, able, mastered, can, capable, could, impossible, incapable, powerful, won, unable

#### Definition:

The term "power" refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. "Powers" refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

* The "power of God" refers to God's ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
* God has complete power over everything that he has created.
* God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
* Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "power" could also be translated as "ability" or "strength" or "energy" or "ability to do miracles" or "control."
* Possible ways to translate the term "powers" could include "powerful beings" or "controlling spirits" or "those who control others."
* An expression like "save us from the power of our enemies" could be translated as "save us from being oppressed by our enemies" or "rescue us from being controlled by our enemies." In this case, "power" has the meaning of using one's strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [miracle](../kt/miracle.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 01:05
* Colossians 01:11-12
* Genesis 31:29
* Jeremiah 18:21
* Jude 01:25
* Judges 02:18
* Luke 01:17
* Luke 04:14
* Matthew 26:64
* Philippians 03:21
* Psalm 080:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H410, H1368, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2632, H3027, H3201, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5807, H6109, H6184, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8592, H8633, G1410, G1411, G1415, G1743, G1754, G1832, G1849, G1850, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2480, G2904, G3168

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ability, able, am ... able, are ... able, are ... possible, be ... unable, be able, be mastered, can, cannot, capable, could, could not, impossible, incapable, is ... able, may ... be able, miraculous powers, possible, power, powerful, powerfully, powers, was ... able, were ... able, will ... be able, won

### pray

#### Related Ideas:

prayer

#### Definition:

The terms "pray" and "prayer" refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

* People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
* Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
* Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
* People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
* Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
* Talking to God is sometimes called "communing" with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
* This term could be translated as "talking to God" or "communicating with God." The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [forgive](../kt/forgive.md), [praise](../other/praise.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 03:09
* Acts 08:24
* Acts 14:26
* Colossians 04:04
* John 17:09
* Luke 11:1
* Matthew 05:43-45
* Matthew 14:22-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H577, H1156, H2470, H3908, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7879, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heard ... prayer, pray, prayed, prayer, prayers, praying, prays, urgently pray

### preach

#### Related Ideas:

preacher

#### Definition:

To "preach" means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him.

* Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
* "Preaching" and "teaching" are similar, but are not exactly the same.
* "Preaching" mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. "Teaching" is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
* The term "preach" is usually used with the word "gospel."
* What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his "teachings."

(See also: [good news](../kt/goodnews.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [kingdom of God](../kt/kingdomofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:1-2
* Acts 08:4-5
* Acts 10:42-43
* Acts 14:21-22
* Acts 20:25
* Luke 04:42
* Matthew 03:1-3
* Matthew 04:17
* Matthew 12:41
* Matthew 24:14
* Acts 09:20-22
* Acts 13:38-39
* Jonah 03:1-3
* Luke 04:18-19
* Mark 01:14-15
* Matthew 10:26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G312, G518, G1344, G2097, G2511, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G3142, G3870, G4283

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

preach, preached, preacher, preaching

### priest

#### Related Ideas:

priesthood, priestly office

#### Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

* In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
* The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
* The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
* Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
* The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
* In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
* Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
* In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
* In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
* The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
* Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
* The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](../names/aaron.md), [chief priests](../other/chiefpriests.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [mediator](../other/mediator.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 06:41
* Genesis 14:17-18
* Genesis 47:22
* John 01:19-21
* Luke 10:31
* Mark 01:44
* Mark 02:25-26
* Matthew 08:4
* Matthew 12:04
* Micah 03:9-11
* Nehemiah 10:28-29
* Nehemiah 10:34-36
* Revelation 01:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

priest, priest's, priesthood, priestly, priestly office, priests, priests', served as a priest

### prison

#### Related Ideas:

custody, dungeon, imprison, imprisonment, prisoner

#### Definition:

The term "prison" refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A "prisoner" is someone who has been put in the prison.

* The term "prisoners" can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will.
* The term "imprisoned" means "kept in a prison" or "kept in captivity."
* Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.
* To "hold someone in custody" is to put him in a prison or other place from which he cannot escape. Sometimes people were held in custody while they waited to be judged in a trial.
* A "dungeon" is an underground prison that is dark and damp.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Another word for "prison" is "jail."
* The term "prison" could also be translated as "dungeon" in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
* The term "prisoners" can also be translated as "captives." Other ways to translate "imprisoned" could be "kept as a prisoner" or "kept in captivity" or "held captive" or "shut up."

(See also: [captive](../other/captive.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 25:04
* Ephesians 04:01
* Luke 12:58
* Luke 22:33-34
* Mark 06:17
* Matthew 05:26
* Matthew 14:03
* Matthew 25:34-36

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H612, H613, H615, H616, H631, H953, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H5470, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G1198, G1199, G1200, G1201, G1202, G1210, G2252, G3612, G4788, G4869, G5084, G5438, G5439

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

custody, dungeon, held ... in custody, hold ... in custody, holding ... in custody, imprison, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments, imprisons, prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons

### profit

#### Related Ideas:

profitable, unprofitable

#### Definition:

In general, the terms "profit" and "profitable" refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is "profitable" to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

* More specifically, the term "profit" often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is "profitable" if it gains more money than it spends.
* Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
* 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is "profitable" for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible's teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God's will.

The term "unprofitable" means to not be useful.

* It literally means to not profit anything or to not help someone gain anything.
* Something that is unprofitable is not worth doing because it does not give any benefit.
* This could be translated as "useless" or "worthless" or "not useful" or "unworthy" or "not beneficial" or "giving no benefit."

To "take advantage of" someone is to make extra profit from him because he is weak and unable to demand greater return.

(See also: [worthy](../kt/worthy.md))

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "profit" could also be translated as "benefit" or "help" or "gain."
* The term "profitable" could be translated as "useful" or "beneficial" or "helpful."
* To "profit from" something could be translated as "benefit from" or "gain money from" or "receive help from."
* In the context of a business, "profit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "money gained" or "surplus of money" or "extra money."

#### Bible References:

* Job 15:03
* Proverbs 10:16
* Jeremiah 02:08
* Ezekiel 18:12-13
* John 06:63
* Mark 08:36
* Matthew 16:26
* 2 Peter 02:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1214, H3148, H3276, H3504, H4195, H4768, H5532, H7939, H7965, G147, G512, G890, G1281, G2108, G2585, G2770, G2771, G3408, G3685, G4122, G4297, G4851, G5622, G5623

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

profit, profitable, profits, treated ... violently for profit, unprofitable

### promise

#### Related Ideas:

binding promise

#### Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

* The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
* Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
* A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
* To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [oath](../other/oath.md), [vow](../kt/vow.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 03:15-16
* Genesis 25:31-34
* Hebrews 11:09
* James 01:12
* Numbers 30:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H530, H562, H632, H1696, H2778, H3709, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

makes binding promises, promise, promised, promises

### prophet

#### Related Ideas:

prophecy, prophesy, prophetic, seer

#### Definition:

A "prophet" is a man who speaks God's messages to people. A woman who does this is called a "prophetess."

* Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
* A "prophecy" is the message that the prophet speaks. To "prophesy" means to speak God's messages.
* Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
* Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
* In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as "the prophets."
* For example the phrase, "the law and the prophets" is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the "Old Testament."
* An older term for a prophet was "seer" or "someone who sees."
* Sometimes the term "seer" refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "prophet" could be translated as "God's spokesman" or "man who speaks for God" or "man who speaks God's messages."
* A "seer" could be translated as, "person who sees visions" or "man who sees the future from God."
* The term "prophetess" could be translated as, "spokeswoman for God" or "woman who speaks for God" or "woman who speaks God's messages."
* Ways to translate "prophecy" could include, "message from God" or "prophet message."
* The term "prophesy" could be translated as "speak words from God" or "tell God's message."
* The figurative expression, "law and the prophets" could also be translated as, "the books of the law and of the prophets" or "everything written about God and his people, including God's laws and what his prophets preached."
* When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as "false prophet (seer)" or "prophet (seer) of a false god" or "prophet of Baal," for example.

(See also: [Baal](../names/baal.md), [divination](../other/divination.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [false prophet](../other/falseprophet.md), [fulfill](../kt/fulfill.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [vision](../other/vision.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
* Acts 03:25
* John 01:43-45
* Malachi 04:4-6
* Matthew 01:23
* Matthew 02:18
* Matthew 05:17
* Psalm 051:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5046, H5197, H7200, H7203, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

give ... prophecies, prophecies, prophecy, prophesied, prophesies, prophesy, prophesying, prophet, prophet's, prophetess, prophetic, prophets, seer, seer's, seers, seers'

### pure

#### Related Ideas:

impure, purge, purification, purify, purity, refine

#### Definition:

To be "pure" means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

* In regard to Old Testament laws, "purify" and "purification" refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
* The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
* In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
* The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God's forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.
* Something that is "impure" is not pure.
* To "refine" is to purify metal. This is done by heating the metal over a fire until it melts and removing what should not be there.
* Someone who has pure motives is somone who only wants to do what is good.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "purify" could be translated as "make pure" or "cleanse" or "cleanse from all contamination" or "get rid of all sin."
* A phrase such as "when the time for their purification was over" could be translated as "when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days."
* The phrase "provided purification for sins" could be translated as "provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin."
* Other ways to translate "purification" could include "cleansing" or "spiritual washing" or "becoming ritually clean."
* Other ways to translate "pure motives" or "purity of motives" is "sincere" or "sincerity."

(See also: [atonement](../kt/atonement.md), [clean](../kt/clean.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 01:05
* Exodus 31:6-9
* Hebrews 09:13-15
* James 04:08
* Luke 02:22
* Revelation 14:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H571, H1249, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H2896, H3800, H5079, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, G48, G49, G53, G54, G169, G185, G505, G1103, G1506, G2511, G2512, G2513

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

impure, impure thing, impurities, impurity, pure, purer, purge, purification, purified, purifies, purify, purity, refine, refined, refiner, refiner's, refining

### purple

#### Definitions:

The term "purple" is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

* In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
* Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
* Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
* Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
* Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
* Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(See also: [ephod](../kt/ephod.md), [Philippi](../names/philippi.md), [royal](../other/royal.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 02:13-14
* Daniel 05:7
* Daniel 05:29-31
* Proverbs 31:22-23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H710, H711, H713, G4209, G4210, G4211

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

purple

### quench

#### Related Ideas:

put out, unquenchable

#### Definition:

The term "quench" means to stop something that is demanding to be satisfied. The expression "put out" can also mean the same.

* The term "quench" is usually used in the context of quenching thirst, and means to stop being thirsty by drinking something.
* The expressions "quench" and "put out" can also be used to refer to stopping a fire.
* Both thirst and fire are quenched with water.
* A fire that is "unquenchable" cannot be stopped. It continues to burn.
* Paul uses the term "quench" in a figurative way when he instructs believers to not "quench the Holy Spirit." This means to not discourage people from allowing the Holy Spirit to produce his fruits and gifts in them. Quenching the Holy Spirit means preventing the Holy Spirit from freely manifesting his power and work in people.

(See also: [fruit](../other/fruit.md), [gift](../kt/gift.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 05:19
* Ezekiel 20:47
* Isaiah 01:31
* Jeremiah 21:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1846, H3518, H7665, G762, G4570

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

put out, quench, quenched, unquenchable

### rage

#### Related Ideas:

enrage

#### Definitions:

Rage is excessive anger what is out of control. When someone rages, it means that person is expressing anger in a destructive way.

* Rage happens when the emotion of anger causes a person to lose self control.
* When controlled by rage, people commit destructive acts and say destructive things.
* When the "nations rage," their to ungodly people disobey God and rebel against him.
* To be "filled with rage" means to have an overwhelming feeling of extreme anger.
* "Senseless rage" is rage that comes from no good reason or that prevents the angry person from thinking clearly.
* To "enrage" someone means to make them extremely angry.
* To "enrage" against someone is to be extremely angry with someone.
* When someone is "enraged" he is extremely angry."

"Rage" can also be used figuratively.

* The term to "rage" can also mean to move powerfully, in descriptions such as a "raging" storm or ocean waves that "rage."

(See also: [angry](../other/angry.md), [self-control](../other/selfcontrol.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:25
* Daniel 03:13
* Luke 04:28
* Numbers 25:11
* Proverbs 19:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H398, H1348, H1993, H2121, H2195, H2196, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2734, H2740, H3820, H5590, H5678, H7264, H7265, H7266, H7267, H7857, G454, G1693, G2372, G2830, G3710, G5433

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

enrage, enraged, rage, raged, rages, raging, senseless rage

### raise

#### Related Ideas:

arise, rise, risen

#### Definition:

**raise, raise up**

In general, the word "raise" means to "lift up" or "make higher."

* The figurative phrase "raise up" means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
* Sometimes "raise up" means to restore or rebuild.
* "Raise" has a specialized meaning in the phrase "raise from the dead." It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
* Sometimes "raise up" means to exalt someone or something or make someone or something truly great.

**rise, arise**

To "rise" or "arise" means to "go up" or "get up." The terms "risen," "rose," and "arose" express past action.

* When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as "he arose and went" or "he rose up and went."
* If something "arises" it means it "happens" or "begins to happen."
* Jesus predicted that he would "rise from the dead." Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, "He has risen!"
* A person who suddenly becomes important is said to "arise."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "raise" or "raise up" could be translated as "lift up" or "make higher."
* To "raise up" could also be translated as to "cause to appear" or to "appoint" or to "bring into existence."
* To "raise up the strength of your enemies" could be translated as, "cause your enemies to be very strong."
* The phrase "raise someone from the dead" could be translated as "cause someone to return from death to life" or "cause someone to come back to life."
* Depending on the context, "raise up" could also be translated as "provide" or to "appoint" or to "cause to have" or "build up" or "rebuild" or "repair."
* The phrase "arose and went" could be translated as "got up and went" or "went."
* Depending on the context, the term "arose" could also be translated as "began" or "started up" or "got up" or "stood up."

(See also: [resurrection](../kt/resurrection.md), [appoint](../kt/appoint.md), [exalt](../kt/exalt.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 06:41
* 2 Samuel 07:12
* Acts 10:40
* Colossians 03:01
* Deuteronomy 13:1-3
* Jeremiah 06:01
* Judges 02:18
* Luke 07:22
* Matthew 20:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1804, H2210, H2224, H5375, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H7613, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1127, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891, G5312

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

arise, arisen, arises, raise, raise up, raised, raises, raising, raising up, rise, rise up, risen, rises, rising, rose

### ransom

#### Definition:

The term "ransom" refers to a sum of money or other payment that is demanded or paid for the release of a person who is held captive.

* As a verb, to "ransom" means to make a payment or to do something self-sacrificially in order to rescue someone who has been captured, enslaved or imprisoned. This meaning of "buy back" is similar to the meaning of "redeem."
* Jesus allowed himself to be killed as a ransom to free sinful people from their enslavement to sin. This act of God buying back his people through paying the penalty of their sin is also called "redemption" in the Bible.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term to "ransom" could also be translated as to "pay to release" or to "pay a price to free" or to "buy back."
* The phrase to "pay a ransom" could be translated as to "pay the price (of freedom)" or to "pay the penalty (to free people)" or to "make the required payment."
* The noun "ransom" could be translated as "a buying back" or "a penalty paid" or "the price paid" (to free or buy back people or land).
* The terms a "ransom" and a "redemption" have the same meaning in English but are sometimes used slightly differently. Other languages may have only one term for this concept.
* Make sure this is translated differently from "atonement."

(See also: [atonement](../kt/atonement.md), [redeem](../kt/redeem.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 02:06
* Isaiah 43:03
* Job 06:23
* Leviticus 19:20
* Matthew 20:28
* Psalms 049:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1350, H3724, H6299, H6304, G487, G3083

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ransom, ransomed

### rebel

#### Related Ideas:

rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

#### Definition:

The term "rebel" means to refuse to submit to someone's authority. A "rebellious" person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called "a rebel."

* A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
* A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
* Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
* The term to "rebel" could also be translated as to "disobey" or to "revolt," depending on the context.
* "Rebellious" could also be translated as "continually disobedient" or "refusing to obey."
* The term "rebellion" means "refusal to obey" or "disobedience" or "law-breaking."
* The phrase "the rebellion" or "a rebellion" can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [governor](../other/governor.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 12:18-19
* 1 Samuel 12:14
* 1 Timothy 01:9-11
* 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
* Acts 21:38
* Luke 23:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4754, H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7300, H7846, G436, G485, G498, G506, G3893, G4955

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

rebel, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness, rebels, revolt

### rebuke

#### Related Ideas:

correct, correction

#### Definition:

To rebuke is to give someone a stern verbal correction, often in order to help that person turn away from sin. Such a correction is a rebuke.

* A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
* The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
* The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This could be translated by "sternly correct" or "admonish."
* The phrase "a rebuke" could be translated by "a stern correction" or "a strong criticism."
* "Without rebuke" could be translated as "without admonishing" or "without criticism."

(See also [admonish](../other/admonish.md), [disobey](../other/disobey.md))

#### Bible References:

* Mark 01:23-26
* Mark 16:14
* Matthew 08:26-27
* Matthew 17:17-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H3256, H4045, H4148, H7626, H8156, H8433, G1649, G1651, G1969, G2008, G3679

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

correct, corrected, correction, corrections, corrects, give correction, rebuke, rebuked, rebukes

### receive

#### Related Ideas:

abstain, receiver

#### Definition:

The term "receive" generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

* To "receive" can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in "he received punishment for what he did."
* There is also a special sense in which we can "receive" a person. For example, to "receive" guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
* To "receive the gift of the Holy Spirit" means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
* To "receive Jesus" means to accept God's offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
* When a blind person "receives his sight" means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.
* The word "abstain" means to refuse to take or receive or have something.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "receive" could be translated as "accept" or "welcome" or "experience" or "be given."
* The expression "you will receive power" could be translated as "you will be given power" or "God will give you power" or "power will be given to you (by God)" or "God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you."
* The phrase "received his sight" could be translated as "was able to see" or "became able to see again."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [lord](../kt/lord.md), [save](../kt/save.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 05:09
* 1 Thessalonians 01:06
* 1 Thessalonians 04:01
* Acts 08:15
* Jeremiah 32:33
* Luke 09:05
* Malachi 03:10-12
* Psalms 049:14-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3557, H3925, H3947, H5144, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1184, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G4047, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G5264, G5562

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

abstain, receive, receive back, received, received ... in full, receiver, receives, receiving

### reed

#### Definitions:

The term "reed" refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

* The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called "bulrushes." They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
* These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
* The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(See also: [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [Nile River](../names/nileriver.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 14:15
* Luke 07:24
* Matthew 11:07
* Matthew 12:20
* Psalm 068:30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H98, H100, H260, G4464, H5488, H6169, H7070, G2563

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

reed, reeds

### reject

#### Related Ideas:

deny, despise, refuse, rejection, scorn, set aside, stay away from, throw away

#### Definition:

To "reject" someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing. The term "reject" can also mean to "refuse to believe in" something. To reject God or his laws means to refuse to obey him.

* To "deny" what someone says is to say that it is not true.
* To "deny" someone is to say that one does not associate with that person.
* To "despise" or "scorn" people or things is to have no respect for them.
* An "object of scorn" is someone or something that people have no respect for.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, the term "reject" could also be translated by "not accept" or "stop helping" or "refuse to obey" or "stop obeying."
* In some languages the idea of "reject" is expressed as "push away" or "set aside" or "stay away from."
* In the expression "stone that the builders rejected," the term "rejected" could be translated as "refused to use" or "did not accept" or "threw away" or "got rid of as worthless."
* In the context of people who rejected God's commandments, rejected could be translated as "refused to obey" his commands or "stubbornly chose to not accept" God's laws.

(See also: [command](../kt/command.md), [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [stiff-necked](../other/stiffnecked.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:12-14
* Hosea 04:6-7
* Isaiah 41:09
* John 12:48-50
* Mark 07:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H936, H937, H947, H959, H2151, H2186, H2778, H2781, H3988, H5006, H5034, H5186, H5203, H5307, H5541, H5800, G114, G483, G550, G579, G580, G581, G593, G683, G720, G1609, G1848, G3868

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

denied, denies, deny, despise, despised, despises, refuse, refused, reject, rejected, rejecting, rejection, rejects, scorn, scorns, set ... aside, sets ... aside, stay away from, throw away, tossed aside

### repent

#### Related Ideas:

change his mind, hold back, regret, relent, repentance

#### Definition:

The terms "repent" and "repentance" refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

* To "repent" literally means to "change one's mind."
* In the Bible, "repent" usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God's way of thinking and acting.
* When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.
* A person who "relents" decides not to punish another person.
* A person who "regrets" having done something wishes he had never done that thing.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "repent" can be translated with a word or phrase that means "turn back (to God)" or "turn away from sin and toward God" or "turn toward God, away from sin."
* Often the term "repentance" can be translated using the verb "repent." For example, "God has given repentance to Israel" could be translated as "God has enabled Israel to repent."
* Other ways to translate "repentance" could include "turning away from sin" or "turning to God and away from sin."

(See also: [forgive](../kt/forgive.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [turn](../other/turn.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 03:19-20
* Luke 03:3
* Luke 03:8
* Luke 05:32
* Luke 24:47
* Mark 01:14-15
* Matthew 03:03
* Matthew 03:11
* Matthew 04:17
* Romans 02:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5162, H8133, G278, G3338, G3340, G3341

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

change ... mind, changed ... mind, hold back, regret, regretted, relent, relented, relenting, repent, repentance, repented, repents

### report

#### Related Ideas:

account, bring news, give an account, news, rumor

#### Definition:

The term to "report" means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A "report" is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

* "Report" could also be translated as "tell" or "explain" or "tell the details of."
* The expression "Report this to no one" could be translated as, "Don't talk about this with anyone" or "Don't tell anyone about this."
* Ways to translate "a report" could include "an explanation" or "a story" or "a detailed account," depending on the context.
* A "rumor" is a report that no one knows for sure is true.

#### Bible References:

* Acts 05:22-23
* John 12:38
* Luke 05:15
* Luke 08:34-35
* Matthew 28:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1319, H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H5608, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, H8435, G189, G191, G312, G518, G987, G1225, G1310, G1334, G1834, G2036, G2163, G3004, G3056, G3140, G3141, G3377

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

account, accounts, bring ... report, brought ... news, brought ... report, gave ... a full account, give ... a full account, news, report, reported, reports, rumor, rumors, spread ... about

### rest

#### Related Ideas:

at ease, pause, refresh, relief, restless

#### Definition:

The term to "rest" literally means to stop working. Usually it means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. A "rest" is what someone has when he stops working. To "rest secure" is to feel safe. To "rest" an object on something means to "place" or "put" it there. An object that is "resting" somewhere is simply in that place. A boat that "comes to rest" somewhere has "stopped" or "landed" there. The phrase "the rest of" refers to the remainder of something.

* God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the "Sabbath" day.
* To be "at ease" is to feel safe or comfortable.
* To "pause" is to stop doing something for a while.
* To "refresh" someone is to give him rest and whatever else he needs so he can get his strength back.
* "Relief" is the rest a person has when a problem becomes less severe or ends.
* If someone is "restless," he feels anxious or bored and cannot rest.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When Jesus said, "I will give you rest," this could also be translated as " I will cause you to stop carrying your burden" or "I will help you be at peace."
* God said, "they will not enter my rest," and this statement could be translated as "they will not experience my blessings of rest" or "they will not experience the peace that comes from trusting in me."
* The term "the rest" could be translated as "those that remain" or "all the others" or "everything that is left."

(See also: [remnant](../kt/remnant.md), [Sabbath](../kt/sabbath.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 06:41
* Genesis 02:03
* Jeremiah 06:16-19
* Matthew 11:29
* Revelation 14:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3427, H3498, H3499, H3885, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5162, H5183, H5315, H5564, H6314, H6960, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7663, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7951, H7961, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2838, G4520

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

at ease, be at rest, give ... rest, pause, refresh, refreshed, relief, rest, rest secure, rested, rested secure, resting, resting place, resting places, restless, rests

### restore

#### Related Ideas:

bring back, mend, recover, restoration, reverse

#### Definition:

The terms "restore" and "restoration" refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

* When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been "healed."
* When a broken relationship is restored, it has been "reconciled." God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
* When property is restored, it has been "repaired" or "replaced" or "given back" to its owner.
* When people have been restored to their home country, they have been "brought back" or "returned" to their country.
* A person who "recovers" from sickness becomes healthy again.
* A person who "recovers" a possession either finds it when it has been lost or gets it back from someone who has stolen it.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, ways to translate "restore" could include "renew" or "repay" or "return" or "heal" or "bring back."
* Other expressions for this term could be "make new" or "make like new again."
* Depending on the context, "restoration" could be translated as "renewal" or "healing" or "reconciliation."

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 5:10
* Acts 3:21
* Acts 15:15-18
* Isaiah 49:5-6
* Jeremiah 15:19-21
* Lamentations 05:22
* Leviticus 6:5-7
* Luke 19:8
* Matthew 12:13
* Psalm 80:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2421, H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675, G5483

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bring back, mending, recover, restoration, restore, restored, restorer, restores, restoring, reverse

### resurrection

#### Definition:

The term "resurrection" refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

* To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
* The word "resurrection" often refers to Jesus' coming back to life after he died.
* When Jesus said, "I am the Resurrection and the Life" he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* A person's "resurrection" could be translated as his "coming back to life" or his "becoming alive again after being dead."
* The literal meaning of this word is "a rising up" or "the act of being raised (from the dead)." These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: [life](../kt/life.md), [death](../other/death.md), [raise](../other/raise.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 15:13
* 1 Peter 03:21
* Hebrews 11:35
* John 05:28-29
* Luke 20:27
* Luke 20:36
* Matthew 22:23
* Matthew 22:30
* Philippians 03:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G386, G1454, G1815

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

resurrection

### return

#### Definition:

The term "return" means to go back or to give something back.

* To "return to" a place or person means to bo back to that place or person again.
* To "return to" an activity means to start doing that activity again.
* When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they started to worship them again.
* When the Israelites returned to Yahweh, they repented and worshiped Yahweh again.
* To "return" land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: [turn](../other/turn.md))

#### Bible References:

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290, G4762

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

return, return back, returned, returning, returns

### reward

#### Related Ideas:

pay, penalty, prize, recompense, retribution, rewarder, wage

#### Definition:

The term "reward" refers to what a person receives or earns because of something he has done, either good or bad. To "reward" someone is to give someone something he deserves.

* A reward can be a good thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
* Sometimes a reward can refer to bad things that may result from bad behavior, such as "the reward of the wicked." This is either punishment or other painful things that happen to people because of their sinful actions.
* "Payment" and "wages" refer to what a person earns for working. These ideas can also be used to refer to a reward for doing good or to punishment for doing bad.
* A "prize" is a reward that someone receives for winning a contest.
* A "penalty" is a punishment for breaking the law.
* "Recompense" can be either good or bad. Good recompense is for good deeds, and bad recompense is for bad deeds.
* "Retribution" is punishment for doing wrong.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "reward" could be translated as "payment" or "something that is deserved" or "punishment."
* To "reward" someone could be translated by to "repay" or to "punish" or to "give what is deserved."

(See also: [punish](../other/punish.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 32:06
* Isaiah 40:10
* Luke 06:35
* Mark 09:40-41
* Matthew 05:11-12
* Matthew 06:3-4
* Psalms 127:3-5
* Revelation 11:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H314, H319, H814, H866, H868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H2506, H3519, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7936, H7938, H7939, H7966, H7999, H8254, G469, G514, G591, G2603, G3405, G3406, G3408, G5485

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

pay, pay ... back, pays ... back, payment, penalty, prize, recompense, repay, repayment, retribution, reward, rewarded, rewarder, rewarding, rewards, wage, wages

### right hand

#### Related Ideas:

righthand side

#### Definition:

The figurative expression "right hand" refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

* The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
* The Bible describes Jesus as sitting "at the right hand of" God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
* A person's right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph's son Ephraim).
* To "serve at the right hand" of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Sometimes the term "right hand" literally refers to a person's right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus' right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
* Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term "right hand" does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
* The expression "at the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of" or "in the place of honor beside" or "in the position of strength" or "ready to help."
* Ways to translate "with his right hand" could include "with authority" or "using power" or "with his amazing strength."
* The figurative expression "his right hand and his mighty arm" uses two ways of emphasizing God's power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be "his amazing strength and mighty power."
* The expression "their right hand is falsehood" could be translated as, "even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies" or "their place of honor is corrupted by deception" or "they use lies to make themselves powerful."

(See also: [accuse](../other/accuse.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [honor](../kt/honor.md), [mighty](../other/mighty.md), [punish](../other/punish.md), [rebel](../other/rebel.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:33
* Colossians 03:01
* Galatians 02:09
* Genesis 48:14
* Hebrews 10:12
* Lamentations 02:03
* Matthew 25:33
* Matthew 26:64
* Psalms 044:03
* Revelation 02:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3225, H3231, G1188

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

right hand, right hands, righthand side

### righteous

#### Related Ideas:

right, rightly, righteousness, rightful, upright

#### Definition:

The term "righteousness" refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God "righteous." Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

* These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
* Examples of people the Bible who were called "righteous" include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
* When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

The term "unrighteous" means to be sinful and morally corrupt. "Unrighteousness" can refer to sin or the condition of being sinful.

* These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
* Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
* Sometimes "the unrighteous" refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.
* "Unrighteousness" can be an abstract noun that refers to words or actions that are unrighteous.

The terms "upright" and "uprightness" refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

* The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
* A person who is "upright" is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
* Terms such as "integrity" and "righteous" have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as "integrity and uprightness."

#### Translation Suggestions:

When it describes God, the term "righteous" could be translated as "perfectly good and just" or "always acting rightly."

God's "righteousness" could also be translated as "perfect faithfulness and goodness."

When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term "righteous" could also be translated as "morally good" or "just" or "living a God-pleasing life."

The phrase "the righteous" could also be translated as "righteous people" or "God-fearing people."

Depending on the context, "righteousness" could also be translated with a word or phrase that means "goodness" or "being perfect before God" or "acting in a right way by obeying God" or "doing perfectly good

Sometimes "the righteous" was used figuratively and referred to "people who think they are good" or "people who seem to be righteous."

The term "unrighteous" could simply be translated as "not righteous."

Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include "wicked" or "immoral" or "people who rebel against God" or "sinful."

The phrase "the unrighteous" could be translated as "unrighteous people."

The term "unrighteousness" could be translated as "sin" or "evil thoughts and actions" or "wickedness."

If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to "righteous, righteousness."

Ways to translate "upright" could include "acting rightly" or "one who acts rightly" or "following God's laws" or "obedient to God" or "behaving in a way that is right."

The term "uprightness" could be translated as "moral purity" or "good moral conduct" or "rightness."

The phrase "the upright" could be translated as "people who are upright" or "upright people."

(See also: [evil](../kt/evil.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md), [good](../kt/good.md), [holy](../kt/holy.md), [integrity](../other/integrity.md), [just](../kt/justice.md), [law](../other/law.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [pure](../kt/purify.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [unlawful](../other/lawful.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 19:16
* Job 01:08
* Psalms 037:30
* Psalms 049:14
* Psalms 107:42
* Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
* Isaiah 48:1-2
* Ezekiel 33:13
* Malachi 02:06
* Matthew 06:01
* Acts 03:13-14
* Romans 01:29-31
* 1 Corinthians 06:09
* Galatians 03:07
* Colossians 03:25
* 2 Thessalonians 02:10
* 2 Timothy 03:16
* 1 Peter 03:18-20
* 1 John 01:09
* 1 John 05:16-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G824, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

acts rightly, do right, does what is right, in the right, made ... appear ... righteous, right treatment, righteous, righteously, righteousness, rightful, that are right, that is right, unrighteous, unrighteously, unrighteousness, upright, uprightly, uprightness, what is ... right, what was right

### robe

#### Related Ideas:

cloak, coat, skirt, wings

#### Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

* Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
* Robes can be long or short.
* Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.
* The edges of a robe are called its "wings." When one person covers another person with his "wings," he covers him with that part of his robe.
* A "cloak" is a long outer garment that hangs loosely from the shoulders. It covers the back and hangs loosely in the front.
* A "skirt" is a woman's garment that hangs loosely from the waist and covers the legs.

(See also: [royal](../other/royal.md), [tunic](../other/tunic.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 28:4-5
* Genesis 49:11-12
* Luke 15:22
* Luke 20:46
* Matthew 27:27-29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H145, H155, H899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7897, H8008, H8071, G1746, G2067, G2440, G4749, G4016, G5511

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cloak, cloaks, coat, fancy robes, robe, robed, robes, skirt, skirts, wings

### rod

#### Related Ideas:

measuring rod

#### Definition:

The term "rod" refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that was used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

* A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
* In Psalm 23, King David used the terms "rod" and "staff" as metaphors to refer to God's guidance and discipline for his people.
* A shepherd's rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
* Another metaphorical expression, "rod of iron," refers to God's punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
* In the Bible, a wooden rod was also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.
* In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.

(See also: [staff](../other/staff.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md), [shepherd](../other/shepherd.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 04:21
* 1 Samuel 14:43-44
* Acts 16:23
* Exodus 27:9-10
* Revelation 11:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2415, H4294, H4731, H7626, G2563, G4463, G4464

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

measuring rod, rod, rods

### rod

#### Related Ideas:

measuring rod

#### Definition:

The term "rod" refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that was used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

* A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
* In Psalm 23, King David used the terms "rod" and "staff" as metaphors to refer to God's guidance and discipline for his people.
* A shepherd's rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
* Another metaphorical expression, "rod of iron," refers to God's punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
* In the Bible, a wooden rod was also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.
* In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.

(See also: [staff](../other/staff.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md), [shepherd](../other/shepherd.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 04:21
* 1 Samuel 14:43-44
* Acts 16:23
* Exodus 27:9-10
* Revelation 11:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2415, H4294, H4731, H7626, G2563, G4463, G4464

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

measuring rod, rod, rods

### ruler

#### Related Ideas:

overrule, rule

#### Definition:

The term "ruler" is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who "rules," and his authority is his "rule."

* In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a "ruler," as in the phrase "appointed him ruler over Israel."
* God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
* In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a "ruler."
* Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a "governor."
* Depending on the context, "ruler" could be translated as "leader" or "person who has authority over."
* The action to "rule" means to "lead" to "have authority over." It is means the same thing as "reign" when it refers to the ruling of a king.
* To "overrule" people or their plans is to use one's higher authority to prohibit people from doing what they have planned.

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [governor](../other/governor.md), [king](../other/king.md), [synagogue](../kt/synagogue.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 03:17-18
* Acts 07:35-37
* Luke 12:11
* Luke 23:35
* Mark 10:42
* Matthew 09:32-34
* Matthew 20:25
* Titus 03:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H117, H995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5633, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G746, G752, G757, G758, G932, G936, G1018, G1203, G1299, G1778, G1785, G2232, G2233, G2525, G2888, G2961, G3545, G3841, G4165, G4291

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

overruled, overrules, rule, ruled, ruler, rulers, rules, ruling, rulings

### run

#### Related Ideas:

flee, flow, move swiftly, runner

#### Definition:

Literally the term "run" means "move very quickly on foot," usually at a greater speed than can be accomplished by walking. To "run after" or "pursue" someone or something is to move as quickly as possible to try to catch that person or thing. To run away from someone or something is to "flee."

This main meaning of "run" is also used in figurative expressions such as the following:

* To "run in such a way as to win the prize" refers to persevering in doing God's will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win.
* To "run in the path of your commands" means to gladly and quickly obey God's commands.
* To "run after other gods" means to persist in worshiping other gods.
* "I run to you to hide me" means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things.

The following figurative uses are about non-living things that are said to run.

* Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to "run." This could also be translated as, "flow."
* The border or boundary of a country or region is said to "run along" a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated by saying that the country’s border "is next to" the river or other country or by saying that the country "borders" the river or other country."
* Rivers and streams can "run dry," which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as "have dried up" or "have become dry."
* The days of a feast can "run their course," which means they "have passed by" or "are finished" or "are over."

(See also: [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [persevere](../other/perseverance.md), [refuge](../other/refuge.md), [turn](../other/turn.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 06:18
* Galatians 02:02
* Galatians 05:07
* Philippians 02:16
* Proverbs 01:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H213, H386, H1065, H1272, H1556, H1980, H2100, H2416, H2648, H3001, H3212, H3332, H3381, H3920, H3988, H4422, H4754, H4794, H4944, H5074, H5127, H5140, H5472, H5756, H6437, H6440, H6544, H6805, H7272, H7291, H7310, H7325, H7519, H7751, H8264, H8308, H8444, G413, G1377, G1601, G1530, G1532, G1998, G2701, G3729, G4063, G4370, G4390, G4710, G4890, G4936, G5143, G5240, G5343

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

caused ... to flee, fled, flee, fleeing, flees, flow, flows, moving swiftly, ran, run, runner, runners, running, runs

### run

#### Related Ideas:

flee, flow, move swiftly, runner

#### Definition:

Literally the term "run" means "move very quickly on foot," usually at a greater speed than can be accomplished by walking. To "run after" or "pursue" someone or something is to move as quickly as possible to try to catch that person or thing. To run away from someone or something is to "flee."

This main meaning of "run" is also used in figurative expressions such as the following:

* To "run in such a way as to win the prize" refers to persevering in doing God's will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win.
* To "run in the path of your commands" means to gladly and quickly obey God's commands.
* To "run after other gods" means to persist in worshiping other gods.
* "I run to you to hide me" means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things.

The following figurative uses are about non-living things that are said to run.

* Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to "run." This could also be translated as, "flow."
* The border or boundary of a country or region is said to "run along" a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated by saying that the country’s border "is next to" the river or other country or by saying that the country "borders" the river or other country."
* Rivers and streams can "run dry," which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as "have dried up" or "have become dry."
* The days of a feast can "run their course," which means they "have passed by" or "are finished" or "are over."

(See also: [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [persevere](../other/perseverance.md), [refuge](../other/refuge.md), [turn](../other/turn.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 06:18
* Galatians 02:02
* Galatians 05:07
* Philippians 02:16
* Proverbs 01:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H213, H386, H1065, H1272, H1556, H1980, H2100, H2416, H2648, H3001, H3212, H3332, H3381, H3920, H3988, H4422, H4754, H4794, H4944, H5074, H5127, H5140, H5472, H5756, H6437, H6440, H6544, H6805, H7272, H7291, H7310, H7325, H7519, H7751, H8264, H8308, H8444, G413, G1377, G1601, G1530, G1532, G1998, G2701, G3729, G4063, G4370, G4390, G4710, G4890, G4936, G5143, G5240, G5343

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

caused ... to flee, fled, flee, fleeing, flees, flow, flows, moving swiftly, ran, run, runner, runners, running, runs

### sacrifice

#### Related Ideas:

offering

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "sacrifice" and "offering" refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

* The word "offering" generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term "sacrifice" refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
* Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
* The names of the different offerings, such as "burnt offering" and "peace offering," indicated what kind of offering was being given.
* Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
* Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God's perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.
* The figurative expression "offer yourselves as a living sacrifice" means, "live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him."

#### Translation Suggestions

* The term "offering" could also be translated as "a gift to God" or "something given to God" or "something valuable that is presented to God."
* Depending on the context, the term "sacrifice" could also be translated as "something valuable given in worship" or "a special animal killed and presented to God."
* The action to "sacrifice" could be translated as to "give up something valuable" or to "kill an animal and give it to God."
* Another way to translate "present yourself as a living sacrifice" could be "as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar."

(See also: [altar](../kt/altar.md), [burnt offering](../other/burntoffering.md), [drink offering](../other/drinkoffering.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [fellowship offering](../other/fellowshipoffering.md), [freewill offering](../other/freewilloffering.md) [peace offering](../other/peaceoffering.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [sin offering](../other/sinoffering.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:06
* Acts 07:42
* Acts 21:25
* Genesis 04:3-5
* James 02:21-24
* Mark 01:43-44
* Mark 14:12
* Matthew 05:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H4635, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

burn ... sacrifices, offer, offered, offering, offerings, sacrifice, sacrificed, sacrifices, sacrificing

### sandal

#### Definition:

A sandal is a simple flat-soled shoe held onto the foot by straps that go around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

* A sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property: one man would take off a sandal and give it to the other.
* Removing one's shoes or sandals was also a sign of respect and reverence, especially in God's presence.
* John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus' sandals, which would have been the task of a lowly servant or slave.

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:33
* Deuteronomy 25:10
* John 01:27
* Joshua 05:15
* Mark 06:7-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5274, H5275, H8288, G4547, G5266

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sandal, sandals

### save

#### Related Ideas:

make well, preserve, safe, salvation

#### Definition:

The term "save" refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To "be safe" means to be protected from harm or danger.

* In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
* In a spiritual sense, if a person has been "saved," then God, through Jesus' death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
* People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term "salvation" refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

* In the Bible, "salvation" usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
* The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Ways to translate "save" could include "deliver" or "keep from harm" or "take out of harm's way" or "keep from dying."

In the expression "whoever would save his life," the term "save" could also be translated as "preserve" or "protect."

The term "safe" could be translated as "protected from danger" or "in a place where nothing can harm."

The term "salvation" could also be translated using words related to "save" or "rescue," as in "God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)" or "God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies)."

"God is my salvation" could be translated as "God is the one who saves me."

"You will draw water from the wells of salvation" could be translated as "You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you."

(See also: [cross](../kt/cross.md), [deliver](../other/deliverer.md), [punish](../other/punish.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [Savior](../kt/savior.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 49:18
* Genesis 47:25-26
* Psalms 080:03
* Jeremiah 16:19-21
* Micah 06:3-5
* Luke 02:30
* Luke 08:36-37
* Acts 04:12
* Acts 28:28
* Acts 02:21
* Romans 01:16
* Romans 10:10
* Ephesians 06:17
* Philippians 01:28
* 1 Timothy 01:15-17
* Revelation 19:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4581, H4931, H5337, H5338, H5756, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G803, G804, G1295, G1508, G1515, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be made well, brought safely, brought safely through, place of safety, preserve, safe, safely, safety, salvation, save, saved, saves, saving

### scribe

#### Related Ideas:

clerk, scholar

#### Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was "expert in Jewish law."

* Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
* They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
* At times, scribes were important government officials.
* Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
* In the New Testament, the term translated "scribes" was also translated as "teachers of the Law."
* In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the "Pharisees," and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [Pharisee](../kt/pharisee.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:05
* Luke 07:29-30
* Luke 20:47
* Mark 01:22
* Mark 02:16
* Matthew 05:19-20
* Matthew 07:28
* Matthew 12:38
* Matthew 13:52

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G1122

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

clerk, scholar, scribe, scribes

### seed

#### Related Words:

semen

#### Definition:

A seed is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. It also has several figurative meanings.

* The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these is called "semen."
* Related to this, "seed" is also used to refer to a person's offspring or descendants.
* This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
* In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
* The apostle Paul also uses the term "seed" to refer to the Word of God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for "seed" that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
* The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God's Word.
* For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word "descendant" or "descendants" instead of seed. Some languages may have a word that means "children and grandchildren."
* For a man or woman's "seed," consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people.

(See also: [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [offspring](../other/offspring.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 18:32
* Genesis 01:11
* Jeremiah 02:21
* Matthew 13:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G2848, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

seed, seeds, semen

### seek

#### Related Ideas:

go to find, look out for, search, try

#### Definition:

The term "seek" means to look for something or someone. The past tense is "sought." It can also mean "try hard" or "make an effort" to do something.

* To "seek" or "look for" an opportunity to do something can mean to "try to find a time" to do it.
* To "seek Yahweh" means to "spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him."
* To "seek protection" means to "try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger."
* To "seek justice" means to "make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly."
* To "seek the truth" means to "make an effort to find out what the truth is."
* To "search out" something is to look for the truth about that thing.
* To "seek favor" means to "try to get favor" or to "do things to cause someone to help you."
* To "charge someone for something" is to hold that person responsible for the damage that person has done.

(See also: [just](../kt/justice.md), [true](../kt/true.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 10:14
* Acts 17:26-27
* Hebrews 11:06
* Luke 11:09
* Psalms 027:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H2713, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7760, H7836, H8446, G327, G1567, G1934, G2045, G2052, G2212, G3987, G4648

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

diligently seek, go to find, look out for, looked for, looking for, looks for, search, search carefully, search for, searched, searched for, searched out, searches ... out, searches for, searching, searching for, seek, seek ... out, seeking, seeks, sought, tried, try, trying

### seize

#### Related Ideas:

seizure

#### Definition:

The term "seize" means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

* When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
* When used figuratively, a person can be described as being "seized with fear." This means that the person was suddenly "overcome by fear." If a person was "seized with fear" it could also be stated that the person "suddenly became very afraid."
* In the context of labor pains that "seize" a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains "overcome" or "suddenly come upon" the woman.
* This term could also be translated as "take control of" or "suddenly take" or "grab."
* The expression "seized and slept with her" could be translated as "forced himself on her" or "violated her" or "raped her." Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.
* The term "seizure" refers to the action of taking someone or something by force.

#### Bible References:

* Acts 16:19-21
* Exodus 15:14
* John 10:37-39
* Luke 08:29
* Matthew 26:48

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H270, H1204, H1497, H1589, H2254, H2388, H2488, H3027, H3423, H3680, G3860, H3920, H3947, H4672, H4685, H5337, H5367, H5375, H5860, H5927, H7760, H8610, G724, G726, G1949, G2638, G2666, G2902, G2983, G3346, G4023, G4084, G4815, G4884, G4912

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

seize, seized, seizes, seizing, seizure

### send

#### Definition:

To "send" is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To "send out" someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

* Often a person who is "sent out" has been appointed to do a specific task.
* Phrases like "send rain" or "send disaster" mean to "cause rain to come" or "cause a disaster to come." This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
* The term "send" is also used in expressions such as "send word" or "send a message," which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
* To "send" someone "with" something can mean to "give" that thing "to" someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
* To "send someone on his way" or "help someone on his way" is to give him what he needs for his journey.
* Jesus frequently used the phrase "the one who sent me" to refer to God the Father, who "sent" him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as "the one who commissioned me."

(See also: [appoint](../kt/appoint.md), [redeem](../kt/redeem.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:33-34
* Acts 08:14-17
* John 20:21-23
* Matthew 09:37-38
* Matthew 10:05
* Matthew 10:40
* Matthew 21:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H4916, H4917, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G782, G375, G630, G649, G652, G1026, G1544, G1599, G1821, G3333, G3343, G3936, G3992, G4311, G4341, G4369, G4842, G4882

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

send, send ... away, send ... on ... way, send out, sending, sending out, sends, sends out, sent, sent ... away, sent out

### send

#### Definition:

To "send" is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To "send out" someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

* Often a person who is "sent out" has been appointed to do a specific task.
* Phrases like "send rain" or "send disaster" mean to "cause rain to come" or "cause a disaster to come." This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
* The term "send" is also used in expressions such as "send word" or "send a message," which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
* To "send" someone "with" something can mean to "give" that thing "to" someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
* To "send someone on his way" or "help someone on his way" is to give him what he needs for his journey.
* Jesus frequently used the phrase "the one who sent me" to refer to God the Father, who "sent" him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as "the one who commissioned me."

(See also: [appoint](../kt/appoint.md), [redeem](../kt/redeem.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:33-34
* Acts 08:14-17
* John 20:21-23
* Matthew 09:37-38
* Matthew 10:05
* Matthew 10:40
* Matthew 21:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H4916, H4917, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G782, G375, G630, G649, G652, G1026, G1544, G1599, G1821, G3333, G3343, G3936, G3992, G4311, G4341, G4369, G4842, G4882

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

send, send ... away, send ... on ... way, send out, sending, sending out, sends, sends out, sent, sent ... away, sent out

### servant

#### Related Ideas:

assistant, attendant, hired worker, maidservant, office, serve, service

#### Definition:

The word "servant" refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. Some servants were slaves, and the surrounding text usually makes it clear whether or not a particular servant was a slave. In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master's household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

* A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
* In ancient times, some people became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
* In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
* In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
* In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
* Christians are also called "slaves to righteousness," which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave's commitment to obey his master.

The word "serve" means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to "worship."

* In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
* To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
* People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
* The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.

The word "service" refers to the work that a servant does. It may also refer to worship.

The word "office" refers to the position or job that a servant has.

(See also: [commit](../other/commit.md), [enslave](../other/enslave.md), [household](../other/household.md), [lord](../kt/lord.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md), [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [law](../other/law.md))

#### Bible References

* Acts 04:29-31
* Acts 10:7-8
* Colossians 01:7-8
* Colossians 03:22-25
* Genesis 21:10-11
* Luke 12:47-48
* Mark 09:33-35
* Matthew 10:24-25
* Matthew 13:27-28
* 2 Timothy 02:3-5
* Acts 06:2-4
* Genesis 25:23
* Luke 04:8
* Luke 12:37-38
* Luke 22:26-27
* Mark 08:7-10
* Matthew 04:10-11
* Matthew 06:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H327, H519, H519, H4931, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5656, H5657, H5659, H5673, H6402, H6635, H7916, H8120, H8198, H8278, H8334, H8335, G1199, G1247, G1248, G1249, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2038, G2322, G2324, G2615, G2999, G3000, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3814, G3816, G4342, G5256, G5257

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

female servant, female servants, hired servant, hired servants, hired worker, maidservants, male servant, male servants, office, offices, one who serves, servant, servant girl, servant girls, servant's, servants, servants', serve, served, serves, service, services, serving

### sexual immorality

#### Related Ideas:

fornicate, fornication, immoral

#### Definition:

The term "sexual immorality" refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God's plan. Older English Bible versions call this "fornication."

* This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God's will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
* One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person's spouse.
* Another type of sexual immorality is "prostitution," which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
* This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel's unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "sexual immorality" could be translated as "immorality" as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
* Other ways to translate this term could include "wrong sexual acts" or "sex outside of marriage."
* This term should be translated in a different way from the term "adultery."
* The translation of this term's figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: [adultery](../kt/adultery.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [prostitute](../other/prostitute.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 15:20
* Acts 21:25-26
* Colossians 03:5-8
* Ephesians 05:03
* Genesis 38:24-26
* Hosea 04:13-14
* Matthew 05:31-32
* Matthew 19:7-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2181, H8457, G1608, G4202, G4203

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fornicate, fornicates, fornication, fornications, immoral, immorality, sexual immorality

### shadow

#### Related Ideas:

overshadow, shade

#### Definition:

The word "shadow" literally refers to the darkness that is caused by an object blocking the light. The shadow has a shape similar to the shape of the object that blocks the light.

* The word "overshadow" means to block the light from above and cause a shadow to appear on something.
* The word "shade" means a dark area where the sunlight is blocked, perhaps by a cloud or a trees.

The word "shadow" also has several figurative meanings.

* The "shadow of death" means that death is present or near, just as a shadow indicates the presence of its object.
* Many times in the Bible, the life of a human being is compared to a shadow, which does not last very long and has no substance.
* Sometimes "shadow" is used as another word for "darkness."
* The Bible talks about being hidden or protected in the shadow of God's wings or hands. This is a picture of being protected and hidden from danger. Other ways to translate "shadow" in these contexts could include "shade" or "safety" or "protection."
* It is best to translate "shadow" literally using the local term that is used to refer to an actual shadow.

(See also: [darkness](../other/darkness.md), [light](../other/light.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 20:09
* Genesis 19:08
* Isaiah 30:02
* Jeremiah 06:04
* Psalms 017:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2927, H6738, H6751, H6752, H6754, H6757, G644, G1982, G2683, G4639

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

overshadow, overshadowed, shade, shadow, shadows

### shame

#### Related Ideas:

ashamed, shameful, shameless, unashamed

#### Definition:

The term "shame" refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

* Something that is "shameful" is "improper" or "dishonorable."
* The term "ashamed" describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
* The phrase "put to shame" means to cause someone to feel ashamed. It might be expose their sin or by defeating them.
* The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
* God can bring shame to a person who does not repent by exposing that person's sin and causing him to be humiliated.
* A person that is "unashamed" does not feel shame.
* A person is "shameless" if he does something shameful but does not feel ashamed.
* A "shameless act" is something a person should feel ashamed about doing, but he does not feel ashamed.

Sometimes the word "shame" is used figuratively to refer to a person's nakedness or private parts.

(See also: [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [humble](../kt/humble.md), [humiliate](../other/humiliate.md), [Isaiah](../names/isaiah.md), [repent](../kt/repent.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 03:15-17
* 2 Kings 02:17
* 2 Samuel 13:13
* Luke 20:11
* Mark 08:38
* Mark 12:4-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H937, H954, H955, H1317, H1322, H5949, H2616, H2659, H2781, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H7022, H7036, H8103, G149, G152, G153, G422, G808, G818, G819, G821, G1788, G1791, G1870, G2617, G3681, G3856, G5195

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ashamed, make ... ashamed, put ... to shame, shame, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, shames, unashamed

### sheep

#### Related Ideas:

ewe, ram, sheepfold, sheepshearer, sheepskin

#### Definition:

A "sheep" is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a "ram." A female sheep is called a "ewe." The plural of "sheep" is also "sheep."

* A baby sheep is called a "lamb."
* The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
* People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
* Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
* In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.
* A "sheepfold" is a place where sheep are kept safe. It has a fence or wall around it to keep the sheep from wandering out and to keep dangerous animals from getting in.
* A "sheepshearer" is a person who cuts the wool of sheep.

(See also: [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [lamb](../kt/lamb.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [shepherd](../other/shepherd.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:32
* Genesis 30:32
* John 02:14
* Luke 15:05
* Mark 06:34
* Matthew 09:36
* Matthew 10:06
* Matthew 12:12
* Matthew 25:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ewe, ewes, ram, ram's, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### shepherd

#### Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb to "shepherd" means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water.

Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.

This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people's spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live.

In the Old Testament, God was called the "shepherd" of his people because he took care of all their needs and protected them. He also led and guided them.

David was a shepherd who looked after sheep. God made David king over Israel to take care of the people of Israel in some ways like a shepherd takes care of sheep.

In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the "good shepherd." The apostle Peter also referred to Jesus as "the Chief Shepherd" over the Church.

Also, in the New Testament, the term "shepherd" was used to refer to a person who was a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as "pastor" is the same word that is translated as "shepherd." The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

#### Translation Suggestions

* When used literally, the action "shepherd" could be translated as "take care of sheep" or "watch over sheep."
* The person "shepherd" could be translated as "person who takes care of sheep" or "sheep tender" or "sheep caregiver."
* When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include "spiritual shepherd" or "spiritual leader" or "one who is like a shepherd" or "one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep" or "one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep" or "one who takes care of God's sheep."
* In some contexts, "shepherd" could be translated as "leader" or "guide" or "caregiver."
* The spiritual expression to "shepherd" could be translated as to "take care of" or to "spiritually nourish" or to "guide and teach" or to "lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep)."
* In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for "shepherd" in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [church](../kt/church.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [pastor](../kt/pastor.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 49:24
* Luke 02:09
* Mark 06:34
* Mark 14:26-27
* Matthew 02:06
* Matthew 09:36
* Matthew 25:32
* Matthew 26:31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G750, G4165, G4166

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

chief shepherd, herdsman, herdsmen, keeper, shepherd, shepherd's, shepherded, shepherding, shepherds

### sign

#### Related Ideas:

demonstration, evidence, mark, marker, omen, proof, remind, reminder, signal

#### Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

"Reminders" are signs that "remind" people by helping them remember something, often something that was promised:

The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.

God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.

Signs can reveal or point to something:

An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.

Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.

Signs can prove that something is true:

The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God's message.

The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

A "signal flag" is a flag that a king would raise as a sign so that people could see it and come to him or go into battle.

An "omen" is an event that people think tells that something else will happen in the future.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on its context, "sign" could also be translated as "signal" or "symbol" or "mark" or "evidence" or "proof" or "gesture."
* To "make signs with the hands" could also be translated as "motion with the hands" or "gesture with the hands" or "make gestures."
* In some languages, there may be one word for a "sign" that proves something and a different word for a "sign" that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](../kt/miracle.md), [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [circumcise](../kt/circumcise.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:18-19
* Exodus 04:8-9
* Exodus 31:12-15
* Genesis 01:14
* Genesis 09:12
* John 02:18
* Luke 02:12
* Mark 08:12
* Psalms 089:5-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H226, H852, H926, H2368, H2865, H3824, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5162, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, H7725, H8074, H8540, G364, G1271, G1382, G1730, G1732, G1770, G1839, G2298, G4102, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5059, H5172, G5280, G5480, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

demonstration, evidence, mark, marker, omen, omens, proof, remind, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, reminds, sign, signal, signal flag, signs

### sin

#### Related Ideas:

sinful, sinner

#### Definition:

The term "sin" refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

* Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
* Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called "sinful."
* Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a "sinful nature," a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
* A "sinner" is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
* Sometimes the word "sinners" was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
* The term "sinner" was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "sin" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "disobedience to God" or "going against God's will" or "evil behavior and thoughts" or "wrongdoing."
* To "sin" could also be translated as to "disobey God" or to "do wrong."
* Depending on the context "sinful" could be translated as "full of wrongdoing" or "wicked" or "immoral" or "evil" or "rebelling against God."
* Depending on the context the term "sinner" could be translated with a word or phrase that means, "person who sins" or "person who does wrong things" or "person who disobeys God" or "person who disobeys the law."
* The term "sinners" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "very sinful people" or "people considered to be very sinful" or "immoral people."
* Ways to translate "tax collectors and sinners" could include "people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people" or "very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors."
* In expressions like "slaves to sin" or "ruled by sin," the term "sin" could be translated as "disobedience" or "evil desires and actions."
* Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
* The term "sin" should be general, and different from the terms for "wickedness" and "evil."

(See also: [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [flesh](../kt/flesh.md), [tax collector](../other/tax.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
* 1 John 01:10
* 1 John 02:02
* 2 Samuel 07:12-14
* Acts 03:19
* Daniel 09:24
* Genesis 04:07
* Hebrews 12:02
* Isaiah 53:11
* Jeremiah 18:23
* Leviticus 04:14
* Luke 15:18
* Matthew 12:31
* Romans 06:23
* Romans 08:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H6588, H7683, H7686, G93, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sin, sinful, sinned, sinner, sinners, sinning, sins

### sin

#### Related Ideas:

sinful, sinner

#### Definition:

The term "sin" refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

* Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
* Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called "sinful."
* Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a "sinful nature," a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
* A "sinner" is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
* Sometimes the word "sinners" was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
* The term "sinner" was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "sin" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "disobedience to God" or "going against God's will" or "evil behavior and thoughts" or "wrongdoing."
* To "sin" could also be translated as to "disobey God" or to "do wrong."
* Depending on the context "sinful" could be translated as "full of wrongdoing" or "wicked" or "immoral" or "evil" or "rebelling against God."
* Depending on the context the term "sinner" could be translated with a word or phrase that means, "person who sins" or "person who does wrong things" or "person who disobeys God" or "person who disobeys the law."
* The term "sinners" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "very sinful people" or "people considered to be very sinful" or "immoral people."
* Ways to translate "tax collectors and sinners" could include "people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people" or "very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors."
* In expressions like "slaves to sin" or "ruled by sin," the term "sin" could be translated as "disobedience" or "evil desires and actions."
* Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
* The term "sin" should be general, and different from the terms for "wickedness" and "evil."

(See also: [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [flesh](../kt/flesh.md), [tax collector](../other/tax.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
* 1 John 01:10
* 1 John 02:02
* 2 Samuel 07:12-14
* Acts 03:19
* Daniel 09:24
* Genesis 04:07
* Hebrews 12:02
* Isaiah 53:11
* Jeremiah 18:23
* Leviticus 04:14
* Luke 15:18
* Matthew 12:31
* Romans 06:23
* Romans 08:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H6588, H7683, H7686, G93, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sin, sinful, sinned, sinner, sinners, sinning, sins

### sister

#### Definition:

A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person. She is said to be that other person’s sister or the sister of that other person.

* In the New Testament, "sister" is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
* Sometimes the phrase "brothers and sisters" is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
* In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, "sister" refers to a female lover or wife.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
* Other ways to translate this could include "sister in Christ" or "spiritual sister" or "woman who believes in Jesus" or "fellow woman believer."
* If possible, it is best to use a family term.
* If the language has a feminine form for "believer," this may be a possible way to translate this term.
* When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of "loved one" or "dear one."

(See also: [brother](../kt/brother.md) [in Christ](../kt/inchrist.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:16-17
* Deuteronomy 27:22
* Philemon 01:02
* Romans 16:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H269, G27, G79

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sister, sister's, sisters, sisters'

### slander

#### Related Ideas:

slanderer, slanderous, speak evil about

#### Definition:

Slander consists of negative, defaming things spoken (not written) about another person. To say such things (not to write them) about someone is to slander that person. The person saying such things is a slanderer.

* Slander may be a true report or a false accusation, but its effect is to cause others to think negatively of the person being slandered.
* To "slander" could be translated as to "speak against" or to "spread an evil report" or to "defame."
* The word "slanderer" could also be translated as "tale-bearer."

(See also: [blasphemy](../kt/blasphemy.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 04:13
* 1 Timothy 03:11
* 2 Corinthians 06:8-10
* Mark 07:20-23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1681, H1696, H1848, H3960, H5791, H7270, H7400, H8267, G987, G988, G1228, G1426, G2635, G2636, G2637, G3059, G3060

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

slander, slandered, slanderer, slanderers, slandering, slanderous, slanders, speak evil about, spoken of as evil

### son

#### Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their "son" for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An "adopted son" is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

* "Son" was often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
* The term "son" can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger than the speaker.
* Sometimes "sons of God" was used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
* God called Israel his "firstborn son." This refers to God's choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God's message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
* The phrase "son of" often has the figurative meaning "person having the characteristics of." Examples of this include "sons of the light," "sons of disobedience," "a son of peace," and "sons of thunder."
* The phrase "son of" is also used to tell who a person's father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
* Using "son of" to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, "Azariah son of Zadok" and "Azariah son of Nathan" in 1 Kings 4, and "Azariah son of Amaziah" in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate "son" by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
* When translating the term "Son of God," the project language's common term for "son" should be used.
* When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term "descendant" could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the "descendant of David" or in genealogies where sometimes "son" referred to a male descendant who was not an actual son.
* Sometimes "sons" can be translated as "children," when both males and females are being referred to. For example, "sons of God" could be translated as "children of God" since this expression also includes girls and women.
* The figurative expression "son of" could also be translated as "someone who has the characteristics of" or "someone who is like" or "someone who has" or "someone who acts like."

(See also: [Azariah](../names/azariah.md), [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [ancestor](../other/father.md), [firstborn](../other/firstborn.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [sons of God](../kt/sonsofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 18:15
* 1 Kings 13:02
* 1 Thessalonians 05:05
* Galatians 04:07
* Hosea 11:01
* Isaiah 09:06
* Matthew 03:17
* Matthew 05:09
* Matthew 08:12
* Nehemiah 10:28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1247, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

son, son's, sons

### soul

#### Related Ideas:

person

#### Definition:

The soul is the inner, invisible part of a person. It refers to the non-physical part of a person. It is the part of a person that continues living after the body dies.

* The terms "soul" and "spirit" may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
* When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
* The word "soul" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, "the soul who sins" means "the person who sins" and "my soul is tired" means,"I am tired."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "soul" could also be translated as "inner self" or "inner person."
* In some contexts, "my soul" could be translated as "I" or "me."
* Usually the phrase "the soul" can be translated as "the person" or "he" or "him," depending on the context.
* Some languages might only have one word for the concepts "soul" and "spirit."
* In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase "dividing soul and spirit" could mean "deeply discerning or exposing the inner person."

(See also: [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 02:08
* Acts 02:27-28
* Acts 02:41
* Genesis 49:06
* Isaiah 53:10-11
* James 01:21
* Jeremiah 06:16-19
* Jonah 02:7-8
* Luke 01:47
* Matthew 22:37
* Psalms 019:07
* Revelation 20:4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5315, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

person, persons, soul, souls

### sow

#### Related Ideas:

plant, plantation, transplanted

#### Definition:

A "plant" is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground. To "plant" something is to put it in the ground so that it can grow. To "sow" is to scatter seeds on the ground so they can go into the ground and grow. A "sower" is a person who sows seeds.

* Sometimes people plant seeds or plants by making holes in the soil and placing seeds or a plant in each hole.
* When someone plants seeds by sowing, he takes handfuls of seeds and scatters them on the ground.
* The term "sow" can be used figuratively, as in "a person will reap what he sows." This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result, and if a person does good, he will receive a positive result.
* A "plantation" is a large field where people plant crops.
* To "transplant" something is to move it from one place and plant it in another place.

#### Translations Suggestions

* The term "sow" could be translated as "plant" if that word can include planting seeds by scattering them.
* The term "sower" could be translated as "planter" or "farmer" or "person who scatters seeds."
* The expression "a person reaps what he sows" could be translated as "just as a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, a person's good actions bring good results and a person's evil actions bring evil results."

(See also: [evil](../kt/evil.md), [good](../kt/good.md), [reap](../other/reap.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 06:08
* Luke 08:05
* Matthew 06:25-26
* Matthew 13:04
* Matthew 13:19
* Matthew 25:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2221, H2232, H2233, H2236, H3759, H4218, H4302, H5193, H7971, H8362, G4687, G4703, G5452

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

place ... planted, plant, plantation, planted, planting, plants, replanted, sow, sowed, sowing, sown, sows, transplanted

### spirit

#### Related Ideas:

ghost, spiritual

#### Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

* The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
* A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
* In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
* In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
* For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
* God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
* Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
* The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
* Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
* In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
* Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
* The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
* Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
* The figurative expression "spiritual milk" could also be translated as "basic teachings from God" or "God's teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does)."
* The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
* The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: [angel](../kt/angel.md), [demon](../kt/demon.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [soul](../kt/soul.md), [divination](../other/divination.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 05:05
* 1 John 04:03
* 1 Thessalonians 05:23
* Acts 05:09
* Colossians 01:09
* Ephesians 04:23
* Genesis 07:21-22
* Isaiah 04:04
* Mark 01:23-26
* Matthew 26:41
* Philippians 01:27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H178, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G4861, G5326, G5427

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ghost, spirit, spirits, spiritual, spiritually

### staff

#### Related Ideas:

club, walking stick

#### Definition:

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

* When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
* God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
* Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
* The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, so it differed from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals that were trying to attack the sheep.
* A club is a thick, heavy stick used as a weapon to beat people.

(See also: [Pharaoh](../names/pharaoh.md), [power](../kt/power.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md), [shepherd](../other/shepherd.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 04:1-3
* Exodus 07:09
* Luke 09:03
* Mark 06:7-9
* Matthew 10:8-10
* Matthew 27:29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4132, H4294, H4731, H4938, H6418, H7626, G2563, G3586, G4464

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

clubs, staff, staffs, walking stick, walking sticks

### stone

#### Definition:

A stone is a small rock. To "stone" someone is to throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A "stoning" is an event in which someone was stoned.

* In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
* God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
* In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
* Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
* In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: [adultery](../kt/adultery.md), [commit](../other/commit.md), [crime](../other/criminal.md), [death](../other/death.md), [Lystra](../names/lystra.md), [testimony](../kt/testimony.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:57-58
* Acts 07:59-60
* Acts 14:05
* Acts 14:19-20
* John 08:4-6
* Luke 13:34
* Luke 20:06
* Matthew 23:37-39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H68, H69, H1382, H1496, H1530, H2106, H2672, H4676, H4678, H5619, H6443, H6697, H6872, H7275, H7671, G2642, G2991, G3034, G3035, G3036, G3037, G4348, G5586

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

stone, stoned, stones, stoning

### strength

#### Related Ideas:

strengthen, strong, stronger, strongest

#### Definitions:

The term "strength" refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To "strengthen" someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

* "Strength" can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
* A person has "strength of will" if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
* One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his "strength" because God helped him to be strong.
* If a physical structure like a wall or building is being "strengthened," people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

#### Translation Suggestions

In general, the term "strengthen" can be translated as "cause to be strong" or "make more powerful."

In a spiritual sense, the phrase "strengthen your brothers" could also be translated as "encourage your brothers" or "help your brothers to persevere."

The following examples show the meaning of these terms in longer expressions and how they can be translated.

"puts strength on me like a belt" means "causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist."

"in quietness and trust will be your strength" means "acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong."

"will renew their strength" means "will become stronger again."

"by my strength and by my wisdom I acted" means "I have done all this because I am so strong and wise."

"strengthen the wall" means "reinforce the wall" or "rebuild the wall."

"I will strengthen you" means "I will cause you to be strong"

"in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength" means "Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us."

"the rock of your strength" means "the faithful one who makes you strong"

"with the saving strength of his right hand" means "he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand."

"of little strength" means "not very strong" or "weak."

"with all my strength" means "using my best efforts" or "strongly and completely."

(See also: [faithful](../kt/faithful.md), [persevere](../other/perseverance.md), [right hand](../kt/righthand.md), [save](../kt/save.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 18:19-21
* 2 Peter 02:11
* Luke 10:27
* Psalm 021:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H1368, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2389, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4392, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5794, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6099, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8623, H8624, H8631, H8632, H8633, G461, G950, G1411, G1412, G1415, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1991, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

become strong, made ... strong, made ... stronger, make ... strong, makes ... strong, strength, strengthen, strengthened, strengthening, strengthens, strong, stronger, strongest

### stumble

#### Related Ideas:

reel

#### Definition:

The term "stumble" means "almost fall" when walking or running. Usually it involves tripping over something.

* Figuratively, to "stumble" can mean to "sin" or to "falter" in believing.
* This term can also refer to faltering or showing weakness when fighting a battle or when being persecuted or punished.
* "Stumble" can also be used figuratively to mean "sin" or "stop believing.""
* The word "reel" means to lose one's balance and have trouble walking.

#### Translation Suggestions

* In contexts where the term "stumble" means to physically trip over something, it should be translated with a term that means "almost fall" or "trip over."
* When stumble is used figuratively it could also be translated as "become weak" or "stumble by sinning" or "stumble by not believing."
* The phrase "made to stumble" could be translated as "caused to become weak" or "caused to falter."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [persecute](../other/persecute.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [stumbling block](../other/stumblingblock.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 02:08
* Hosea 04:05
* Isaiah 31:3
* Matthew 11:4-6
* Matthew 18:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1762, H3782, H4383, H5062, H5063, H5307, H6328, H6761, H8058, G679, G4348, G4350, G4417, G4624, G4625

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

causes ... to stumble, reeling, stumble, stumbled, stumbles, stumbling

### suffer

#### Related Ideas:

misery

#### Definition:

The terms "suffer" and "suffering" refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

* When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
* Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
* Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
* 'Misery' is what a person feels when they suffer.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "suffer" can be translated as "feel pain" or "endure difficulty" or "experience hardships" or "go through difficult and painful experiences."
* Depending on the context, "suffering" could be translated as "extremely difficult circumstances" or "severe hardships" or "experiencing hardship" or "time of painful experiences."
* The phrase "suffer thirst" could be translated as "experience thirst" or "suffer with thirst."
* To "suffer violence" could also be translated as "undergo violence" or "be harmed by violent acts."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
* 2 Thessalonians 01:3-5
* 2 Timothy 01:08
* Acts 07:11-13
* Isaiah 53:11
* Jeremiah 06:6-8
* Matthew 16:21
* Psalms 022:24
* Revelation 01:09
* Romans 05:3-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H816, H943, H1741, H1934, H4531, G4912, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6001, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7489, H7661, G91, G941, G971, G2210, G2346, G2347, G2552, G2553, G2561, G3804, G3958, G4310, G4778, G4777, G4841, G5004

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

miseries, suffer, suffered, suffering, sufferings, suffers

### sword

#### Related Ideas:

dagger, swordsmen

#### Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

* In ancient times the length of a sword’s blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
* Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
* Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
* Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.
* A "dagger" is a short sword used to stab people who are close by.

#### Translation Suggestions

* A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain.
* One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
* Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
* If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
* A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [James (brother of Jesus)](../names/jamesbrotherofjesus.md), [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [tongue](../other/tongue.md), [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 12:02
* Genesis 27:40
* Genesis 34:25
* Luke 02:33-35
* Luke 21:24
* Matthew 10:34
* Matthew 26:55
* Revelation 01:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H19, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dagger, sword, swords, swordsmen

### synagogue

#### Definition:

A synagogue is a building where Jewish people meet together to worship God.

* Since ancient times, a synagogue's services have included times of prayer, scripture reading, and teaching about the scriptures.
* The Jews originally started building synagogues as places to pray and worship God in their own cities, because many of them lived far away from the temple in Jerusalem.
* Jesus often taught in synagogues and healed people there.
* The word "synagogue" can be used figuratively to refer to the group of people meeting there.

(See also: [heal](../other/heal.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md), [Jew](../kt/jew.md), [pray](../kt/pray.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md), [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:09
* Acts 14:1-2
* Acts 15:21
* Acts 24:10-13
* John 06:59
* Luke 04:14
* Matthew 06:1-2
* Matthew 09:35-36
* Matthew 13:54

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G656, G752, G4864

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

synagogue, synagogues

### tax

#### Related Ideas:

tax collector, taxation, taxpayers, toll

#### Definition:

The terms "tax" and "taxes" refer to money or goods that people pay to a government that is in authority over them. A "tax collector" was a government worker whose job was to receive money that people were required to pay the government in taxes.

* The amount of money that is paid as a tax is usually based on the value of an item or on how much a person's property is worth.
* In the time of Jesus and the apostles, the Roman government required taxes from everyone living in the Roman empire, including the Jews.
* If taxes are not paid, the government can take legal action against a person to get the money that is owed.
* Joseph and Mary traveled to Bethlehem to be counted in the census held to tax everyone living in the Roman empire.
* The term "tax" could also be translated as, "required payment" or "government money" or "temple money," depending on the context.
* To "pay taxes" could also be translated as to "pay money to the government" or "receive money for the government" or "make the required payment." To "collect taxes" could be translated as to "receive money for the government.
* A "tax collector" is someone who works for the government and receives the money that people are required to pay it.
* The people who collected taxes for the Roman government would often demand more money from the people than the government required. The tax collectors would keep the extra amount for themselves.
* Because tax collectors cheated people in this way, the Jews considered them to be among the worst of sinners.
* The Jews also considered Jewish tax collectors to be traitors to their own people because they worked for the Roman government which was oppressing the Jewish people.
* The phrase, "tax collectors and sinners" was a common expression in the New Testament, showing how much the Jews despised tax collectors.
* A "toll" is a tax for using a road or a tax on things that people by or sell.

(See also: [Jew](../kt/jew.md), [Rome](../names/rom.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md))

#### Bible References

* Luke 20:21-22
* Mark 02:13-14
* Matthew 09:7-9
* Numbers 31:28-29
* Romans 13:6-7
* Luke 03:12-13
* Luke 05:27-28
* Matthew 05:46-48
* Matthew 09:10-11
* Matthew 11:18-19
* Matthew 17:26-27
* Matthew 18:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1093, H1983, H2670, H4060, H4371, H4522, H4864, H5065, H5674, H6186, G1323, G2778, G5057, G5058, G5411

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tax, tax collector, tax collectors, taxation, taxed, taxes, taxing, taxpayers, toll, tolls

### teach

#### Related Ideas:

educated, teaching, untaught

#### Definition:

To "teach" someone is to tell him something he doesn’t already know. It can also mean to "provide information" in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person’s "teaching" is or his "teachings" are what he has taught.

* A "teacher" is someone who teaches. The past action of "teach" is "taught."
* When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
* Jesus' disciples called him "Teacher" as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
* The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
* The phrase "what you have been taught" could also be translated as, "what these people have taught you" or "what God has taught you," depending on the context.
* Other ways to translate "teach" could include "tell" or "explain" or "instruct."
* Often this term can be translated as "teaching people about God."
* A person who is "educated" has been taught formally.
* A person who is "untaught" has not been taught.
* A "teaching" is the information that someone teaches.

(See also: [instruct](../other/instruct.md), [teacher](../other/teacher.md), [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 01:03
* Acts 02:40-42
* John 07:14
* Luke 04:31
* Matthew 04:23
* Psalms 032:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H502, H995, H2094, H2449, H2596, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, H8451, G1317, G1319, G1321, G1322, G2085, G2605, G2727, G2312, G2567, G3811

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

educated, taught, teach, teaches, teaching, teachings, untaught

### teacher

#### Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

* In the Bible, the word "teacher" is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
* People who learn from a teacher are called "students" or "disciples."
* In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized ("Teacher") when it is used as a title for Jesus.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
* Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as "Sir" or "Rabbi" or "Preacher."

(See also: [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [preach](../other/preach.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ecclesiastes 01:12-15
* Ephesians 04:11-13
* Galatians 06:6-8
* Habakkuk 02:18
* James 03:02
* John 01:37-39
* Luke 06:40
* Matthew 12:38-40

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3384, H3887, H3925, G1320, G2567, G3547, G5572

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

teacher, teachers

### temple

#### Related Ideas:

shrine

#### Definitions:

A temple is a special building in which people worship their god or gods. The most important temple in the Bible was where the Israelites worshiped the true God with prayers and sacrifices. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

* Often the term "temple" referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
* The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
* God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
* King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
* In the New Testament, the term "temple of the Holy Spirit" is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.
* A "shrine" is a small place where people worship or an object of worship.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Usually when the text says that people were "in the temple," it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as "in the temple courtyards" or "in the temple complex."
* Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate "temple" as "temple building," to make it the reference clear.
* Ways to translate "temple" could include, "God's holy house" or "sacred worship place."
* Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as "the house of Yahweh" or "the house of God."

(See also: [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [Solomon](../names/solomon.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [courtyard](../other/courtyard.md), [Zion](../kt/zion.md), [house](../other/house.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 03:02
* Acts 03:08
* Ezekiel 45:18-20
* Luke 19:46
* Nehemiah 10:28
* Psalm 079:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1002, H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3624, G3485

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

shrine, shrines, temple, temples

### tempt

#### Related Ideas:

temptation, tempter

#### Definition:

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

* A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
* People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
* Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
* Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
* Someone who is "tempting God" is not trying to get him to do something wrong, but rather, is continuing in stubborn disobedience of him to the point that God must respond by punishing him. This is also called "testing God."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "tempt" can be translated as, "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
* Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong.
* To "tempt God" could be translated as to "put God to the test" or to "test God" or to "try God's patience" or to "cause God to have to punish" or to "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [Satan](../kt/satan.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [test](../kt/test.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 03:4-5
* Hebrews 04:15
* James 01:13
* Luke 04:02
* Luke 11:04
* Matthew 26:41

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4531, H5254, G551, G3985, G3986, G3987

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tempt, temptation, tempted, tempter, tempting

### tent

#### Related Ideas:

camp, encamp, tentmaker

#### Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

* Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
* For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constucted from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
* The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
* The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
* When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
* The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies."
* To "camp" is to sleep in tents or other temporary shelters.
* To "encamp" is for an army to set up camp near a place they will attack.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [curtain](../other/curtain.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [Sinai](../names/sinai.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [tent of meeting](../other/tentofmeeting.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 05:10
* Daniel 11:45
* Exodus 16:18
* Genesis 12:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H167, H168, H2918, H3407, H4908, H6898, G3925, G4633, G4636

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

camp, camped, camping, camps, encamp, encamped, encampments, encamps, tent, tentmakers, tents

### test

#### Related Ideas:

put to the test

#### Definition:

The term "test" refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person's strengths and weaknesses.

* God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
* God sometimes uses tests to expose people's sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
* Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
* To "put to the test" can mean, "challenge something or someone to prove its value."
* In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
* Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term to "test" could also be translated as, to "challenge" or to "cause to experience difficulties" or to "prove."
* Ways to translate "a test" could be, "a challenge" or "a difficult experience."
* To "put to the test" could be translated as to "test" or to "set up a challenge" or to "force to prove oneself."
* In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, "trying to force God to prove his love."
* In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term "test" can mean "tempt."

(See also: [tempt](../kt/tempt.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:01
* 1 Thessalonians 05:21
* Acts 15:10
* Genesis 22:01
* Isaiah 07:13
* James 01:12
* Lamentations 03:40-43
* Malachi 03:10
* Philippians 01:10
* Psalm 026:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1305, H2713, H5254, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G350, G1252, G1263, G1381, G1382, G1598, G1957, G2983, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3984, G3985, G3986, G4451, G4828

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

put ... to the test, test, tested, testing, tests

### testimony

#### Related Ideas:

eyewitness, testify, witness

#### Definition:

When a person gives "testimony" he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To "testify" is to give "testimony."

* Often a person "testifies" about something he has experienced directly.
* A witness who gives "false testimony" does not tell the truth about what happened.
* Sometimes the term "testimony" refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
* In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus' followers testified about the events of Jesus' life, death, and resurrection.

The term "witness" refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term "eyewitness" emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

* To "witness" something means to see it happen.
* At a trial, a witness "gives witness" or "bears witness." This has the same meaning as "testify."
* Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
* A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a "false witness." He is said to "give false witness" or to "bear false witness."
* The expression "be a witness between" means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "testify" and "testimony":

* The term "testify" or "give testimony" could also be translated as, "tell the facts" or "tell what was seen or heard" or "tell from personal experience" or "tell what happened."
* Ways to translate "testimony" could include, "report of what happened" or "statement of what is true" or "what has been said."
* The phrase, "as a testimony to them" could be translated as, to "show them what is true" or to "prove to them what is true."
* The phrase, "as a testimony against them" could be translated as, "which will show them their sin" or "exposing their hypocrisy" or "which will prove that they are wrong."
* To "give false testimony" could be translated as "say false things about" or "state things that are not true."

Translating "witness" and "eyewitness":

* The term "witness" or "eyewitness" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "person seeing it" or "the one who saw it happen" or "those who saw and heard (those things)."
* Something that is "a witness" could be translated as "guarantee" or "sign of our promise" or "something that testifies that this is true."
* The phrase "you will be my witnesses" could also be translated as "you will tell other people about me" or "you will teach people the truth that I taught you" or "you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach."
* To "witness to" could be translated as to "tell what was seen" or to "testify" or to "state what happened."
* To "witness" something could be translated as to "see something that happens" or to "experience something that happens."

(See also: [ark of the covenant](../kt/arkofthecovenant.md), [guilt](../kt/guilt.md), [judge](../kt/judge.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [true](../kt/true.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 31:28
* Micah 06:03
* Matthew 26:60
* Mark 01:44
* John 01:07
* John 03:33
* Acts 04:32-33
* Acts 07:44
* Acts 13:31
* Romans 01:09
* 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
* 1 Timothy 05:19-20
* 2 Timothy 01:08
* 2 Peter 01:16-18
* 1 John 05:6-8
* 3 John 01:12
* Revelation 12:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H6315, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

eyewitness, eyewitnesses, testified, testifies, testify, testify against, testifying, testimony, witness, witnessed, witnesses

### the sea

#### Facts:

In the Bible, the "Great Sea" or "western sea" refers to what is now called the "Mediterranean Sea," which was the largest body of water known to the people of Bible times.

* The Mediterranean Sea is bordered by : Israel (east), Europe (north and west), and Africa (south).
* This sea was very important in ancient times for trade and travel since it bordered so many countries. Cities and people groups located on the coast of this sea were very prosperous because of how easy it was to access goods from other countries by boat.
* Since the Great Sea was located to the west of Israel, it was sometimes referred to as the "western sea."

(See also: [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [people group](../other/peoplegroup.md), [prosper](../other/prosper.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 47:15-17
* Ezekiel 47:18-20
* Joshua 15:3-4
* Numbers 13:27-29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H314, H1419, H3220

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea

### the twelve

#### Related Ideas:

the eleven

#### Definition:

The term "the twelve" refers to the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his closest disciples, or apostles. After Judas killed himself, they were called "the eleven."

* Jesus had many other disciples, but the title "the twelve" distinguished those who were apparently closest to Jesus.
* The names of these twelve disciples are listed in Matthew 10, Mark 3, and Luke 6.
* Some time after Jesus had returned to heaven, "the eleven" chose a disciple named Matthias to take Judas' place. Then they were called "the twelve" again.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* For many languages it may be clearer or more natural to add the noun and say, "the twelve apostles" or "Jesus' twelve closest disciples."
* "The eleven" could also be translated as "Jesus' eleven remaining disciples."
* Some translations may prefer to use a capital letter to show that it was used as a title, as in "the Twelve" and "the Eleven."

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [disciple](../kt/disciple.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 15:5-7
* Acts 06:02
* Luke 09:01
* Luke 18:31
* Mark 10:32-34
* Matthew 10:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1427, G1733

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

the eleven, the twelve

### thorn

#### Related Ideas:

thistle, thornbush

#### Definitions:

Thorn bushes and thistles are plants that have prickly branches or flowers. These plants do not produce fruit or anything else that is useful.

* A "thorn" is a hard, sharp growth on the branch or stem of a plant. A "thornbush" is a type of small tree or shrub that has many thorns on its branches.
* A "thistle" is a plant with prickly stems and leaves. Often the flowers are purple.
* Thorn and thistle plants multiply quickly and can cause nearby plants or crops to not be able to grow. This is a picture of how sin keeps a person from producing good spiritual fruit.
* A crown made of twisted thorn branches was placed on Jesus' head before he was crucified.
* If possible, these terms should be translated by the names of two different plants or bushes that are known in the language area.

(See also: [crown](../other/crown.md), [fruit](../other/fruit.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Hebrews 06:7-8
* Matthew 13:07
* Matthew 13:22
* Numbers 33:55

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H329, H1863, H2312, H2336, H4534, H5285, H5518, H5544, H6791, H6796, H6975, H7063, H7898, G173, G174, G4647, G5146

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

thistle, thistles, thorn, thorn hedge, thornbush, thornbushes, thorns

### time

#### Definitions:

In the Bible the term "time" was often used to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to "age" or "epoch" or "season."

* In both Daniel and Revelation speak of a "time" of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
* In the phrase "time, times, and half a time" the term "time" means "year." This phrase refers to a three-and-a-half-year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
* "Time" can mean "occasion" in a phrase like "third time." The phrase "many times" can mean "on many occasions."
* To be "on time" means to do something when expected or needed, not late.
* Depending on the context, the term "time" could be translated as, "season" or "time period" or "moment" or "event" or "occurrence."

(See also: [age](../other/age.md), [tribulation](../other/tribulation.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:07
* Daniel 12:1-2
* Mark 11:11
* Matthew 08:29
* Psalms 068:28-29
* Revelation 14:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H116, H227, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H4592, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6235, H6256, H6440, H6471, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8160, H8462, H8543, G744, G530, G1074, G1208, G1441, G1597, G1626, G2034, G2119, G2121, G2250, G2540, G3461, G3568, G3764, G3819, G3999, G4181, G4183, G4218, G4287, G4340, G4455, G5151, G5305, G5550, G5551, G5610

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

time, times

### tomb

#### Related Ideas:

burial place, grave, gravediggers

#### Definition:

The terms "tomb" and "grave" refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A "burial place" is a more general term that also refers to this.

* The Jews buried bodies in natural caves, in caves that they dug in the side of a hill, or in holes that they dug in the ground.
* In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
* If in the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include "cave" or "hole in the side of a hill."
* A gravedigger is a person who digs a grave to put a dead body in it.
* The phrase "the grave" is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](../other/bury.md), [death](../other/death.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:29-31
* Genesis 23:06
* Genesis 50:05
* John 19:41
* Luke 23:53
* Mark 05:1-2
* Matthew 27:53
* Romans 03:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G3418, G3419, G5028

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

burial place, grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs

### tongue

#### Related Ideas:

language

#### Definition:

There are several figurative meanings of "tongue" in the Bible.

* In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is "language" or "speech."
* Sometimes "tongue" may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
* Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the "gifts of the Spirit."
* The expression "tongues" of fire refers to "flames" of fire.
* In the expression "my tongue rejoices," the term "tongue" refers to the whole person.
* The phrase "lying tongue" refers to a person's voice or speech. (See: [metonymy](rc://en/ta/man/jit/figs-metonymy))

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, the term "tongue" can be translated by "language" or "spiritual language." If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as "language."
* When referring to fire, this term could be translated as "flames."
* The expression "my tongue rejoices" could be translated as "I rejoice and praise God" or "I am joyfully praising God."
* The phrase, "tongue that lies" could be translated as "person who tell lies" or "people who lie."
* Phrases such as "with their tongues" could be translated as "with what they say" or "by their words."

(See also: [gift](../kt/gift.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [joy](../other/joy.md), [praise](../other/praise.md), [rejoice](../other/joy.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 12:10
* 1 John 03:18
* 2 Samuel 23:02
* Acts 02:26
* Ezekiel 36:03
* Philippians 02:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3956, G1100, G1258, G2084, G5456

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

language, languages, tongue, tongues

### torment

#### Related Ideas:

tormentors, torture, torturer

#### Definitions:

The term "torment" refers to terrible suffering. To "torment" or "torture" someone means to cause that person to suffer, often in a cruel way.

* Sometimes the term "torment" refers to strong physical pain and suffering. For example, the book of Revelation describes physical torment that worshipers of the "beast" will suffer in the end times.
* Sometimes the term "torment" refers to strong spiritual and emotional pain, as experienced by Job.
* The apostle John wrote in the book of Revelation that people who do not believe in Jesus as their Savior will experience eternal torment in the lake of fire.
* The term "torment" could be translated as "terrible suffering" or "cause someone to suffer greatly" or "agony." Some translators may add "physical" or "spiritual" to make the meaning clear.
* A "tormentor" or a "torturer" is someone who torments or tortures other people.

(See also: [beast](../other/beast.md), [everlasting](../kt/eternity.md), [Job](../names/job.md), [Savior](../kt/savior.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md), [suffer](../other/suffer.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 02:08
* Jeremiah 30:20-22
* Lamentations 01:11-12
* Luke 08:28-29
* Revelation 11:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3013, H6735, G928, G929, G930, G931, G3600

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

torment, tormented, tormenting, tormentors, torture, torturers

### tradition

#### Definition:

The term "tradition" refers to a custom or practice that has been kept over time and which is passed down to people in later generations.

* Often in the Bible the word "traditions" referred to teachings and practices that people made, not God's laws. The expression "tradition of men" or "human tradition" makes this clear.
* Phrases such as "traditions of the elders" or "traditions of my fathers" referred specifically to Jewish customs and practices that Jewish leaders over time had added to the laws God gave to the Israelites through Moses. Even though these added traditions had not come from God, people thought they had to obey them in order to be righteous.
* The apostle Paul used the term "tradition" in a different way to refer to teachings about Christian practice that came from God and that he and other apostles had taught new believers.
* In modern times, there are many Christian traditions that are not taught in the Bible, but rather are the result of historically accepted customs and practices. These traditions should always be evaluated in light of what God teaches us in the Bible.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md), [Christian](../kt/christian.md), [ancestor](../other/father.md), [generation](../other/generation.md), [Jew](../kt/jew.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
* Colossians 02:08
* Galatians 01:13-14
* Mark 07:02
* Matthew 15:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3862

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tradition, traditions

### tremble

#### Related Ideas:

shake

#### Definition:

To "tremble" means to shake or quiver out of fear or extreme distress.

* This term is also used figuratively to mean "be very afraid."
* Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to "tremble." It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
* The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
* This term could be translated as "be afraid" or "fear God" or "shake," depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](../other/earth.md), [fear](../kt/fear.md), [Lord](../kt/lord.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 07:15
* 2 Samuel 22:44-46
* Acts 16:29-31
* Jeremiah 05:22
* Luke 08:47

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5425, H5568, H6206, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, G1790, G4579, G5141, G5156, G5425

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

shake, shakes, shook, tremble, trembled, trembles, trembling

### trespass

#### Definition:

To "trespass" means to break a law or to violate the rights of another person. A "trespass" is the action of "trespassing."

* A trespass can be a violation of moral or civil law or a sin committed against another person.
* This term is related to the terms "sin," and "transgress," especially as it relates to disobeying God.
* All sins are trespasses against God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, to "trespass against" could be translated as to "sin against" or to "break the rule."
* Some languages may have an expression like "cross the line" that could be used to translate "trespass."
* Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as "transgress" and "sin."

(See also: [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [iniquity](../kt/iniquity.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [transgress](../kt/transgression.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 25:28
* 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
* Colossians 02:13
* Ephesians 02:01
* Ezekiel 15:7-8
* Romans 05:17
* Romans 05:20-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H819, H4604, H6588, G264, G3900

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

trespass, trespassed, trespasses

### tribulation

#### Related Ideas:

distress

#### Definition:

The term "tribulation" refers to a time of hardship, suffering, and distress.

* It is explained in the New Testament that Christians will endure times of persecution and other kinds of tribulation because many people in this world are opposed to Jesus' teachings.
* "The Great Tribulation" is a term used in the Bible to describe a period of time just before Jesus' second coming when God's wrath will be poured out on the earth for several years.
* The term "tribulation" could also be translated as "time of great suffering" or "deep distress" or "severe difficulties."

(See also: [earth](../other/earth.md), [teach](../other/teach.md), [wrath](../kt/wrath.md))

#### Bible References:

* Mark 04:17
* Mark 13:19
* Matthew 13:20-21
* Matthew 24:09
* Matthew 24:29
* Romans 02:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4689, H4691, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7185, H7451, G1453, G1568, G2347, G3076, G4912, G4928

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

distress, distressed, distresses, tribulation, tribulations

### tribute

#### Definition:

The term "tribute" refers to a gift from one ruler to another ruler, for the purpose of protection and for good relations between their nations.

* A tribute can also be a payment that a ruler or government requires from the people, such as a toll or tax.
* In Bible times, traveling kings or rulers sometimes paid a tribute to the king of the region they were traveling through to make sure they would be protected and safe.
* Often the tribute would include things besides money, such as foods, spices, rich clothing, and expensive metals such as gold.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "tribute" could be translated as "official gifts" or "special tax" or "required payment."

(See also: [gold](../other/gold.md), [king](../other/king.md), [ruler](../other/ruler.md), [tax](../other/tax.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 18:1-2
* 2 Chronicles 09:22-24
* 2 Kings 17:03
* Luke 23:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H814, H1093, H4061, H4503, H4530, H4853, H4864, H6066, H7862, G5411

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tribute

### trouble

#### Related Ideas:

troublesome

#### Definition:

A "trouble" is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To "trouble" someone means to "bother" that person or to cause him distress. Something that is "troubling" causes people to feel distressed. Someone who is troublesome causes problems. To be "troubled" means to feel upset or anxious or distressed about something.

A "tumult" is a group of people making much noise because they are troubled or unhappy.

* Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
* In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
* The Old Testament use of "trouble" also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The term "trouble" or "troubles" could also be translated as "danger" or "painful things that happen" or "persecution" or "difficult experiences" or "distress."
* The term "troubled" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "undergoing distress" or "feeling terrible distress" or "worried" or "anxious" or "distressed" or "terrified" or "disturbed."
* "Don't trouble her" could also be translated as "don't bother her" or "don't criticize her."
* The phrase "day of trouble" or "times of trouble" could also be translated as "when you experience distress" or " when difficult things happen to you" or "when God causes distressing things to happen."
* Ways to translate "make trouble" or "bring trouble" could include "cause distressing things to happen" or "cause difficulties" or "make them experience very difficult things."

(See also: [afflict](../other/afflict.md), [persecute](../other/persecute.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 18:18-19
* 2 Chronicles 25:19
* Luke 24:38
* Matthew 24:06
* Matthew 26:36-38

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H926, H927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1672, H2196, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6087, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G318, G387, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2873, G2906, G3636, G3926, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5182

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

trouble, troubled, troubles, troublesome, troubling

### tunic

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "tunic" referred to a garment that was worn next to the skin, under other clothing.

* A tunic reached from the shoulders down to the waist or knees and was usually worn with a belt. Tunics worn by wealthy people sometimes had sleeves and reached down to the ankles.
* Tunics were made of leather, haircloth, wool, or linen, and were worn by both men and women.
* A tunic was normally worn under a longer over-garment, such as a toga or outer robe. In warmer weather a tunic was sometimes worn with no outer garment.
* This term could be translated as "long shirt" or "long undergarment" or "shirt-like garment." It could also be written in a similar way to "tunic," with a note to explain what kind of clothing it was.

(See Also: [robe](../other/robe.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 03:21-23
* Isaiah 22:21
* Leviticus 08:12-13
* Luke 03:11
* Mark 06:7-9
* Matthew 10:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2243, H3801, H6361, G5509

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tunic, tunics

### turn

#### Related Ideas:

apostasy, apostate

#### Definition:

To "turn" means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

* The term "turn" can also mean "turn around" to look behind or to face a different direction.
* To "turn back" or "turn away" means to "go back" or "go away" or "cause to go away."
* To "turn away from" something can mean either to stop doing it or to not start doing it.
* To "turn away from" someone means either to refuse to have anything to do with him or to reject him.
* To "turn toward" someone means to look directly at that person.
* To "turn and leave" or "turn his back to leave" means to "go away."
* To "turn back to" means to "start doing something again."
* To "turn away from" means to "stop doing something."
* To "avoid" something is to stay away from it.
* "Apostasy" is the act of turning away from God.
* An "act of apostasy" is an action that someone does to show that he no longer wants to obey God or because he no longer obeys God.
* The term "apostate" describes people who have turned away from God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "turn" can be translated as "change direction" or "go" or "move."
* In some contexts, "turn" could be translated as "cause" (someone) to do something. To "turn (someone) away from" could be translated as "cause (someone) to go away" or "cause (someone) to stop."
* The phrase "turn away from God" could be translated as "stop worshiping God."
* The phrase "turn back to God" could be translated as "start worshiping God again."
* When enemies "turn back," it means they "retreat." To "turn back the enemy" means to "cause the enemy to retreat."
* Used figuratively, when Israel "turned to" false gods, they "started to worship" them. When they "turned away" from idols, they "stopped worshiping" them.
* When God "turned away from" his rebellious people, he "stopped protecting" or "stopped helping" them.
* The phrase "turn the hearts of the fathers to their children" could be translated as "cause fathers to care for their children again."
* The expression "turn my honor into shame" could be translated as "cause my honor to become shame" or "dishonor me so that I am shamed" or "shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me."
* "I will turn your cities into ruin" could be translated as "I will cause your cities to be destroyed" or "I will cause enemies to destroy your cities."
* The phrase "turn into" could be translated as "become." When Moses' rod "turned into" a snake, it "became" a snake." It could also be translated as "changed into."

(See also: [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [leprosy](../other/leprosy.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 11:02
* Acts 07:42
* Acts 11:21
* Jeremiah 36:1-3
* Luke 01:17
* Malachi 04:06
* Revelation 11:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H541, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3363, H3943, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H6437, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G344, G387, G654, G665, G868, G1294, G1578, G1612, G1624, G1994, G3179, G3313, G3329, G3344, G3346, G4762, G5157, G5290

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

acts of apostasy, apostasy, apostate, turn, turn ... away, turned, turned ... away, turned ... away ... in disgust, turned ... back, turning, turning ... away, turns, turns ... away, turns ... away from

### understand

#### Related Ideas:

argument, craftiness, insight, intelligent, realize, unintentionally, without understanding

#### Definition:

The term "understand" means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

* The term "understanding" can refer to "knowledge" or "wisdom" or realizing how to do something.
* To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
* A person who is "without understanding" does not understand.
* While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
* Depending on the context, the term "understand" could be translated by "know" or "believe" or "comprehend" or "know what (something) means."
* Often the term "understanding" can be translated by "knowledge" or "wisdom" or "insight."
* "Arguments" are statements that one person makes to share his understanding with another person and to convince that other person to understand something the same way.
* "Craftiness" is understanding used for evil.
* An "intelligent" person thinks clearly and learns quickly.
* To do something "unintentionally" is to do it without knowing or by accident or without intending to do it.

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [know](../other/know.md), [wise](../kt/wise.md))

#### Bible References:

* Job 34:16-17
* Luke 02:47
* Luke 08:10
* Matthew 13:12
* Matthew 13:14
* Proverbs 03:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H995, H998, H999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3823, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G50, G144, G145, G191, G801, G1097, G1108, G1271, G1380, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G1990, G2638, G2657, G3539, G3563, G4894, G4907, G4908, G4920, G5424, G5428, G5429

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

arguments, craftiness, gain understanding, gives ... insight, insight, intelligent, realize, realized, understand, understanding, understands, understood, unintentionally, without understanding

### unleavened bread

#### Definition:

The term "unleavened bread" refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

* When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
* Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, "unleavened bread" represents the removal of sin from a person's life in order to live in a way that honors God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate this term could include "bread with no yeast" or "flat bread that did not rise."
* Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term "yeast, leaven."
* In some contexts, the term "unleavened bread" refers to the "Feast of Unleavened Bread" and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](../other/bread.md), [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [feast](../other/feast.md), [Passover](../kt/passover.md), [servant](../other/servant.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [yeast](../other/yeast.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
* 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
* Acts 12:03
* Exodus 23:14-15
* Ezra 06:21-22
* Genesis 19:1-3
* Judges 06:21
* Leviticus 08:1-3
* Luke 22:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4682, G106

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

unleavened bread

### vain

#### Related Ideas:

for no reason, for nothing, futile, futility, meaningless, of no value, useless, vanity

#### Definition:

The term "vain" describes things that are useless or have no purpose. Vain things are worthless.

* The term "vanity" refers to worthlessness. It can also refer to pride or arrogance.
* In the Old Testament, idols are described as vain things that cannot deliver or save. They are worthless and have no use or purpose.
* If something was done "in vain," it means that there was no good result from it. The effort or action did not accomplish anything. It was futile.
* To "believe in vain" means to believe in something that is not true and that gives false hope.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "vain" could be translated as "empty" or "useless" or "futile" or "worthless" or "meaningless" or "of no value."
* The phrase "in vain" could be translated as "without result" or "with no result" or "for no reason" or "with no purpose."
* The term "vanity" could be translated as "pride" or "nothing worthwhile" or "hopelessness."

(See also: [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [worthy](../kt/worthy.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 15:1-2
* 1 Samuel 25:21-22
* 2 Peter 02:18
* Isaiah 45:19
* Jeremiah 02:29-31
* Matthew 15:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1891, H1892, H2600, H7307, H7385, H7387, H7723, H8193, H8267, H8414, G255, G512, G692, G889, G945, G1500, G2756, G2757, G2758, G2761, G3151, G3152, G3153, G3155

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

for no reason, for nothing, futile, futility, meaningless, of no value, useless, uselessly, vain, vain plans, vanity, without meaning

### vine

#### Related Ideas:

grapevine

#### Definition:

The term "vine" refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word "vine" in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

* In the Bible, the word "vine" almost always means "grapevine."
* The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
* Jesus called himself the "vine" and called his people the "branches." In this context, the word "vine" could also be translated as "grapevine stem" or "grape plant stem."

(See also: [grape](../other/grape.md), [vineyard](../other/vineyard.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 40:09
* Genesis 49:11
* John 15:01
* Luke 22:18
* Mark 12:03
* Matthew 21:35-37

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G288, G290, G1009

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

grapevine, vine, vines

### vineyard

#### Related Ideas:

vine grower

#### Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

* A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
* God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit.
* Vineyard could be also translated as "grapevine garden" or "grape plantation."
* A vine grower is a person who works in a vineyard.

(See also: [grape](../other/grape.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [vine](../other/vine.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 09:20-21
* Luke 13:06
* Luke 20:15
* Matthew 20:02
* Matthew 21:40-41

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G290

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

vine growers, vineyard, vineyards

### voice

#### Related Ideas:

rumbling, sound

#### Definition:

The term “voice” refers to sound that a person makes when speaking or singing. The term "voice" is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

* God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn't have a voice in the same way a human being does.
* This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement "A voice is heard in the desert saying, 'Prepare the way of the Lord.'" This could be translated as "A person is heard calling out in the desert…."
* To "hear someone's voice" could also be translated as "hear someone speaking."
* Sometimes the word "voice" isused for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the "voice" of the heavens proclaims God's mighty works. This could also be translated as "their splendor shows clearly how great God is."

(See also: [call](../kt/call.md), [proclaim](../other/preach.md), [splendor](../other/splendor.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 05:36-38
* Luke 01:42
* Luke 09:35
* Matthew 03:17
* Matthew 12:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

rumblings, sound, sounds, voice, voices

### walk

#### Definition:

The term "walk" is often used in a figurative sense to mean "live."

* "Enoch walked with God" means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
* To "walk by the Spirit" means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
* To "walk in" God's commands or God's ways means to "live in obedience to" his commands, that is, to "obey his commands" or "do his will."
* When God says he will "walk among" his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
* To "walk contrary to" means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
* To "walk after" means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate "walk" literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
* Otherwise, figurative uses of "walk" could also be translated by "live" or "act" or "behave."
* The phrase "walk by the Spirit" could be translated by, "live in obedience to the Holy Spirit" or "behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit" or "do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you."
* To "walk in God's commands" could be translated by "live by God's commands" or "obey God's commands."
* The phrase "walked with God" could be translated as, "lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [honor](../kt/honor.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:07
* 1 Kings 02:04
* Colossians 02:07
* Galatians 05:25
* Genesis 17:01
* Isaiah 02:05
* Jeremiah 13:10
* Micah 04:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G1704, G4043, G4748

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

walk, walk around, walked, walking, walking around, walks

### waste

#### Related Ideas:

lay waste, wasteland

#### Definition:

To "waste" something means to carelessly throw it away or to use it unwisely.

* To "lay waste" to a city or land means to destroy it.
* A "wasteland" is a land or a city that has been destroyed so that nothing lives in it anymore. It may also be called a "waste."
* Another word for a "wasteland" could be "desert" or "wilderness." But a wasteland also implies that people used to live there and the land used to have trees and plants that produced food.
* To "waste away" means to become more and more sick or ruined. A person who is wasting away usually becomes very thin due to illness or lack of food.

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 06:06
* Leviticus 26:39
* Matthew 26:08
* Revelation 18:15-17
* Zechariah 07:13-14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H535, H1086, H1104, H1326, H2100, H2470, H2490, H2522, H2717, H2721, H2723, H3615, H3856, H4127, H4198, H4592, H4743, H4923, H5307, H6313, H7334, H7503, H7582, H7703, H7736, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, G684, G1287, G2049

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

laid waste, lays waste, waste, waste away, wasted, wasteland, wastelands, wastes, wastes away, wasting

### watch

#### Related Ideas:

keep watch, watch out, watchful, watchman

#### Definition:

The term "watch" means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings.

* To "keep watch" or "keep close watch" can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
* To "watch out" means to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
* To "be watchful" means to be alert and aware of what is happening.
* A "watchman" was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

These ideas can also be used figuratively.

* To "watch" or "keep watch" means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to "be ready."
* The command to "watch your life and doctrine closely" means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Other ways of translating "watch" could include "pay close attention to" or "be diligent" or "be very careful" or "be on guard."
* Other words for "watchman" are "sentry" or "guard."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 05:06
* Hebrews 13:17
* Jeremiah 31:4-6
* Mark 08:15
* Mark 13:33-34
* Matthew 25:10-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H821, H2370, H4931, H5027, H5234, H5341, H6486, H6485, H6822, H6836, H7181, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G991, G1127, G1983, G2334, G2657, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5426, G5438, G5442

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

keep ... watch, kept ... watch, watch, watch out, watched, watchful, watching, watchman, watchmen

### watchtower

#### Related Ideas:

tower

#### Definition:

The term "watchtower" refers to a tall structure built as a place from which guards could look out for any danger. These towers were often made of stone.

* Landowners sometimes built watchtowers from which they could guard their crops and protect them from being stolen.
* The towers often included rooms where the watchmen or family lived, so that they could guard the crops day and night.
* Watchtowers for cities were built higher than the city walls so that watchmen could see if any enemies were coming to attack the city.
* The term "watchtower" is also used as a symbol of protection from enemies.

(See also: [adversary](../other/adversary.md), [watch](../other/watch.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 27:25-27
* Ezekiel 26:3-4
* Mark 12:1-3
* Matthew 21:33-34
* Psalm 062:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H803, H971, H975, H1785, H2918, H4026, H4029, H4692, H4707, H4869, H6438, H6836, G4444

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tower, towers, watchtower, watchtowers

### water

#### Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, "water" also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

* The term "waters" refers to bodies of water or many sources of water.
* The term "waters" can also be a general reference to a large amount of water.
* To "water" livestock and other animals means to provide water for them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
* The phrase "draw water" means "pull water up from a well with a bucket."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* "Streams of living water will flow from them" could be translated as "the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water." Instead of "blessings" the term "gifts" or "fruits" or "godly character" could be used.
* When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase "living water" could be translated as "water that gives life" or "lifegiving water." In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
* Depending on the context, the term "waters" or "many waters" could be translated as "great suffering (that surrounds you like water)" or "overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)" or "large amounts of water."

(See also: [life](../kt/life.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [power](../kt/power.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:36-38
* Exodus 14:21
* John 04:10
* John 04:14
* John 04:15
* Matthew 14:28-30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2222, H3384, H4325, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, G504, G4215, G4222, G5202, G5204

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

water, watered, watering, waters

### week

#### Related Ideas:

sevens

#### Definition:

The term "week" literally refers to a period of time lasting seven days.

* In the Jewish system of counting time, a week begins at sunset on Saturday and ends at sunset the following Saturday.
* In the Bible, the term "week" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a group of seven units of time, such as seven years.
* The "Festival of Weeks" is a celebration of harvest that takes place seven weeks after Passover. It is also called "Pentecost."
* The word "sevens" can refer to either seven days, seven weeks, or seven years.

(See also: [Pentecost](../kt/pentecost.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 20:7-8
* Deuteronomy 16:09
* Leviticus 23:15-16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7620, G4521

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sevens, week, weeks

### well

#### Related Ideas:

cistern

#### Definition:

The terms "well" and "cistern" refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

* A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
* A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
* Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A "broken cistern" happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
* Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people's homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
* Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
* Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
* Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
* Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.
* These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "well" could include "deep water hole" or "deep hole for spring water" or "deep hole for drawing water."
* The term "cistern" could be translated as "stone water pit" or "deep and narrow pit for water" or "underground tank for holding water."

(See also: [Jeremiah](../names/jeremiah.md), [prison](../other/prison.md), [strife](../other/strife.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 11:17
* 2 Samuel 17:17-18
* Genesis 16:14
* Luke 14:4-6
* Numbers 20:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H875, H953, H1360, H4002, H4599, H4726, H4841, G4077, G5421

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cistern, cisterns, well, wells

### will of God

#### Related Ideas:

God's will, desire of God, he wishes, his will, will of my Father, will of our God and Father, will of the Lord

#### Definition:

The "will of God" refers to God's desires and plans.

* God's will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
* It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
* The term to "will" means to "determine" or to "desire."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The "will of God" could also be translated as "what God desires" or "what God has planned" or "God's purpose" or "what is pleasing to God."

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:15-17
* 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
* Colossians 04:12-14
* Ephesians 01:1-2
* John 05:30-32
* Mark 03:33-35
* Matthew 06:8-10
* Psalms 103:21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6634, H7522, G1012, G1013, G2307, G2308, G2309

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

God's will, desires of God, he desires, he wishes, his will, will of God, will of my Father, will of our God and Father, will of the Lord, will of your Father, you are willing, your will

### wine

#### Related Ideas:

new wine, wineskin

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "wine" refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in "wineskins," which were containers made out of animal skin.

* The term "new wine" referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term "wine" also referred to unfermented grape juice.
* To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
* In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
* Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
* A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as "fermented grape juice" or "fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes" or "fermented fruit juice."
* Ways to translate "wineskin" could include "bag for wine" or "animal skin wine bag" or "animal skin container for wine."

(See also: [grape](../other/grape.md), [vine](../other/vine.md), [vineyard](../other/vineyard.md), [winepress](../other/winepress.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 05:23
* Genesis 09:21
* Genesis 49:12
* John 02:3-5
* John 02:10
* Matthew 09:17
* Matthew 11:18

smashed

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

new wine, wine, wines, wineskin, wineskins

### winepress

#### Definition:

During Bible times, a "winepress" was a large container or open place where the juice of grapes was extracted in order to make wine.

* In Israel, winepresses were usually large, wide basins that were dug out of solid rock. Clusters of grapes were put on the flat bottom of the hole and people trampled the grapes with their feet to get the grape juice to flow out.
* Usually a winepress had two levels, with the grapes being trampled in the top level so that the juice would run down into the lower level where it could be collected.
* The term "winepress" is also used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of God's wrath being poured out on wicked people.

(See also: [grape](../other/grape.md), [wrath](../kt/wrath.md))

#### Bible References:

* Isaiah 63:02
* Mark 12:01
* Matthew 21:33
* Revelation 14:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1660, H6333, G3025, G5276

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

winepress, winepresses

### wise

#### Related Ideas:

wisdom, wisely, wiser, wisest

#### Definition:

The term "wise" describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. "Wisdom" is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

* Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
* People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
* A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.
* "Sound wisdom" is wisdom that enables people who have it to succeed in doing good.
* In the Bible, the phrase "worldly wisdom" refers to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, other ways to translate "wise" could include "obedient to God" or "sensible and obedient" or "God-fearing."
* "Wisdom" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "wise living" or "sensible and obedient living" or "good judgment."
* It is best to translate "wise" and "wisdom" in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](../other/obey.md), [fruit](../other/fruit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:03
* Colossians 03:15-17
* Exodus 31:06
* Genesis 03:06
* Isaiah 19:12
* Jeremiah 18:18
* Matthew 07:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H998, H1350, H1847, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3925 H6195, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sound wisdom, wisdom, wise, wisely, wiser, wisest

### woe

#### Definition:

The term "woe" refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

* The expression "woe to" is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
* In several places in the Bible, the word "woe" is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
* A person who says "woe is me" or "woe to me" is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "woe" could also be translated as "great sorrow" or "sadness" or "calamity" or "disaster."
* Other ways to translate the expression "Woe to (name of city)" could include, "How terrible it will be for (name of city)" or "The people in (that city) will be severely punished" or "Those people will suffer greatly."
* The expression, "Woe is me!" or "Woe to me!" could be translated as "How sad I am!" or "I am so sad!" or "How terrible this is for me!"
* The expression "Woe to you" could also be translated as "You will suffer terribly" or "You will experience terrible troubles."

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 13:17-18
* Habakkuk 02:12
* Isaiah 31:1-2
* Jeremiah 45:1-3
* Jude 01:9-11
* Luke 06:24
* Luke 17:1-2
* Matthew 23:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H188, H190, H337, H480, H1929, H1945, H1958, G3759

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

woe

### word

#### Definition:

A "word" refers to something that someone has said. In the Bible, it almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.

* An example of this is when the angel told Zechariah, "You did not believe my words," which means, "You did not believe what I said."
* Sometimes "word" refers to speech in general, such as "powerful in word and deed" which means "powerful in speech and behavior."
* Often in the Bible "the word" refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in "the word of God" or "the word of truth."
* A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called "the Word." For these last two meanings, see [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md)

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Different ways of translating "word" or "words" include "teaching" or "message" or "news" or "a saying" or "what was said."

(See also: [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:02
* Acts 08:04
* Colossians 04:03
* James 01:18
* Jeremiah 27:04
* John 01:03
* John 01:14
* Luke 08:15
* Matthew 02:08
* Matthew 07:27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H561, H562, H565, H1697, H1703, H2656, H2706, H4405, H4406, H7878, H8052, G518, G1024, G1310, G3054, G3055, G3056, G4086, G4487, G5023, G5537, G5542

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

word, words, message, messages

### word of God

#### Related Ideas:

God's word, his words, my word, scripture, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, writings

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "word of God" refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called "the Word of God."

* The term "scriptures" means "writings." It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God's message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
* The related terms "word of Yahweh" and "word of the Lord" often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
* Sometimes this term occurs as simply "the word" or "my word" or "your word" (when talking about God's word).
* In the New Testament, Jesus is called "the Word" and "the Word of God." These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term "word of truth" is another way of referring to "God's word," which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

* God's word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
* This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "the message of Yahweh" or "God's message" or "the teachings from God."

It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say "God's words" or "the words of Yahweh."

The expression "the word of Yahweh came" is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words."

The term "scripture" or "scriptures" could be translated as "the writings" or "the written message from God." This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term "word."

When "word" occurs alone and it refers to God's word, it could be translated as "the message" or "God's word" or "the teachings." Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.

When the Bible refers to Jesus as "the Word," this term could be translated as "the Message" or "the Truth."

"Word of truth" could be translated as "God's true message" or "God's word, which is true."

It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [true](../kt/true.md), [word](../other/word.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 15:01
* 1 Kings 13:01
* Jeremiah 36:1-3
* Luke 08:11
* John 05:39
* Acts 06:02
* Acts 12:24
* Romans 01:02
* 2 Corinthians 06:07
* Ephesians 01:13
* 2 Timothy 03:16
* James 01:18
* James 02:8-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

God's word, God's words, his words, my word, scripture, scriptures, word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, words of God, writings

### work

#### Related Ideas:

act, deed, fellow worker

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "work," "deed," and "act" are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

* God's "works" and the "work of his hands" are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms "deeds" and "acts" are also used to refer to God's miracles in expressions such as "mighty acts" or "marvelous deeds."
* The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called "good fruit."
* The term "work" can also refer to "service" or "ministry."
* People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
* The term "fellow worker" means someone who does a ministry along with someone else.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate "works" or "deeds" could be "actions" or "things that are done."
* When referring to God's "works" or "deeds" and the "work of his hands," these expressions could also be translated as "miracles" or "mighty acts" or "amazing things he does."
* The expression "the work of God" could be translated as "the things that God is doing" or "the miracles God does" or "the amazing things that God does" or "everything God has accomplished."
* The expression "your work in the Lord" could also be translated as "what you do for the Lord."
* The expression "examine your own work" could also be translated as "make sure what you are doing is God's will" or "make sure that what you are doing pleases God."
* The expression "the work of the Holy Spirit" could be translated as "the empowering of the Holy Spirit" or "the ministry of the Holy Spirit" or "the things that the Holy Spirit does."

(See also: [fruit](../other/fruit.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [miracle](../kt/miracle.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 03:12
* Acts 02:8-11
* Daniel 04:37
* Exodus 34:10-11
* Galatians 02:15-16
* James 02:17
* Matthew 16:27-28
* Micah 02:07
* Romans 03:28
* Titus 03:4-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1576, H4399, H4566, H4567, H4611, H4639, H4659, H5673, H5949, H5998, H6213, H6466, H6468, G1754, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2716, G3173

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

act, action, actions, activities, acts, deed, deeds, fellow worker, fellow workers, work, works

### world

#### Related Ideas:

universe, worldly

#### Definition:

The term "world" usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term "worldly" describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

* In its most general sense, the term "world" refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
* In many contexts, "world" actually means "people in the world."
* Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
* The apostles also used "world" to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
* People and things characterized by these values are said to be "worldly."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "world" could also be translated as "universe" or "people of this world" or "corrupt things in the world" or "evil attitudes of people in the world."
* The phrase "all the world" often means "many people" and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, "all the world came to Egypt" could be translated as "many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt" or "people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there."
* Another way to translate "all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census" would be "many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went..."
* Depending on the context, the term "worldly" could be translated as, "evil" or "sinful" or "selfish" or "ungodly" or "corrupt" or "influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world."
* The phrase "saying these things in the world" can be translated as "saying these things to the people of the world."
* In other contexts, "in the world" could also be translated as "living among the people of the world" or "living among ungodly people."

(See also: [corrupt](../other/corrupt.md), [heaven](../kt/heaven.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md), [godly](../kt/godly.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:15
* 1 John 04:05
* 1 John 05:05
* John 01:29
* Matthew 13:36-39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H776, H2309, H2465, H2717, H5769, H8398, G165, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

universe, world, world's, worldly

### worship

#### Related Ideas:

worshiper

#### Definition:

To "worship" means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

* When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
* Often people bow down when they worship someone.
* Some people worshiped false gods.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "worship" could be translated as "bow down to" or "honor and serve" or "honor and obey."
* In some contexts, it could also be translated as "humbly praise" or "give honor and praise."

(See also: [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [praise](../other/praise.md), [honor](../kt/honor.md))

#### Bible References:

* Colossians 02:18-19
* Deuteronomy 29:18
* Exodus 03:11-12
* Luke 04:07
* Matthew 02:02
* Matthew 02:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5457, H5647, H7812, G1391, G2151, G2152, G2323, G2356, G2999, G3000, G3008, H3372, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

worship, worshiped, worshiper's, worshipers, worshiping, worships

### worthy

#### Related Ideas:

deserve, nullify, unworthy, worth, worthily, worthless, worthlessness, worthy

#### Definition:

The term "worthy" describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To "have worth" means to be valuable or important.

* Being "worthy" is related to being valuable or having importance.
* To do something "worthily" means to do something in a worthy way.
* To be "unworthy" means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition.
* To be "worthless" means to not have any purpose or value.
* To "nullify" something is to make it worth nothing.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* "Worthy" could be translated as "deserving" or "important" or "valuable."
* The word "worth" could be translated as "value" or "importance."
* The phrase to "have worth" could also be translated as to "be valuable" or to "be important."
* The phrase "is worth more than" could be translated as "is more valuable than."
* Depending on the context, the term, "unworthy" could also be translated as "unimportant" or "dishonorable" or "undeserving."
* The term "worthless" could be translated as "with no value" or "with no purpose" or "worth nothing."

(See also: [honor](../kt/honor.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 22:04
* 2 Thessalonians 01:11-12
* Acts 13:25
* Acts 25:25-27
* Acts 26:31
* Colossians 01:9-10
* Jeremiah 08:19
* Mark 01:07
* Matthew 03:10-12
* Philippians 01:25-27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H457, H1100, H2428, H3276, H3644, H4242, H4373, H4392, H4592, H4941, H5541, H6994, H7385, H7386, H7723, H7939, H8602, G96, G514, G515, G516, G888, G1777, G2425, G2480, G2661, G3152, G4186, G5092

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

deserve, deserved, deserves, deserving, nullify, unworthy, worth, worthily, worthless, worthlessness, worthy

### year

#### Definition:

When used literally, the term "year" in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

* A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into 12 months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
* In both calendar systems a year has 12 months. But an extra 13th month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is 11 days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
* In the Bible, the term "year" is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, "the year of Yahweh" or "in the year of drought" or "the favorable year of the Lord." In these contexts, "year" could be translated as "time" or "season" or "time period."

(See also: [month](../other/biblicaltimemonth.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 23:31
* Acts 19:8-10
* Daniel 08:01
* Exodus 12:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7620, H8140, H8141, G1763, G2094

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

year, years

### yeast

#### Related Ideas:

leaven, unleavened

#### Definition:

"Leaven" is a general term for a substance that causes bread dough to expand and rise. "Yeast" is a specific kind of leaven.

* In some English translations, the word for leaven is translated as "yeast," which is a modern leavening agent that fills the bread dough with gas bubbles, making the dough expand before baking it. The yeast is kneaded into the dough so that it spreads throughout the entire lump of dough.
* In Old Testament times, the leavening or rising agent was produced by allowing the dough to sit for awhile. Small amounts of dough from a previous batch of dough were saved as leavening for the next batch.
* When the Israelites escaped from Egypt, they didn't have time to wait for bread dough to rise, so they made bread without leaven to take with them on their journey. As a reminder of this, every year the Jewish people celebrate Passover by eating bread that has no leaven in it.

The ideas of "leaven" and "yeast" can also be used in figurative ways.

* The terms "leaven" and "yeast" are used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of how sin spreads through a person's life or how sin can influence other people.
* They can also refer to false teaching which can spread to many people and influences them.
* They are also used in a positive way to explain how the influence of God's kingdom spreads from person to person.

#### Translation Suggestions

* This could be translated as "leaven" or "substance that causes dough to rise" or "expanding agent." The word "rise" could be expressed as "expand" or "get bigger" or "puff up."
* If a local leavening agent is used for making bread dough rise, that term can be used. If the language has a well-known, general term that means, "leavening," this would be the best term to use.

(See also: [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [Passover](../kt/passover.md), [unleavened bread](../kt/unleavenedbread.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 12:08
* Galatians 05:9-10
* Luke 12:1
* Luke 13:21
* Matthew 13:33
* Matthew 16:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2556, H2557, H4682, H7603, G106, G2219, G2220

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

leaven, leavened, leavens, unleavened, yeast

### yoke

#### Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

* The term "yoke" is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
* Paul used the term "yokefellow" to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as "fellow worker" or "fellow servant" or "coworker."
* The term "yoke" is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
* In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
* Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, "oppressive burden" or "heavy load" or "bond," depending on the context.

(See also: [bind](../kt/bond.md), [burden](../other/burden.md), [oppress](../other/oppress.md), [persecute](../other/persecute.md), [servant](../other/servant.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 15:10
* Galatians 05:01
* Genesis 27:40
* Isaiah 09:04
* Jeremiah 27:04
* Matthew 11:30
* Philippians 04:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3627, H4132, H5674, H5923, H6776, G2086, G2218

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

yoke, yoked, yoked ... together, yokes